



602566325Z

TURKISH SOURCES XXX

## BATTALNAME

Introduction, English Translation,  
Turkish Transcription, Commentary and Facsimile

(Part 1: Introduction and English Translation)

Yorgos DEDES

Published at

The Department of Near Eastern Languages and Civilizations

Harvard University

1996

SOURCES OF ORIENTAL LANGUAGES AND LITERATURES 33

Edited by

Şinasi Tekin

Gönül Alpay Tekin

**SOURCES OF ORIENTAL LANGUAGES AND LITERATURES**

**33**

Edited by Şinasi Tekin & Gönül Alpay Tekin

**TURKISH SOURCES XXX**

**BATTALNAME**

**Introduction, English Translation, Turkish Transcription,  
Commentary and Facsimile**

**(Part 1: Introduction and English Translation)**

**Yorgos DEDES**

**Published at  
The Department of Near Eastern Languages and Civilizations  
Harvard University  
1996**

This material is presented solely for non-commercial educational/research purposes.

# DOĐU DİLLERİ VE EDEBİYATLARININ KAYNAKLARI

33

Yayınlayanlar  
Şinasi Tekin . Gönül Alpay Tekin

TÜRKÇE KAYNAKLAR XXX

## BATTALNAME

Giriş, İngilizce Tercüme, Türkçe Metin, Yorum ve Tıpkıbasım

(1. Kısım: Giriş ve İngilizce Tercüme)

Yorgos DEDES

Yayımlandığı yer  
Harvard Üniversitesi  
Yakınođu Dilleri ve Medeniyetleri Bölümü  
1996

---

Copyright © 1996 by the Editors  
All rights reserved

•  
Bütün telif hakları yayınlayanlara âittir



Managing Editor of  
THE SOURCES OF ORIENTAL LANGUAGES AND LITERATURES  
Selim Sirri KURU

•  
This volume has been typeset by Yorgos Dedes

•  
Library of Congress Catalogue Card Number 70-131003

*To my wife*

## Acknowledgements

This project has taken a good many years to reach this stage and it would never have done so without the generous assistance and kind encouragement of my teachers, Wolfhart Heinrichs, Wheeler Thackston, Şinasi Tekin and Gönül Alpay Tekin. I should like to thank the staffs of the Archaeological Museum, Istanbul, the Sächsische Landesbibliothek, Dresden, the Universitätsbibliothek, Leipzig, the Staatsbibliothek Berlin, the Österreichische Nationalbibliothek, Vienna, the Bibliothèque Nationale, Paris, and the Millî Kütüphane, Ankara, for their professional assistance. However, my greatest thanks go to my teachers and editors of the series, Şinasi Tekin and Gönül Alpay Tekin, and to my friend and colleague Jonathan Markel, for their unfailing and patient support. I treasure their friendship. The only thing that is truly and fully my own is the blame for all the shortcomings.

London, March 7, 1996

Yorgos Dedes

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

### PART ONE

#### Chapter 1

##### The Anatolian Turkish Religious-Heroic Prose Narratives and the Battalname, a

###### Frontier Epic-Wondertale

Introduction .....	1
The Arabic Source: Sirat Delhemma.....	3
The Sirat Delhemma Within Arabic Literature.....	8
Battal as the Local Hero of Malatya and the Danishmendid Turks .....	9
Sayid Battal Ghazi and the Battalname within Ottoman Literature.....	14
The Ritual Cult of Sayyid Battal Ghazi.....	16
The Myth of the Battalname.....	23

#### Chapter 2

##### Islamic Turkish Literature and the Persian "Secondary Epics"

Introduction .....	26
The Beginnings of Islamic Turkish Literature.....	26
Languages and Culture .....	31
Continuity versus Change.....	34
Secondary Epics in Persian Literature.....	35
Persian Epic After Firdawsi.....	36
Prose Epic Tales (Contes épiques).....	38
Abu Tahir Tusi : The World of Wondertales .....	40

#### Chapter 3

##### The Anatolian Frontier Narratives and Their Oral Sources

The Evidence of the Written Texts.....	43
The Battalname Within Folk Literature. ....	45
Contents: General features.....	48
The Question of Performance: Rawis, Qissakhwans, Meddahs.....	51
Manner of Performance.....	61
Written Texts and Oral Performances.....	68
Texts or Prompt-Books?.....	70
Qissakhwans and oral tradition.....	72

Orality Within Literacy?.....	79
-------------------------------	----

## Chapter 4

### About the Present Edition

General Remarks .....	85
Aim of the Present Edition.....	86
Description of Manuscripts Used.....	87
1. Archaeological Museum Library, Istanbul.....	87
2. Paris, Bibliothèque Nationale, Ancien Fonds Turc 318.....	92
3. Paris, Bibliothèque Nationale, Ancien Fonds Turc 338.....	94
4. Dresden, Sächsische Landesbibliothek, Cod. turc. no.104 .....	95
On the Transcription of the Text.....	96

### English Translation

#### Introduction.

The Prophecy About the Conquest of Rûm and the Coming of Ja'far. ....	99
--	----

#### Chapter One.

Husayn Ghazi and the Gazelle of Mihriyayil.....	101
---	-----

#### Chapter Two

Ja'far Avenges his Father, Kills Shamasp and Mihriyayil, and is Named Battal by Ahmar Tarran.....	104
The story of Rabi' the Son of the Caesar.....	111

#### Chapter Three

Battal Marries Zaynab, his Cousin, and Mah-Piruz, the Caesar's Daughter.....	127
---	-----

#### Chapter Four

The Story of Abdu'l-Salam and Nawruz Banu. ....	136
---	-----

#### Chapter Five

The Death of Mihran .....	142
---------------------------	-----

#### Chapter Six

The Story of Sunbat.....	145
--------------------------	-----

#### Chapter Seven

The Story of Sa'id and Gazban, Son of Shamun.....	147
---	-----

#### Chapter Eight

The Story of Bayda the Witch, Daughter of Aqratis.....	149
--	-----



Chapter Nine	
The Story of Qaytur-Abad.....	153
Chapter Ten	
In the Land of Maghrib: The Story of Firdaws Shah the Jew.....	155
Chapter Eleven	
The Story of Bakhtyar .....	164
Chapter Twelve	
The Story of Taryun and his Daughter Gul-Andam .....	180
Chapter Thirteen	
The Story of Uqba, the Treacherous Judge, and of Humayun, the Daughter of the Caesar .....	211
Chapter Fourteen	
Battal Rescues the Daughter of Mihrasp from the Qari Div and Brings the White Elephant of India.....	227
Chapter Fifteen	
Battal in the Well of Hell and the Story of Katayun, he Daughter of the Caesar. ....	241
Chapter Sixteen	
The Story of Caesar Asatur and Guzandu Jazu .....	263
Chapter Seventeen	
The Story of the Missing Children of Battal.....	272
Chapter Eighteen	
The Story of Babak.....	303
Chapter Nineteen	
The Story of Ra'd Jazu and Saffiya, the Missing Daughter of the Caliph .....	321
Chapter Twenty	
The Story of Hakam .....	327
Chapter Twenty-One	
The Story of the Death of Battal .....	329

## PART TWO

### Transcription of the Turkish Text

Sigla .....	335
-------------	-----

Signs .....	335
Transcription of the Text.....	335
Commentary to the Text.....	611
Index of Personal and Place Names.....	667
Bibliography .....	683

### PART THREE

Facsimile of Manuscript no. 1455 (Archaeological Museum, Istanbul) .....	698
--	-----

**BATTALNAME**  
**English Translation**

INTRODUCTION.

The Prophecy About the Conquest of Rûm and the Coming of Ja'far.

[P 1<sup>b</sup>]

In the name of God, the Compassionate, the Merciful  
This is the Book of Sayyid Battal Ghazi

The storytellers of old and the transmitters of tales tell the story how one day the pride of the World, the chosen Muhammad -May God bless Him and protect Him- turned His blessed back to the *mihrab* and thanks to the light of his moon-face the world of mortals was delivered from the darkness of unbelief. His dear companions -may God be pleased with them all- were all sitting opposite Him. [P 2<sup>a</sup>] The Apostle was in great dismay, however, because it had been three months and three days since Gabriel had last brought Him down a revelation from the Lord of the Worlds. He turned His blessed face towards His companions and said, "My friends, I would be grateful if one of you could tell us a pleasant story or a wild adventure so that we may all keep busy for a little while, until, God willing, Gabriel comes to me with a revelation." So He spoke and a tall and handsome young man called Abdu'l-Wahhab stood up from his place, pronounced a prayer and said, "Apostle of God, I have traveled far and wide and visited many climes, but of all the places I have seen, I never saw a place like the land of Rûm. Its towns are close to each other, its rivers are full of water, its springs are gushing, its air is pleasant, its game is slender, its food is abundant, and its people are extremely friendly, except they are all infidels. Hopefully God shall grant this province to the Muslims." And he described it at such great length that the blessed mind of the Apostle became very fond of Rûm indeed.

Just at that moment Gabriel vcame down from the heavens with news from the Lord: "Apostle of God, the Creator of the world -may His glory be exalted- sends you greetings and says, 'My blessed Apostle has taken a liking to Rûm, so I on my part must grant that province to His community. May they pull down its monasteries and set up mosques and *madrasas* in their places. [P 2<sup>b</sup>] Two hundred years after your mission is over, a young man shall be born to one of your sons. He will be tall and straight as barley, and he shall have a handsome face. His name shall be Ja'far from the town of Malatya. In



heroism he shall be the equal of Hamza, but in cunning he shall be better than Umar b. Umayya. He shall march in all directions by himself. He shall learn the four books by heart and when he preaches or recites, birds shall come down from the skies to listen. He shall be the one to conquer this province of Rûm and shall destroy the churches and build mosques and *madrasas* in their place. He shall be the one to open Istanbul's gate and he shall roast the livers of the priests. So let your blessed mind rest in tranquillity." So Gabriel spoke and then ascended to the heavens again.

When the Apostle -peace be upon Him- heard these news He was pleased and His blessed mind cheered up. Raising His head He exclaimed, "The ruler and protector of the world has granted this province to me and my community." So He spoke, and the companions rejoiced greatly at these words and were glad. Abdu'l-Wahhab stood up from his place and exclaimed, "Apostle of God, do you suppose any of the companions here will live till that time and see this young man's face?" Just as he spoke Gabriel appeared and said, "Muhammad, God the exalted so commands that the person who asked that question be the one to live until that time. Indeed he shall see the young man's face and shall fight many *ghazas* with him. Let my Beloved Muhammad stroke Abdu'l-Wahhab's head and place a drop of saliva from His blessed mouth in Abdu'l-Wahhab's mouth. Mark this day and note the date in a letter and instruct Abdu'l-Wahhab [P 3<sup>a</sup>] to give this letter to the young man when he meets him." So Gabriel spoke and ascended. Then the Apostle gave the order and Uthman wrote and marked the date and they entrusted it to Abdu'l-Wahhab. He stroked Abdu'l-Wahhab's head and placed a drop of saliva from His blessed mouth into Abdu'l-Wahhab's mouth. Abdu'l-Wahhab swallowed it, however it did not go all the way down, but rested in his throat. It did not descend further because it was to be held in trust. Then the Apostle gave Abdu'l-Wahhab much advice and said, "When you meet Ja'far, would you please give him my regards." Abdu'l-Wahhab took the handwritten note, touched the ground with his head, and kept the note in a safe place.

Then the prophet's mission was completed and the Apostle -peace be upon Him- migrated from this ephemeral world to the eternal one. The caliphate was passed on to Abu Bakr and he was caliph for two and a half years before he also migrated to the other world. Then Umar sat on the caliph's seat, and following him Uthman became caliph for thirteen years. Then the caliphate was passed on to Ali -may God be pleased with him- but they martyred him. They scattered all his children and they martyred Hasan and Husayn. Then the family of Yazid usurped the caliphate in treachery. This treachery lasted for seventy four years, and throughout this time they did not even mention Ali's name in the Friday prayer sermon. Well, so be it.

CHAPTER ONE.

Husayn Ghazi and the Gazelle of Mihriyayil

There was a young man called Ali from the sons of Abdullah whose mother was also descended from the daughters of Ali. This Ali was staying in Medina. When he realized how things stood and how the secessionists had taken over everything, he escaped from Medina one night and came to Baghdad, where he stayed for a year. From there he moved to Malatya. Now there was a ruler in Malatya who was called Ziyad. He was a descendant of the sons of Umar the Commander of the Faithful, and was a faithful God-fearing monotheist believer. [P 3<sup>b</sup>]

Ali came to him and Ziyad gave him a warm welcome and offered him the Friday sermonship, so Ali stayed four years there until he died. He left a son behind, Zayd Rabi', who turned out to be a very learned man, so they gave him the Friday sermonship. He held the post for thirty years and he also died leaving two sons behind; one was Hasan, the other Husayn. Hasan had a beautiful voice and became a very learned man, and as for Husayn, he became a barve warrior. Seven times the army of the Caesar of Rûm attacked and seven times he defeated it. He seized six cities and twelve fortresses that he pulled down and destroyed. Then the ruler of the city, Ziyad, died and his son, Nu'man, sat on the throne. He was an incredibly beautiful and faithful and God-fearing believer. They entrusted the Friday sermonship to Hasan and the post of commander-in-chief to Husayn.

Those days the Caesar of Rûm was such a coward at heart that he used to set up seven milestones out of his fear for Husayn and then make an agreement with Husayn that he should not go beyond these milestones. Every year the caesar used to send tribute, or rather gifts and presents, as he called them. Husayn, on his part, did not venture out to that side. Indeed, he used to go hunting, and he never returned empty-handed. [A1]

One day as Nu'man was sitting with the begs of Malatya, they announced the good news that his son had been born. Everyone rejoiced and he was glad and prepared festivities. They named the boy Amir Umar. They feasted for seven days. Then one day Husayn was hunting around the mountains of Syria when he saw a gazelle with a decorated brocade saddle-cloth. He spurred his horse but the gazelle ran away. Husayn exclaimed, "I am not giving up until I get hold of you and bring you as a gift for Nu'man's son Amir." So he exclaimed but meanwhile the gazelle ran away, entered a cave and disappeared. Husayn dismounted and entered into the cave. He took a step or two and he saw a yellow horse standing there like a rainbow. There was a bundle tied to the bridle and the saddle, a lance pierced into the ground in front of it, and a splendid mace fastened on the † *turfil*.

Husayn saw it and was amazed. He exclaimed, "What on earth is a horse like this doing here?" He advanced to catch it, but it kicked its hind legs and Husayn had to jump back. He tried to catch it, but it was to no avail. Then a voice came from the corner of the cave: it said, "Ashqar, be obedient to this young man. The time when I will appear has not come yet. [A 2] God the exalted has granted you to Ja'far, who shall come and lead many *ghazas* on the face of this earth and shall rescue the world from the darkness of unbelief. Be obedient and faithful to this young man." As soon as the horse heard this voice it stood in its place. Husayn looked at all four sides but didn't see anyone. He advanced and took the horse's reins in his hands, pulled out the lance and saw that it had been written on it that it was the lance of Kaykawus. He untied the bundle and saw that two locks of hair of the prophet Adam, the belt of prophet David, the shield of Prophet Ishaq, †and the armor of the commander of the faithful Hamza were all there ready for him. Husayn, glad and pleased, mounted his own horse and was off. On the way back he was thinking, "My Lord, who could Ja'far be that such a horse and such armor are to be given to him?" While on that thought sleep overcame him, so he dismounted, tied his horse and fell asleep right there on the spot. He dreamt of an old man coming and saying, "O Husayn, here's good news for you: Ja'far is your own son, and will come to life in a short while and make the whole of Rûm a realm of Islam. He will accomplish feats that no other hero has ever dared." Husayn woke at once, prostrated for a prayer of thanks, got up and mounted his steed and rushed back to the city. [A 3]

For a while things remained like that and then Nu'man b. Ziyad died and Amir was enthroned. Amir Umar became padishah and organized festivities and distributed robes of honor. Everyone was happy and rejoicing. In the midst of this rejoicing, a servant of his called Tawabil, a great hero himself, stepped inside the door and said something in Husayn's ear. Husayn's face lit up and became full of joy; Tawabil got out and left. Amir Umar asked, "Brave warrior, what is the news, let us know as well." Husayn Ghazi pronounced a prayer, and exclaimed, "A baby son of your servant came to life!" Now Amir Umar was well versed in the science of the astrolabe, he looked at the child's future in the astrolabe and observed the stars. He found the child's future very auspicious and offered the following reading, "Husayn Ghazi, your son shall turn into a great hero but also a great man of religion. He shall achieve feats that no-one else could manage. His name shall be Ja'far." He wrote down a few prayers and handed them over and said, "Have these tied to your head." Afterwards Husayn Ghazi entertained guests, and the town's noblemen all gathered at his place and for three days they were eating and drinking.

Then they took care of Ja'far. When he reached his third year everyone thought he was seven. [A 4] The beauty of his face was without equal. Whoever picked him up could

not put him down. Of course, Husayn would still go hunting every day. As for the Caesar of Rûm, he sent tribute to the caliph every year, and Husayn also send gifts and presents. One day Husayn went out hunting and after he had been hunting for three days, all of a sudden a gazelle appeared in front of him. Its brocade saddle-cloth was adorned with precious stones . Husayn thought, "Let me catch this gazelle alive and send it to Ja'far as a present." He threw a lasso a few times but it was not an easy task, the gazelle ran away crossing over to the other side of the mountain. Husayn followed it over the mountain, and when he looked down from the top he noticed a castle on the horizon and a splendid city at the feet of the castle. About forty thousands troops had camped in front of the crowded city and were resting. Barracks and tents of green and red brocade had been set up everywhere. One's stomach would be torn to pieces by the sound of the horses and people. This city was no other than Mamuriya itself. Its governor was called Mihriyayil and he was the brother of the wife of the Caesar of Rûm. They were three brothers all together: Mihriyayil was the elder, Mihran was the middle one, and the younger one was Shamasp.

Now, as it turned out that gazelle [A 5] belonged to Mihriyayil and would tread anywhere imaginable: no-one had the guts even to just look at it once. So the gazelle ran about until it got tired and wounded up in Mihriyayil's tent. He took a look at it and saw that it was exhausted. He got furious and said, "Find out at once who is chasing my gazelle and do not spare him, chop his head off." His servants rushed off and searched everywhere until they saw someone standing on top of a hill. They shouted, "Are you mad? Why have you started chasing after the padishah's gazelle?" Husayn answered, " Go and tell your lord that I am Husayn and I've taken a liking to this lovely gazelle here, so he had better hand it over to me. Otherwise I cannot be held responsible for making the world dark in his eyes. " The servants rushed back to Mihriyayil and gave him the news. His blood froze with fear. Upon his command the whole army mounted and encircled Husayn, who had no proper armor with him and exclaimed, "You see, here I am without my armor, and I have even had a scary dream." He put his trust in God saying, "You cannot erase anything from Fate's decree," and then he pulled a war-cry and charged in attack. He charged against the heart of the enemy, fighting at times with his sword, at times with his mace, and at times with his lance. He fought till the time of the evening prayer and made infidel blood flow like water. [A 6] [P 6<sup>a</sup>] Twice he came across Mihriyayil, and brought him down with a single blow, passing over him. But he was himself wounded and lost plenty of blood from his wound. He became weak and had no power left to break the army's lines. His heavenly destiny and the power of fate drew near as they assailed and threw lassos at him. It was then that Husayn became a martyr. Nonetheless, however

much they tried, they did not manage to catch his horse, which found the road to Malatya and set out in that direction, all soaked in red blood.

One day the companions Abdu'l-Salam and Juda and Ali b. Hashim and Yahya b. Mansur and Abdu'l-Wahhab were all sitting around when they saw Husayn's horse approaching all soaked in red blood. They shouted and wailed breaking into tears. Just as they were wondering aloud, "Who may have done this?" they noticed that Yahya b. Mansur, the messenger of the Muslims who was from the children of Umar b. Umayya, had arrived. He brought the following tidings, "Mihriyayil encircled Husayn in Mamuriya with forty thousand men. Husayn fought for three days, but at the end they martyred him." The Muslims mourned for seven days. Then they wrote a letter to the caliph. Tawamiq b. Ma'ad was the caliph at the time. He was greatly saddened and mourned for three days. Then he wrote back to Amir and the ghazi-begs of Malatya, warning them, "Watch out and do not be taken by surprise. Should the Caesar of Rûm march against you, inform me immediately." [P 6<sup>b</sup>] He also sent a beautiful mantle to each of all these famous begs, along with kind words of advice: Do not be afraid and take refuge in God."

As soon as the tidings reached Malatya everyone rejoiced and was glad. They held a great assembly and deliberated. Amir said, "Friends, we need a commander-in-chief. Ja'far is still a child and cannot take his father's place. Until he grows up, you must find a man to be commander-in-chief." The notables debated and saw it fit to make Abdu'l-Salam commander-in-chief until Ja'far would grow up. Ten years passed after this, and for a while things stayed like that and the world was happy.

## CHAPTER TWO

Ja'far Avenges his Father,  
Kills Shamasp and Mihriyayil,  
and is Named Battal by Ahmar Tarran.

The story tellers say that when Ja'far became thirteen years old he was tremendously handsome and with a tall, slender stature. He studied the four books and developed such great skill in *tafsir* and *hadith* that they entrusted him with the Friday sermonship. When Friday came he got on the pulpit and delivered the Friday address and the people burst into tears and loud laments, as if Judgment Day had come. All the Muslims expressed their congratulations.



Then Ja'far developed a passion for the martial arts and became very skillful. Now there was a warrior-master called Gazban who was greatly skilled. Ja'far entered his service until he developed such a mastery of martial arts that he had no equal. He had no equal in horse racing and in lance throwing, [P 7<sup>a</sup>] and no match in passing underneath a horse while racing, in handling the mace or the sword, or in wrestling. In all activities of this kind he acquired great skill and there was no-one else nearly as good. He was twenty cubits tall and sturdily built.

So one day he went out wandering and looking around with his companions. They performed their ablutions and prayer by some river bank and engaged in conversation. They spoke of Koranic exegesis and the sayings of the Prophet and Ja'far silenced them all. Then they all expressed their wish to see a demonstration of Ja'far's mastery of martial arts. They brought him a horse at once and he mounted it. He performed a display of his mastery, displaying skills no-one had seen before. They all prayed for him and congratulated him, saying among themselves, "He's turned out more skilled than his own father, so why does he not seek his father's position? Foreigners waste away his property while he walks around with all these skills but hungry and without a penny to his name." Ja'far responded, "Friends, come on, this is not the time. When I really show some skill, then I will claim my father's position." The whole crowd of them said, "What is this talk about skill? What he has shown us goes far beyond skill. In fact, you are already doing things no-one else could possibly manage." They talked so much about this that in the end Ja'far himself started to long for the position of his father. But evening had come so they returned to the city and everyone went to his home.

Ja'far came home to his mother. Her name was Sa'ida Hatun [P 7<sup>b</sup>] and she came out to meet him and kissed him on his two eyes. She led him into the house and they came in and he sat down. She brought him food but Ja'far did not even touch it. His mother noticed that his eyes were filled with tears. She drew near, sighed and said, "My dear boy, why are you crying?" Ja'far said, "Mother, how could I hold my tears when they are squandering away what my father acquired with his sword. They all have a house to look after and hold property as well while I do not even have enough bread for my roe spread (*tarama*)." His mother burst into tears and said, "My dear boy, your father used to collect *kharaj* from Istanbul, the Caesar of Rûm himself used to lose his sleep out of fear for your father's sword. Now look at what we've been reduced to." And she cried even more. Ja'far said, "Do not cry anymore. I am not going to let anyone have my father's position. In fact, thank God I've completed all my studies and perfected my martial skills so I can and will seek my father's position." His mother said, "My dear boy, calm down now. Abdu'l-Salam is a person with his own people and a tribe, and he is also one of the Amir's people.

They will never accept what you'll say, and there will be bitter feelings too. Be generous and do not say a thing, and let us see what the Lord has in stock for us."

That evening passed and at dawn Ja'far got up, performed his ablutions and came to the mosque where they performed the prayer. Once they finished the prayer and while all the amirs were there, Ja'far lifted his head and said, "Amir Umar, with your permission, your worthless servant would like to tell you something." Amir said, "Come on, let us hear it." Ja'far said, "I would like to ask for my father's position [P 8<sup>a</sup>] since right now I am no more lacking than anyone else in heroism, attacking in battle or catching prisoners. Others are benefiting from my father's position while I walk around hungry and destitute." The heart of all those sitting around burned and they all agreed that Ja'far was speaking the truth. Then Abdu'l-Salam said, "Hey Ja'far are you really seeking your father's position?" "But of course" answered Ja'far and Abdu'l-Salam continued, "Well, your father got that position because he demonstrated great skills. You go ahead and demonstrate some skills first, and then come asking for the position. Your father's blood is still crying out for revenge, how can you even put a claim for his position? Your job is to study hard at some mosque or *madrassa* corner, you have nothing to do with riding horses and boasting about your manhood. Now, if you want us to give you your father's position go and avenge your father's blood and kill Mihriyayil. Then come back and I will give you your father's position." The crowd divided into two factions, one supporting Ja'far and the other Abdu'l-Salam, and there was a great debate. Ja'far got up and left and came to his mother. She saw that he was sad and said, "Light of my two eyes, what happened to you?" He quickly told her the story, and while they were talking about this, Ja'far's tutor (*lālā*), Tawabil, appeared and said, "Hey Ja'far, you didn't act wisely, why did you not inform me so that I could advise you? Abdu'l-Salam is a person with a great tribe and numerous followers behind him. There is no point in arguing with him right now." [P 8<sup>b</sup>] But Ja'far paid no attention and did not even answer. Rather, he questioned Tawabil about Mihriyayil. Tawabil said, "He's a tall man of great height, a swarthy dark big man, a fearful warrior without equal. Moreover, he's the brother of the wife of the Caesar of Rûm, an evil cursed man. Watch out and forget about this obsession of yours, he's killed too many Muslims." Tawabil offered Ja'far advise until midnight. Then Ja'far got up and left.

The story tellers tell the story how Ja'far got up in the middle of the night and saddled his father's black horse, wore his sword around his belt, fastened his lance to the saddle and dressed himself in Greek clothes. It was Friday evening, and his mother asked him in tears, "Where on earth are you going at this hour?" Nonetheless, he mounted his horse and rode off. He pressed on until the following morning when he reached a fountain and dismounted to perform his ablutions and prayer. He mounted again and rode on.

Meanwhile, on this side, the *muezzin* made his call to prayer, and the people gathered in the mosque. The great *begs* came along but Ja'far did not show up, so they sent someone to look for him at home. His mother said, "He rode his horse in the middle of the night and left." Amir said, "Quickly, perform the prayer and then go after him. God forbid, he might head for Rûm and he does not know about that infidel, so he might meet with disaster all of a sudden. [P9<sup>a</sup>] Remember, he is a dear descendant of Ali." They sent two hundred mounted men after him, and they combed the mountains inside out but could not find him, so they came back, sad and in despair. His mother, desperate, was lamenting in tears.

Meanwhile, Ja'far pressed on that night until, by dawn, he reached a monastery. He saw that it was like a castle, made of white marble with an iron door and with a monk watching on the roof. As soon as Ja'far drew near the monk got out and came up to Ja'far offering his greetings, "Welcome, o Ja'far! Last night I saw your father in my dream and he told me: 'Tomorrow my son Ja'far is coming to avenge my blood, put him up and give him some advice.'" So he invited him in, and Ja'far was amazed at his words and dismounted to exchange greetings. The monk's name was Shammas. Ja'far came inside and he brought out bread, grapes and must-syrup that they ate. When night fell, Shammas took Ja'far by the hand and lead him through a door. Sayyid saw that there was a *masjid* with a *mihrab* properly arranged, with a Koran resting on its stand. He came forward and opened the Koran and saw that it had been written by his own father. He touched the Book with his face and eyes. Shammas on his part took off his monastic robes and put on some *sufi* clothes. He recited the call to prayer and Ja'far lead the prayer that they performed together. Once they were through with the prayer, Ja'far opened the Book and recited several chapters which he also explicated. [A 8] Shammas was amazed and told him many stories about Rûm and tales about Mihriyayil. He gave him plenty of advice and they chatted until the morning. When morning came they performed the dawn prayer and Ja'far mounted and took his leave of Shammas. He placed his trust in God and off he went.

He went hunting along the way and asking for God's help saying, "Creator, what if you were to help this helpless, miserable destitute servant of yours with your generosity and bounty, giving him strength and prowess so that I may capture the land of Rûm and destroy its churches and build mosques and madrasas in their place." All of a sudden, as he was in deep thought, a cavalryman appeared right across from him, his whole horse and arms drowned in red gold. As soon as he saw Ja'far he advanced and shouted, "Who are you, where are you coming from and where are you going in this neck of the woods?" Ja'far answered, "I come from Chîn, my father's name was Qanatos Zarkara, and I am very fond of martial arts." When the infidel took a closer look he saw that he was a handsome

young man, his face resembling a full moon, an eloquent young man whose eyelashes covered his cheeks and with black moles on his face, with a small round mouth whose teeth are like pearls. So as soon as this infidel saw him, he lost his mind and said, [A 9] "Young man, your fortune smiled at you: I am Mihriyayil's brother, my name is Shamasp. In Rûm and Syria there is no-one as skilled as me in martial arts. Now that you've come to me, I suggest you stay on and I will make you so skilled in martial arts that they'll speak of you all over. My own name has traveled far and wide, the caliph in Baghdad does not sleep out of his fear of me." Ja'far said, "It's not as if I don't know a thing or two myself, not to mention throwing the lance. You could try and see for yourself, how about that?" Shamasp said, "Fine, agreed," and hurled the mace he was holding in his hand. Ja'far waited for the mace to come down and when it did, he held it tight. Shamasp got furious and his eyes became bloodshot. He turned around and tried to pull the mace but Ja'far made a great effort and also pulled and snatched the mace from Shamasp's hands. The skin of the cursed man's palm stayed on the mace's holding edge. The cursed infidel rubbed his hands and tried to cross over to the other side but Ja'far dealt him such a blow with the mace between his shoulder blades that his feet slipped out of the stirrups and he collapsed on his back. Ja'far sprang down from his horse and sat on his chest clutching his beard. He put a knife to his throat and when Shamasp opened his eyes Ja'far invited him to religion. He saw that it did not look promising so he severed Shamasp's head from his body. He buried the body at once, mounted [A 10] and rode off.

That day he pressed on, hunting along everywhere he stopped. In the evening he rode on until dawn when he reached a shrubbery from where he looked down and saw a fortress and a magnificent city in front of it. In front of the city forty thousand warriors were camped, tents and barracks had been set up, and a red cabin-wagon had been pulled in the middle. He wondered, "Whose army may this be?" and saw a man coming. He asked him, "What's this city, and what sort of an army is this?" and the man answered, "This is Mamuriya and that is the army of Mihriyayil who martyred Husayn Ghazi. His aim now is to send troops to Malatya to destroy and ruin the city and kill its inhabitants, to level all of Syria in ruins and to burn their Kaaba in flames." So he spoke and left.

When Ja'far rolled down the hill he found himself in an exquisite place in the fields, a huge orchard. He walked around it and came to its gate and entered. It was like paradise. He strolled gazing at all the different kinds of fruit and sweet-scented flower beds up to the middle of the garden where he saw a fountain. There was a great old tree and a throne placed at its foot with a water fountain in front and a large pool full of fish moving joyfully about. Ja'far Ghazi put his horse aside, got on the throne and sat down. [A 11] While gazing around sleep overcame him, and he said to himself, "Let me lie down here for a

while. Afterwards I will place my trust in God and shall hurl myself upon the enemy if God the exalted gives me a chance," and fell asleep.

Empty place for miniature.

Now lo and behold this place was Mihriyayil's place to relax where he would frequently come and have entertainment gatherings. So this time as well he came with his begs and found a lovely young man handsome as the moon lying on the throne. The begs came in and [A 12] surrounded the throne. They looked at Ja'far as he was sleeping right there. Mihriyayil said, "Begis, who could this boy be?" The begs said, "He looks like a stranger," and Mihriyayil said, "He wouldn't have dared do such a thing if he were not a stranger, would he?"

Meanwhile Ja'far woke up from all the noise and commotion and saw that the begs had circled the throne. All the leaders were standing around and Mihriyayil was amongst them. Ja'far jumped down, brought his hands together and bowed in respect. Mihriyayil burst out laughing and got up on his throne. The begs assembled around him. Upon his order they roasted some game from those they had hunted. Then Mihriyayil summoned Ja'far and said, "Now then, who are you and where do you come from?" Ja'far said, "My father Sarjayil lives in the province of Chîn. Myself, I am just eager to learn horseback-riding and the martial arts and they told me that there are plenty of skilled instructors in Rûm." Mihriyayil laughed and said, "Your fortune has smiled at you and brought you here in my hands. They call me Mihriyayil and I am the commander-in-chief of the Caesar of Rûm. Mind you, I am a world famous warrior without a match. Syria and its environs have no peace out of their fear of me. I have seven hundred servants, all of them masters of martial art. [A 13] Any one of them could take on an army of a thousand men, only I will make you better than any of them." Ja'far bowed and then they brought in roasted meats and wine. Mihriyayil called Ja'far to his side, handed him some wine but Ja'far said, "When I took leave of my father I promised not to drink until my beard grows, and now I am bound by that promise. But by all means, let me pour for you." Then he walked up and washed his hands before accepting the jug from which he served wine to all these dogs. After they had a few cups to drink they all became drunk. That cursed Mihriyayil looked at Ja'far's face and saw how beautiful looking he was. The desire came to him to kiss him on the cheek so he got up and came down from the throne and took Ja'far by the hand and brought him to a lonely corner of the garden, a secluded spot where no-one could be aware of what they were doing. There Mihriyayil tried to kiss Ja'far a few times. Ja'far realized that the situation was becoming serious, and he thought to himself, "Hey, the time has come

to show him a few tricks." The cursed wretch stretched his hand to caress his neck and Ja'far looked at all four sides and made sure no-one was around. Then he said to himself, "Now is a good time to take back my father's blood" and, clenching his fist he cried out, "For God's sake" and in a violent outburst punched him in the chest and hurled him up in the air. He fell head down and Ja'far jumped on his chest and grabbed his beard with his hand as if it were a donkey's tail. [A 14] He put the knife to his throat and when Mihriyayil regained his consciousness he said, "Hey, what are you doing?" Ja'far said, "You cursed wretch, do you know who I am? I am the son of Husayn Ghazi, my name is Ja'far and I have come seeking my father's blood. Now, if you become a Muslim all is well, you're saved, but if you refuse then I am cutting your head off." That infidel started speaking nonsense and Ja'far saw that there was no coming to faith, so he severed his head from his body and the cursed infidel's soul went straight to hell.

Afterwards Ja'far came back and summoned two high ranking vice-regents (*malik*), "Come, Mihriyayil is calling for you." In this way he isolated them and cut their heads off. He isolated two more and killed them as well. All in all he killed fourteen famous begs. One last servant of Mihriyayil remained, named Aflahun. He isolated him as well and showed him the skulls of the others, saying, "Do you see what's going on? I am the son of Husayn Ghazi, so become Muslim at once, otherwise I will send you down their way." Aflahun straightway touched the earth with his face and became Muslim. Then they put those fourteen skulls in a sack and took their clothes, horses and armor. A good part of the night had gone by, but they got out and came to the place where Ja'far had killed Shamasp. They cut his head off as well, took his clothes and left. They reached Malatya in three days.

Meanwhile the army got word of what had happened to Mihriyayil and broke into great wailing and lamentation. [A 15] They found the fourteen begs without their heads and did not have a clue who had performed this act. They immediately wrote to the Caesar of Rûm about all that had happened. At the time the Caesar of Rûm was called Araqil. When he received the letter and they read it to him, he heard what had happened and at first he threw his crown on the ground and then he himself collapsed to the ground like a strangled chick and lamented. They were in mourning for forty days.

Meanwhile, Ja'far reached Malatya. Husayn Ghazi had four orchards and there was a pavilion in each one. Ja'far came to one of the orchards and left the skulls along with the horses and Aflahun there. He went back into the city alone. It was already dawn by the time he got home. His mother was crying and mourning when he came in and offered his greetings. She saw him and sighed, "My son, where have you been? You just abandoned me and rode off. Where have you been?" She kissed his face and eyes and Ja'far told her

his story. His mother offered a prayer of thanks. The news reached Tawabil who also came along and greeted Ja'far saying, "My dear, where have you been"? Ja'far said, "I went and killed the killer of my father and I've brought back several skulls as a token." Tawabil rejoiced and was happy. Then the news reached the companions and they came to present their greetings and brought Ja'far to Amir Umar. [A 16] He came up to meet him and they exchanged greetings. All the notables gathered and were delighted to see Ja'far's face. Amir Umar raised his head and said, "Oh Ja'far, we've heard that you've gone to Rûm, so did you avenge your father's blood? How did it all happen?" Ja'far knelt and said, "For your good fortune I got there and killed Mihriyayil and his brother Shamasp along with fourteen more begs. I have brought their heads as a token for my sultan. One of them I turned into a Muslim." As soon as Abdu'l-Salam heard the tidings he broke into loud laughter. Once he started laughing everyone started laughing along, saying, "If you met Mihriyayil, not even a hundred like you would be able to move him from his place. What sort of nonsense are you talking about? What sort of idle talk is this?" Ja'far said, "Lying is not for men. Fourteen skulls and their horses and clothes are all waiting in our orchard." He instructed Tawabil, "Go and fetch the new Muslim and those skulls at once." Off he went and came back with Aflahun and the skulls. He dropped right there in the middle. They recognized the skull of Mihriyayil and Shamasp and they all praised Ja'far amidst great rejoicing and happiness. Except for Abdu'l-Salam, whose blood froze in his veins and who lost his breath. Quickly they removed the skulls and hung them from the tower. Then they wrote a letter to the caliph and informed him about every single detail. [A 17]

When the letter reached the caliph he rejoiced and was happy and he quickly replied with praises for Ja'far. He sent robes of honor to Ja'far and Amir Umar and many other *begs* saying, "Watch out and be careful lest the Caesar of Rûm march against you. Do not be in the least afraid, just place your trust in God." So here they all were in the midst of joy and festivities.

The story of Rabi' the Son of the Caesar.

The story tellers say that, meanwhile, on this side, Shamun, the son of the Caesar of Rûm was in Istanbul when his uncle died. With many of his begs they mourned in screams. Then they sent out their spies who came back with the news that apparently it was a son of Husayn Ghazi who had done all this. Without delay they wrote a letter to the Caesar of Rûm informing him that Husayn Ghazi had a son and it was he who killed Mihriyayil. He is still barely fourteen years old. If you do not give orders and get prepared in a few days he's going to be worse than his father. It is better to deal with this right

now." When the letter reached the Caesar of Rûm he learned what the story was and they held deliberations regarding what they should do.

The Caesar of Rûm had four sons, the older one was Shamun, then Shammās, then Qonstantin and then the youngest and fourth, Rabi'. So Rabi' stood up and said, "Padishah, I have heard that it was a boy that killed my uncle. He's a boy, and I am a boy, [A 18] so please allow me to go and avenge my father's blood." His father said, "That would be fine" and he gave the order at once for forty thousand men to prepare their horse and get armed. Then he said, "Be careful and do not kill that boy. Bring him alive to me so that I may flay him and parade him all over Rûm." There were two accursed wretches standing there, one was called Kipriyanos and the other Abriyanos. They were both brave warriors. The padishah also assigned them along, so forty thousand men with forty thousand pairs of kettle-drums marched off.

When Rabi' came close to the realm of Islam he wrote a letter to Amir Umar saying, "You should be advised that you are to get hold of the son of Husayn Ghazi and deliver him to me. Furthermore, you should also pay me a *kharaj* of seven years, and swear obedience, along with your caliph, to the Caesar of Rûm. Should you refuse, be advised that I have come with the purpose of destroying your Kaaba and will spare neither you nor the caliph." He sent the messenger at once.

One day the Muslims were potting around in the presence of Amir Umar. A messenger entered with a letter in his hands. He placed the letter in front of Amir Umar. They read it and were dumbfounded. Abdu'l-Salam raised his head and said, "Killing a slumbering man is easy, isn't it? Well, since it was this boy who raised such sedition, let him be the one to reply now. It will not do to step on the tail of a sleeping snake. [A 19] So here, let him seek out the adversary and answer himself." Ja'far took the letter and tore it up to pieces and quickly wrote down an answer to send back, "I am the sole person responsible for these acts, I did not consult with anyone, so here I've come on my own again. Let this man do whatever he thinks he should." Abdu'l-Salam said, "Aren't you a pompous young brat. Can't you just say, 'Here, I made a mistake and committed this act, you who are old and esteemed, could you help me?' Can you not even plead for that?" Ja'far said, "This is an insult here, these are not kind words. I put my trust with God and I have nothing to worry about," and he got out and left.

Meanwhile, the messenger came to Rabi' and gave the news. Rabi' b. Qaysar became furious. Upon his order the army mounted and was on its way.

On this side Ja'far came home, called Ashqar and saddled his armor. He took out a leather sack and opened it in the middle of the room and he put on all the thirty six spoils of arms that the warrior Hamza used to wear, without forgetting any single one. He put the



sword of Zahhak around his neck and waist and grabbed the lance of Kaykawus. His poor mother was crying, "My dear boy, where are you off to again?" Ja'far said, "My dear beloved mother, may your good fortune be with me." He got out and came up to the city's gates. The guard's name was Ibrahim b. Masud. [A 20] He was standing by the gate. Ja'far said, "Hey Ibrahim, quickly open that gate." Ibrahim said, "Where are you off to?" He said, "I am going out against the infidels. Either I will lose my head or I shall get the heads of others." Ibrahim said, "Look, there's a huge army out there. Wait till the morning and you can go out with the rest of the Muslims." It was no use though, Ja'far forced the gate open and rode off.

That night he rode till dawn. He arrived at a fountain and dismounted. He performed his ablutions and the dawn prayer, then mounted and rode off reciting lines from the Koran.

In the morning the Muslims gathered in the prayer place but Ja'far did not come. The gate guard said, "In the middle of the night he came banging on the gate and calling for me. He brought me out and whether I wanted or not he had me open the gate. He just said 'I am going out against the infidels' and off he went." Amir Umar said, "Dear me, he's just a boy, heaven forbid that something bad should happen to him. Rush to his aid." Abdu'l-Salam said, "He just got afraid and fled. Don't for a moment think that he's going to stand against the enemy. He simply raised sedition in our midst and now he has gotten out and fled." Tawabil said, "God forbid, no-one from his family ever turned his back to the enemy, and he will not be the first to do that. Whereas you have just sat down here and the only thing you can still do is insult brave young men. [A 21] Goodness Gracious. What skills have you got to show for? Ever since Husayn Ghazi died all you've been doing is live on the alms of Ja'far's father's sword." Abdu'l-Salam also spoke a number of unspeakable things. Tawabil said, "You've even abandoned the *ghazas*. You just stay at home and start rotting, but now that Ja'far is gone, I am off too." He walked out and came and found his horse, his clothes and his armor, mounted, and rode off.

There was a ghazi called Juda who had four sons, Sulayman, Awhad, Muhammad and Musa. They were Ja'far's companions. They also got up and said, "We're also going along." They put on their armor and rode off.

Meanwhile Ja'far reached the monastery of Shamma who came out to meet him. He took him inside and praised him greatly for having killed Mihriyayil. He brought him food, and they performed their ablutions and the dawn prayer. Said Shamma, "My dear, where to this time?" Ja'far said, "The Caesar of Rûm's son with an army of forty thousand is coming to seek his father's blood. The companions heard it and were panicked, so I put my trust in God and I am marching against them. If I am martyred, mine will be a good

fortune." Shammās said, "It's a great army, how can you go on your own?" Ja'far, "As many as they may be, I am not going back. Whatever should be, should be." [A 22]

While they were discussing this the band across started beating the kettle-drums and blowing the trumpets and there was great tumult. Ja'far quickly pulled Ashqar out, mounted and said, "Old man, may your blessings and fortune be with me, take a look from the roof of the monastery and watch what, God willing, I will do to them." He marched across, climbed a hill and stood there until the dust settled. Forty thousand men lined up in rows and came out and saw a mounted king (*shah*) standing across. They quickly informed Rabi' and he sent an infidel to see who it was. He rushed up and said, "Who are you and what are you doing here?" Ja'far said, "I am the person you are looking for, the one who killed Mihriyayil together with fourteen of his begs." The infidel said, "You are the son of Husayn Ghazi?" Ja'far said, "Indeed, I am the one" and he said, "With what kind of guts could you achieve such things without being afraid of the Caesar of Rûm?" Ja'far said, "Hey you faithless dog, where have been lying asleep? My intention is to cut the head of the Caesar of Rûm off and to make the whole Rûm part of the realm of Islam, to pull down its churches and build mosques instead" As soon as he said this cursed wretch became furious saying, "Hey, my name is Tanos the Greek, and now I will cut you in two." He hurled his sword and charged in attack. Ja'far pulled out the sword of Zahhak, shouted, "*God is Great*" and hit him under the arm so powerfully that his head, both his hands and part of his breast went flying in the air. [A 23] From the roof of the monastery Shammās sung his praises; "The eye of God be upon you, warrior-son" he said.

Great lament rose from the infidels camp. The Caesar of Rûm sent another infidel whom they called Jumhur, a man in his own service, a famous person indeed. He sent him out but Ja'far offered no mercy and thrashed him. The Caesar of Rûm became furious and told Kipriyanos, "Come on, rush and thrash this fellow, my army's honor is being washed away like water." That cursed wretch drove his horse into the battle field. He carried a mace on his shoulder as big as a mountain, weighing five hundred *batmans*. He charged in awe and dread and hurled his mace. Ja'far held the shield of Gushtasp tight against it. It came and landed on him but did not touch not even a hair of his. God the exalted had protected him. This cursed wretch got furious at not having killed him. He hurled it a second time but this time Ja'far held both his palms against it when it was coming down. The whole battlefield shook from his loud scream as he held it from its two hooks and pulled it away from the infidels so that the skin of this palms stayed on the handle. He stood there rubbing his palms while Ja'far exclaimed, "Well done!" Then he blew his own mace saying, "In the name of God and the blessing of the light of Muhammad Mustafa." His blow

carried with it both Kipriyanos and the shield. The shield was crushed as the mace landed on his head and his brains scattered about.

Once again there was great lament and mourning in the side of Rûm. This time his brother Abriyanos charged and hurled his sword. While the two of them were fighting dust rose from the way to Malatya and Tawabil appeared and saw that the army had lined up for battle and colorful banners were raised. Ja'far had thrashed Kipriyanos and was now fighting with Abriyanos. [A 24] The cursed wretch had hurled his sword but Ja'far obstructed it. He hurled a mace and Ja'far still repelled it. Now it was Ja'far's turn. He spurred Ashqar and reached and grabbed Abriyanos by the belt. With a powerful effort he snatched this infidel big as a mountain with all his armor and garments away from his horse.

Just at that moment the four sons of Juda appeared and they saw that this army wide like the sea was standing there and Ja'far, in the middle of the battlefield had thrashed some infidels and had snatched one from his horse. They were amazed.

Ja'far made another powerful effort and threw Abriyanos up in the air and hit him with his sword as he was coming down, cutting him into two pieces. Juda and Sulayman and Awhad and Musa and Tawabil, these five warriors pronounced a prayer. Ja'far shouted and invited anyone to come to the battlefield, but no-one had the courage. He saw that no-one would come. He dismounted and tightened the stirrup in three places, and then jumped back on the saddle again. He let out a war-cry like Hamza's, entrusted himself to God, the Creator of himself, the sky and the heavens above, and, spurring Ashqar, charged against the army of the infidels. When these five leaders saw him and the banner they also charged forward.

Meanwhile, when Abdu'l-Wahhab noticed that the sons of Juda and Tawabil had marched off he said, "Oh Amir Umar, is this what being a devout Muslim and good leadership are all about? The infidels have attacked us and a few of our brothers are supposed to march out against them while we sit at home thinking ill of them?" [A lacuna, P 17<sup>a</sup>] Amir said, "You've spoken well blessed old man," and he gave the order and they blew the trumpets and five thousand Sunni Muslims prepared themselves for battle. First they dispatched Ali b. Hashim with a thousand men, then another thousand with Abdu'l-Salam and yet another thousand with Abdu'l-Wahhab. Two thousand ghazis marched off with Umar, the Commander of the Faithful.

Ali b. Hashim arrived first with his thousand troops. They charged and spilled so much infidel blood that it flowed like a flood. All the while, Shammas was reciting prayers from the monastery's roof. Abdu'l-Salam arrived after him and also charged forth. Rabi' realized that the situation was extremely grave, as no-one could resist Ja'far. He sighed

heavily and shouted once, "What is it with you, men. You have completely disgraced Lat and Manat." While he was saying that Amir Umar arrived [P 17<sup>b</sup>] with his two thousand men who charged forth crying, "*God is Great.*" Ja'far saw that the Muslims arrived and he was emboldened. He gave such a powerful war-cry that the armies of the infidels and Muslims crushed against each other. Many lost their minds and fell off their horses for they had never heard such a war-cry. Ja'far would hit some with the sword and cut them in two and others with the mace and smash them into smithereens. He would charge against the right wing of the infidels and come out on their left and he would annihilate any troops that fell in his way.

Meanwhile, Ja'far gave another thunderous war-cry and steered his horse against Rabi' b. Qaysar. He shouted, "What on earth, stop him" and the archers fired their arrows. They fired the small sharp pointed and cross-bow arrows, but it was all to no avail. Ja'far looked like a red tiger from all the blood. He returned against Rabi' and hit with his sword, cutting the banner and its bearer into two, as if he was reaping with a sickle. Then he snatched Rabi' b. Qaysar from his horse, throwing him to the ground. He wanted to dismount in order to tie him up when Aflahun and Tawabil appeared from behind and he ordered them to do it instead. The Muslims broke the ranks of the infidels' army. Then they chased after the infidels, they killed them, caught them captive, tied them up and brought them back. Ja'far came to the tent of the Caesar of Rûm and Amir Umar and Juda with his sons and Abdu'l-Wahhab and Tawabil and Abdu'l-Salam and all the boon-companions and the peers, they all gathered in one place and held council. [P 18<sup>a</sup>] Ja'far ordered, "So where is the son of the Caesar of Rûm? Bring him over," and Aflahun fetched him. He was a handsome young boy, a real darling. Ja'far said, "Come on, Rabi', become a Muslim and rescue your head from the sword and your soul from the fire of hell. If you refuse you'll lose your head and die in disbelief and darkness." Just at that time the exalted God led him to the right path and he raised his finger, professed the faith and became Muslim. Five thousand men had fallen prisoner, they saw this grace of God and they all professed the faith and became Muslim. They all lowered their faces on the ground in front of Ja'far and the Muslims provided them all with a mantle. [A 25] Ja'far gave Rabi' his tent back and he on his part distributed a lot of goods to the ghazis. As for the ghazis, out of five thousand ghazis only two hundred had been martyred and the rest came over and offered prayers in front of Ja'far, who greeted them all. Shammās also came from the monastery, and they informed Ja'far who promptly came out to meet him along with Amir Umar. Ja'far explained the story of how Shammās was a Muslim to the begs, and they all greeted him. Then they sat down and had something to eat. Offering thanks they prepared sherbets and passed their time in pleasant conversation.

Then Juda, Ali b. Hashim, Sulayman and Awhad stood up from their places, offered prayers in front of Ja'far and said, "From now on we are all Ja'far's servants, you are our leader." Ja'far on his part thanked them for their kindness and they became truthful and sincere servants to Ja'far.

Then Abdu'l-Wahhab stood up from his place and said, "My friends, with your permission, I also have something to say." Amir Umar and the notables said, "Let us hear it," and Abdu'l-Wahhab said, "Friends, it was the pride of the two worlds Muhammad Mustafa -may God bless Him and protect Him- that sent me to this place and station. Gabriel came once and gave us a description of this young brave man and said that he would conquer the entire land of Rûm and pull down its churches and build mosques. Such signs [A 26] that Gabriel told the Apostle of God -may God bless Him and protect Him- the Apostle passed on to my worthless self and to His companions. Now I have observed in this brave young man here all the signs that I have heard and all the movements that were described to me. Here then is the apostle's letter." With these words he produced the letter, kissed it and then rubbed it on his head. Then he stepped forward and left it in front of Amir Umar.

When the ghazis saw the letter of the Apostle of God they stood up on their feet and exclaimed, "*God is Great.*" The letter was wrapped in silk and everyone was overwhelmed with the scent of musk and amber. They opened it and saw that it had been written by the Commander of the Faithful Uthman -may God be pleased with him. He had written the praises to the name of God, and continued, "I, the Apostle of the exalted God" followed by the chosen companions -may the grace of God be upon them. Then the letter read, "Let it be known to my prosperous community that the Creator of the world -may His glory be exalted- has commanded that two hundred years after You there shall come to the world in the city of Malatya a boy from your line and his name shall be Ja'far. He shall have a mole on his right cheek, and he shall be red-cheeked and tall. He'll conquer the whole of Rûm and deliver it from infidelity and darkness. He shall build mosques in the place of churches. Whoever survives till that time from my community let him obey this Ja'far. Let no-one disobey any of his decrees. Whatever Ja'far said it is as if I have said it. [A 27] Whatever he decrees it is as if I have decreed it. I, the first and final Apostle, am very pleased with Ja'far. In accordance with the command of the exalted God I have sent Abdu'l-Wahhab over there where he may reach this brave young man. He is to give him my greetings and pass on my own saliva to him." At that moment Abdu'l-Wahhab took a step forward, opened his own mouth and said, "Look deep down!" They looked and saw that he had something small and round like a nut in his mouth. He said anxiously, "Did you see it?" and they said, "We've always been seeing that. What is it?" Abdu'l-Wahhab

said, "This is the saliva from the blessed mouth of the Apostle of God that I've been saving. He gave it to me to hold in trust and told me, "Let this be an important sign that you should entrust to this young man when you find him." He walked up to Ja'far and said, "Open your mouth." Ja'far opened his mouth and the blessed saliva came out of Abdu'l-Wahhab's mouth and entered Ja'far's. As soon as Ja'far swallowed it he acquired perfect knowledge of seventy two different languages and of the twelve sciences. The Sunnis saw that and were happy and they all prayed for Ja'far. Everyone's affection for him became a thousand times stronger. Ja'far also took the letter, rubbed it on his head and wore it around his arm. Even Abdu'l-Salam unwillingly had to applaud Ja'far.

Thereafter they departed in the direction of Malatya [A 28] and when they reached the city the crowds came out to meet them amidst great celebration and rejoicing. Ja'far sent Juda to the caliph with seven hundred loads of silver and two hundred horses from the spoils as gifts. When the conquest-account reached the caliph he read it and was delighted. He sent messengers all around the province of Syria to spread the tidings. Upon the caliph's orders they gave mantles to Rabi' and Juda. They stayed there for seven days and on the eighth day the caliph ordered a diploma to be written up with which they assigned to Ja'far his father's leadership of the army. The caliph gave Ja'far the turban of the Commander of the Faithful Husayn, the sword of Muhammad Hanifa, the mace of Landuh and the standard banner of the Commander of the Faithful Hattab. Moreover, he sent mantles and advise to Amir Umar and all the other famous ghazis.

When the caliph's letter arrived the notables gathered all in one place and read the diploma and were delighted, except for Abdu'l-Salam who fell into deep grief.

Meanwhile, on the other side, the defeated army reached the caesar. They reported the news and told him the story of his son. He smashed his crown to the ground and started screaming. For seven days he did not sit on the throne and did not see anyone's face. He did not eat even a mouthful. The begs and viziers gathered and entered his presence saying, "Lord, this is not a matter to be solved with tears. One needs help. Let us raise an army and march against the Muslims and put them all to the sword." [A 29] They lead the caesar to the throne and he sat on it. Then they sent out letters.

Now the caesar had a nephew called Ahmar Tarran who was an extremely robust warrior. He brought him along and assigned a hundred thousand men to him, and gave him his own banner with the cross. He also took out the cross of victory from his own family ancestors and gave it to him. He sent him off saying, "Do not rest or sleep until you destroy that province."

On this side, the news reached Amir Umar, they informed him that Ahmar had arrived. Upon his order some of the inhabitants of the country provinces came into the city

and some dispersed around the mountains. On the other side, the caesar summoned his elder son who was called Shamun and assigned fifty thousand men to him and sent him off following Ahmar. Thereafter he summoned Shammas and gave him fifty thousand men as well. He also assigned Mihran b. Ilyun, Faridun and the infidel Sarjayil, who were all high-ranking viziers. They came over and met with Ahmar and then they marched together.

Yahya b. Mansur was the spy for the army of Islam and he came with the news that the two sons of the caesar, Shammas and Shamun, and Ahmar with two hundred thousand men had camped at such and such a place. When the notables of Malatya heard this news they made a public announcement for every one to prepare for a *ghaza*. They came out in front of the city and pitched their tents [A 30] and raised their banners. All together, there gathered twelve thousand ghazis and Muslims in armor, as well as three thousand infantry men. They came to a place called Qaraqib Brook and stayed there.

Ja'far, however, mounted his horse and advanced climbing to the top of a hill. He looked down and saw a huge army; God only knows how big it was. He pulled on the reins and stood there for a while looking out. He exclaimed, "Oh God, for you all the difficult things are easy. What if you were to do this weak miserable servant of yours a favor and just turn all these cursed wretches into weak cowards?" Just as he was saying this he saw Juda coming with his four sons and said, "Ja'far, what are you doing here? This army is not like the other one that came before. This one is like a sea compared to the previous one. We shall have to fight in full armor and with a proper strategy."

As they were standing there the scouts of the infidels' army noticed them and sent the report that a man was spotted. At once these two hundred thousand troops mounted in commotion. Ja'far said, "My friends you sit back and watch what I am going to do to them for a while." He dismounted and pulled his horse's girth and was ready to charge in attack when Tawabil came along in a rush and said, "My dear, be a little patient. Our army here has arrived. Let us have a council and decide what to do." Following him, Amir Umar appeared with ten thousand cavalry-men in full armor, three thousand infantry and the banner of Umar b. Hattab. [A 31] Amir Umar came up and stopped Sayyid. , "There isn't much time, let us look for a place to settle down" they said. They persuaded Ja'far and held council. Abdu'l-Wahhab said, "Come, let us camp at that mountain top and dig a moat all around and put in a couple of gates from where we'll get out and engage them in battle." They found this most appropriate and went ahead and did it.

Meanwhile, Shamun ordered and they wrote a letter that he gave to a warrior called Bulqas. He assigned him forty men and sent him off. Amir Umar and the rest of the begs were sitting around when they announced, "An envoy has arrived." They showed him the way and he came in and handed over the letter. They read it and it went like this, "Amir

Umar and the rest of the begs, on behalf of the Fire of Light (*nār-i nūr*) and myself, Shamun, the son of the Caesar of Rûm, be advised that you should get hold of the son of Husayn and deliver him to me with his hands tied behind his neck. Moreover, that old man who keeps saying, "I've seen Muhammad -may God bless Him and protect Him-" is lying and you should also hand him over to me. Finally you should send me tribute for seven years. Let your caliph wrap his throat in a shroud and come and bring the tribute to send to the caesar. Should you refuse, I will persecute you from here to the gate of the Kaaba destroying everything on the way and shall set the Kaaba up in flames." As soon as Ja'far heard this he got up from his place and cut Bulqas' nose and two ears, [A 32] and he gave a warning to everyone of those remaining saying, "Go and tell Shamun that it has been ordained that I will conquer the whole of Rûm and turn it into an abode of Islam; I shall demolish its churches and build mosques in their place. I shall hang the Caesar of Rûm from his neck and shall ruin Istanbul."

When the envoy came back to Shamun and presented his report, Shamun's heart jumped to his head. That evening he had no sleep till the following morning. When the light of day came Shamun gave the order and they rolled the drums of war and the infidels' army mounted and lined up in rows for battle. The whole sky was covered in iron.

On the other side, the Muslims also mounted and made a sortie from the moat and twelve thousand Sunni Muslims lined up in rows and waited. The first to enter the battlefield was Juda. He asked for a man to fight with. An infidel stepped in, but Juda had no mercy upon him and thrashed him right away. One by one he thrashed twenty infidels, the Sunnis rejoiced and Shamun got furious. There was a warrior called Ilyas b. Sunbat, he was the first to enter the battlefield and he fought fiercely with Juda until noon. Ilyas got very upset and hurled his sword but missed Juda's shield; Juda pulled his head away so that it hit the horse's neck. The horse collapsed but they quickly brought another horse, while Sulayman charged and rescued his father. Sulayman came up to Ilyas and hit him with the sword. [A 33] Ilyas' shield was cut in two and the sword landed on his side, opening a small wound. The cursed wretch ran away from Sulayman and the Muslims rejoiced. Noon had arrived so they performed their prayer and then kept a close eye on the battlefield again. Faridun the Persian entered the battlefield and hurled a mace at Sulayman whose shield was smashed in his hands. Sulayman fell off his horse and Awhad with Musa charged and collected him. Ali b. Sa'id attacked next and when Faridun hurled his sword, he avoided it and broke it with his whip. The cursed wretch attempted to cross over but Ali hit him so hard that he cut him into two pieces. The Muslims applauded. Seven more infidels entered the battlefield and Ali thrashed them. The infidels wailed and lamented loudly.



Ahmar Tarran led his steed into battle with great fury, and hit Ali with his mace. Ali's shield became two pieces in his hand. He avoided being hit in the head, but the blow hit the horse and he collapsed along with it. Abdu'l-Salam drove his horse into battle and they had a few missed attempts with Ahmar. Ahmar got furious and hit with his mace. The mace smashed Abdu'l-Salam's shield and landed on his chest. He collapsed from his horse, but his servants made a charge and managed to grab and pull him out of the battle. That day Ahmar held the field and defeated forty Sunni Muslims, killing some and injuring some. [A 34] He still asked for a challenger, but no one came forward. Ahmar attacked on the right wing, brought down a lot of men and wrought great havoc before returning to the battlefield again. The infidels' army was pleased and happy. Shamun prayed for Ahmar and upon his order they threw coins over him. He threw a mantle over him, parading him around until they came to his tent and started feasting. Ahmar said, "My padishah, tomorrow I will get that Ja'far and that old man who said, "I've seen Muhammad", I will get them both with their hands tied up and bring them to my sultan." The caesar prayed a prayer.

On this side, the Sunnis, saddened, took their ablutions and performed the evening prayer. In the morning the infidels' army mounted and came to the battle ground and stood there in rows. The Muslims also mounted and came out from their trenches, lined up for battle and waited. Abdu'l-Wahhab entered the battlefield and shouted, "I am Abdu'l-Wahhab ghazi who saw Muhammad -may God bless Him and protect Him- and fought many *ghazas* with him, so whoever wants to die let him come forward." Ahmar heard him and entered the battlefield and fearlessly hurled his lance. Abdu'l-Wahhab deflected it and hurled his own lance, which Ahmar deflected. There were twelve unsuccessful attempts. [A 35] Ahmar got really furious and hit Abdu'l-Wahhab with the mace. It smashed his shield and landed at the back of his neck. He lost his breath and blood flowed from his mouth and nose as he collapsed from his horse. Amir Umar led his steed into the field and blocked Ahmar's front. Ahmar saw a padishah in lordly clothes but looking weak. He pulled himself together and said, "Who are you?" He replied, "I am Amir Umar, the leader of the Sunnis." Ahmar said, "You are just the one I was looking for," and they started fighting. Abdu'l-Salam saw that and came next to Ja'far saying, "You black-omen, so many Muslims have been destroyed because of your evilness . Damn the evil hour when your mother gave birth to you, and damn the moment you rode a horse. What a fool Amir Umar is. What are you standing there like that for, after having destroyed the whole world?" He spoke many such niceties, but Ja'far was patient and was not disturbed by them.

Meanwhile, Ahmar avoided all of Amir Umar's lance, sword and mace. Then it was his turn. He hit Amir with the mace and Amir did not manage to hold his shield against it, but just pulled his head away so that it landed on the horse's head instead. The horse collapsed dead. Ja'far could not stay put any longer, and he gave such a thunderous war-cry from where he was standing that Ahmar thought that the earth and the heavens had collapsed together. Everyone on the side of the Muslims and the infidels was astonished. Ahmar collected himself and saw that someone on horseback was coming from across:

[A 36] a most awe-inspiring warrior riding a horse whose legs did not even touch the ground but were gently flying over it. He arrived, and when he drew near he pulled the veil from his face and Ahmar saw that it was only a boy. He became furious and said, "Hey, was there no real man around and they had to send a boy?" Ja'far said, "Do not pay any attention to my lack of years. I am the one who killed Mihriyayil and Shamasp." Ahmar said, "Well, in that case, you are the one I have been looking for. Where have you been?" and hurled the lance at his hand. As it was coming at him, Ja'far smashed it with his whip and it broke into many pieces. Ahmar was enraged. He took the mace in his hand and hurled it. Ja'far held the back of his shoulder to Ahmar's mace and even though it came down and hit him there, the exalted God protected him and, thanks to a blessed miracle of Muhammad, not even a hair of his was touched. The cry, "*God is Great*" of the Muslims reached the high heavens.

Empty place for miniature.

[A 37] Abdu'l-Wahhab shouted, "God's eye is with you, oh warrior." Shammas and Shamun saw him and said, "Good grief, who's this person that turned his back to the mace of a brave warrior like Ahmar?" Fear settled over them and they lost their breath. Ahmar, furious, attempted a second attack with his mace. This time Ja'far snatched it as it was coming down and pulled away from Ahmar's hands. He threw it up in the air and caught it again as it was coming down, shouting at Ahmar, "Be ready Ahmar." He hit such a blow that the shield that Ahmar held against it was smashed into little pieces, and the mace landed on his shoulder. Ahmar lost his breath and blood flowed from his mouth and nose and he collapsed long and wide. The Muslims' cry of triumph reached the high heavens.

Ja'far pulled his horse's head and waited. They rushed in another horse and Ahmar mounted and collected himself. He moved up to Ja'far again and was amazed at Ja'far's manhood. He said, "Ja'far, evening has come, so why don't you go rest this evening. I myself have been heedless, so let us meet again tomorrow." Ja'far came and said, "That

should be fine," and the two of them turned back. Ja'far was met by the Muslims with great rejoicing and praise. The infidels retreated in confusion and returned to their tents. Shamun and Shammas took their places on the throne and [A 38] Ahmar came and sat on a golden chair. He went through, moment by moment, Ja'far's bravery and heroism, so that Shammas said, "Ahmar, you had fought too much, otherwise there's no comparison between the two of you." Ahmar on his part said, "Yes, I also have never seen such a young man in my life before."

On this side, the faithful performed their ablutions and prayer. Ja'far was the prayer leader in the evening. After praying, they brought food and they ate. Then Ja'far came to his own tent, put on Rûm clothes, rode his horse and started off for the infidels' army. On the way he fell upon Tawabil standing guard. Tawabil saw him and said, "Ja'far, where on earth are you going?" Ja'far said, "May your grace be with me, I am going in the direction of the army of Rûm." Tawabil said, "Don't go, they might find out and capture you." Ja'far said, "Good God, I am going. I must find out what God the exalted has me written up for," and off he went. He hid his horse somewhere and then came up to Shammas' tent. He saw that the lords (*mālikler*) were sitting around. Ahmar was sitting on a red golden chair and was talking about Ja'far's bravery, "During my lifetime I have not seen a young man as handsome and well-mannered." He kept on praising Ja'far and emptying his glass [A 40] and shaking his head. Ja'far stood there and watched him for a while. Then Ahmar got up and left, and Ja'far followed him. He left the army-camp with some servants leading the way. He excused them for the night and they turned back and walked away. Ja'far said, "Let me just see where he's going."

Ahmar crossed two stream valleys and two hilltops and came to a field. A magnificent orchard appeared in the middle of the field. He came to the orchard gate, dismounted, got in, tied his horse and fastened the gate. He went off saying, "God forbid that any Muslim should come here." Ja'far got in after him and saw that there was a pavilion inside the orchard and a staircase. He also saw that Ahmar was walking inside the orchard checking if there was anyone around, saying, "God forbid that there should be a Muslim hiding here." Ja'far said, "Anytime now Ahmar is going to look over here, so I may as well go up the stairs." He went upstairs and saw a young maiden, as beautiful as the full moon, sitting on a throne. A feast was going on: wine and tasty tidbits were being served, and candles were burning in decorated golden candleholders. Ahmar came in and the girl came up to him putting her hand on his shoulder. He took her and carried her back onto the throne. She asked, "Why did you come so late?" and he answered, "I was with Shamun and Shammas." They had a couple of glasses of wine and then the girl made a sign and they brought a sizzling roast of lamb. [A 41]

Empty place for miniature (eight lines).

They ate a couple of bites and Ahmar became excited. He raised his glass and said, "I am drinking this wine in toast of him who defeated me in battle today." She asked, "Who defeated you?" and Ahmar started praising Ja'far's bravery and handsomeness so much that Ja'far said, "It would be strange if this brave man does not become a Muslim." Ahmar became drunk and with every glass he drank, he would say, "I am drinking this for the sake of that boy." Ja'far rolled down the stairs and said, "Cheers to your health!" Ahmar panicked. He said, "Who are you?" [A lacuna, P 25<sup>a</sup>] and Ja'far said, "I am the one you were just toasting! When I fought with you today, I thought you were an enemy, but I see now you are a dear friend, drinking in my name. Come now and become a Muslim and a dear friend to me, and rescue your soul from the fire of Hell." Ahmar said, "What on earth are you doing here?" Ja'far said, "Watch out, I am present everywhere they mention my name." Ahmar said, "Well, you are certainly welcome here. Now tell me, how about if the two of us were to wrestle and if you press me down I will become a Muslim, and if I press you down, you'll enter my religion." Ja'far said, "That's fine." Ahmar put on the special loose pants and came up to Ja'far saying, "Here, give me your belt and you hold mine." So they held each other's belts and Ahmar tried hard three times but he could not move Ja'far.

The maiden stood there watching these two dragons in the middle of the night. Ahmar was very upset that he couldn't even move Ja'far, [P 25<sup>b</sup>] and was about to punch him, but Ja'far gave such a war-cry that the earth started to tremble and birds flew away from their night nests. Terror struck the earth and Ahmar with the maiden were scared beyond their minds. Ja'far put all his strength and threw Ahmar to the ground on his back. He sprang like a falcon on his chest, and when Ahmar opened his eyes he saw Ja'far was sitting on his chest. Ja'far said, "How about keeping your promise now?" and Ahmar said, "Keeping one's word is what manhood is all about." Ja'far stood up from his chest, and Ahmar got up and rubbed his head on the ground in front of Ja'far saying, "What should I say in order to become a Muslim?" Ja'far taught him the words of the profession of faith, and he declared his faith and became Muslim with the words, "I testify that there is no God but God and that Muhammad is His servant and apostle." Without delay Ahmar poured a glass and offered it to Ja'far saying, "Have a drink of this wine." Ja'far said, "In our religion it is forbidden to drink this." As soon as the maiden heard this, she set the table and served roasted lamb.

They had a little to eat and then Ahmar said, "Oh Ja'far, I would like give you a proper name if you don't mind." Ja'far said, "So be it." Ahmar said, "May your name be

Battal." Then Battal said, "I will also give you a name" and now Ahmar said, "So be it." Battal said, "May your name be Ahmad Turran." They sat around happy and joyful and Sayyid Battal Ghazi was greatly grateful. [P 26<sup>a</sup>] Ahmad said, "Brave warrior, here's what I propose: you go back to your place and I shall go back to my army. Tomorrow come to battlefield and so will I, and we'll have a duel where you'll bring me down and I will accept the faith in the middle, so that everyone hears it. And then, you stand back and watch what I am going to do to the infidels' army." Battal said, "That would be nice," and the two of them got up and went to their armies.

When morning came the two armies got ready and lined up for battle. Battal entered the battlefield and shouted, "Where is Ahmar, let him come forth so we can have a duel." Ahmar rode his horse and surveyed the battlefield. Battal took a look and saw that this was not the Ahmar he had seen the previous night since he behaved as if the agreement had been broken. So Battal said, "Ahmar, are you breaking your agreement? How could you do that?" Ahmar said, "Last night is now gone, and today is a new day. Last night I was drunk, so that does not count," and hurled the lance he was holding.

On this side, Sayyid whipped his whip from all the way across and broke it into pieces. Ahmar came over in order to pass but Battal punched him so hard that his feet slipped off the stirrup and he collapsed hanging on his head. A cry was heard from the army of Islam, they all shouted bravos. Battal got on his chest like a falcon and put a knife to his throat saying, "Ahmar, [P 26<sup>b</sup>] do you stand by your word last night?" Ahmad asked for mercy and Sayyid Battal got up. Ahmad stood up as well and then put his head on Battal's foot, turned his face towards the infidels and said in a very loud voice, "I testify that there is no God but God and Muhammad is His servant and apostle." So he pronounced the word of testimony and said, "Brave warrior, watch for a moment what I am going to do to these rebels." He mounted his horse and shouted, "Hey you infidels, I am sick and tired of you and your religion. I have accepted the religion of Muhammad -may God bless Him and protect Him- and rescued my soul from the burning fire of Hell. Up until now my name was Ahmar, but now it became Ahmad Turran."

Shamun saw him and started shouting and screaming, "Ja'far was so cruel to Ahmar that he has bewitched him." Shamun had a vizier called Sahlas and he sent him over. He came over to Ahmad and said, "What happened to you and they have bewitched you like that. Come on, let me get you to a church and baptize you." Ahmad got furious and said, "You come here and become Muslim or I cut your head off." The vizier also got furious, but Ahmad advanced forward, grabbed the vizier tightly by the head and threw him down in the middle of the battlefield facing the infidels. Shamun saw that and started screaming. The infidels turned pale from fear. [P 27<sup>a</sup>]

There was another high-ranking infidel, called Matran. He entered the battlefield and said, "Ahmad, why did you abandon the religion of your father and grandfather?" Ahmad invited him as well to join the religion but he talked a lot of nonsense. Ahmad hit him once with the sword and cut him in two.

Then Ahmad thrashed another forty infidels and no one else entered the battlefield. He came forth and placed his head on Battal's foot and said, "Brave warrior, I would like to take on the whole army now." Battal gave his permission and Ahmad dismounted, fixed his gear, mounted again and fell upon that army, huge as the wide sea. Following him charged Abdu'l-Wahhab, and after him Battal Ghazi, and after him Abdu'l-Salam and Juda with his four sons. [A 42] Amir Umar kept three thousand infantry and sent all the rest to battle.

There was fierce battle for a whole day and a whole night. The blood was flowing like a flood as if Judgment Day had come. The Sunnis were about to be defeated and then Sayyid held his face to the heavens and said, "Lord, I have been the reason for this battle, do not humiliate me." Just at that moment a wind started blowing that lifted the dust of the earth straight into the eyes of the infidels, making them all blind. Sayyid led his horse and tearing down all the enemy banners he came to the bottom of the standard. The standard was destroyed and the infidels' army defeated. They fled in escape and the Muslims chased them after, massacring and capturing them. After three days they came back and the treasures of the world they brought back filled a whole field. Sayyid gave the pavilion and tents of Shammas to Ahmad Turran.

Seventy thousand infidels had been put to the sword and seven thousand were taken prisoners. God inspired their hearts with faith and they all became Sunni Muslims. Sayyid Battal offered ceremonial mantles, clothes and horses to all of them. Then he assigned these fresh Muslims to Rabi b. Qaysar. Then he ordered that they should put the fifth entitled to the caliph aside, and distribute the rest. Himself, he did not accept even a small piece.

Then they left that place and returned to Malatya. They wrote the declaration of conquest and sent Juda to the caliph with one fifth of the goods. When the letter reached the caliph, they read it and were delighted at Sayyid's conquest. [A 43] They sent the good tidings to the province of Syria. After seven days the caliph ordered and they gave Juda ceremonial mantles and very expensive clothes for Battal and Amir Umar, and mantles for the remaining Sunnis. So Juda came back and distributed the mantles to Battal and the begs. He congratulated and praised them all on behalf of the caliph, and all the begs were delighted, and remained in good spirits for a while, eating and drinking.

CHAPTER THREE

Battal Marries Zaynab, his Cousin,  
and Mah-Piruz, the Caesar's Daughter.

That winter passed and spring came, and the world looked like Paradise. One day Amir Umar and Battal went out for a ride of pleasure, and they came to a river bank where they settled. Sayyid wanted to go in the water so he mounted, crossed the river and rode up to a place where he got in the water. He got out of the water, put on his clothes and all of a sudden he saw a great pavilion in the middle of an orchard surrounded by four walls all around, full of flowers of all kinds. Sayyid wondered, "What a nice place, whose might it be, perhaps?" Then he quickly mounted his horse and looked for the gate in order to have a look. All of a sudden the window of this pavilion opened. Sayyid looked carefully and saw a beautiful maiden, with her neck and ears uncovered, dressed in gold-gilded clothes. She came out of the window up to her waist to enjoy the view. Even a couple as beautiful as Yusuf and Zulaykha would have lost their mind with her beauty: Sayyid fell in love with her with all his heart at first sight. [A 44] The maiden also noticed Sayyid and she immediately fell madly in love and asked her nurse, "Nurse dear, you wouldn't happen to know who this brave handsome man is?" She said, "Of course I do," so she told her her secret. The nurse said, "This is Sayyid Battal Ghazi, the son of your uncle. He's a pious man so watch out and keep your secret until we find out what the exalted God is going to do."

Battal also turned back, his complexion all pale, love having left its trace on his heart. He came back to Amir Umar and they rode back to town together. Battal asked Amir Umar whose that pavilion was and he said, "It belongs to your uncle Hasan. He has a daughter whose name is Zaynab. She has no equal in beauty." Battal's infatuation increased and the fire of love burned his heart. The maiden's feelings were just like his.

Forty days passed by until one night Amir Umar saw the prophet in his dream saying, "Amir Umar, as soon as it dawns send a man to summon Hasan and tell him that I have given his daughter to Battal. He should not claim that two is one or anything mad like that, he should prepare a wedding and trust his daughter to Battal." When morning came he sent a man and summoned Hasan and told him the story. Hasan was delighted. At once the notables gathered and for seven days they had a feast and prepared a wedding and gave Zaynab Hatun to Battal. [A 45] So his wish was fulfilled.

Three more months passed after that. One day the begs were seating around when a guard came in and said, "Ibrahim and Mundhar have come and asked for permission."

They granted permission and they came inside and offered their prayers-they were the Muslim spies. Mundhar told them, "I am coming from Mamuriya. You sit here carefree while Shamun, the son of the Caesar has levied five hundred thousand men and wanted to march against us but Mihran did not let him so he notified the caesar to send more help. He has sent some men, but that's all I know." Then Ibrahim said, "I'm coming from Istanbul. Mihran came there in tears crying: 'Quickly get yourself armed, give me an army and let us march and massacre the Muslims. You thought Battal was going to be an easy nut, now he has become shameless. He has even taken your own son away from his religion and converted him to his own. He made brave warriors like Ahmar Tarran Muslims. He has been ruining the whole world, and has defeated your army twice already.' He spoke and cried some more. Then the caesar said 'I have four sons. Let them go along and put all the Muslims to the sword. Let them reach the gate of the Kaaba, destroy it and burn it down. Let them flay Battal's skin. Whoever kills Battal, my whole throne is his.' Each one of them made such pompous boasts, but here they are, they have already arrived. These are all the news I heard [A 46] and I bring them to you so that you may prepare yourselves." Amir Umar asked Ibrahim, "Where is the army now?" Ibrahim said, "They should have arrived in Mamuriya." Amir Umar said, "Oh Battal, what shall we do?" Sayyid said, "Take out the banners and send out the heralds to assemble the army." So he said and that's exactly what they did. Twenty thousand men gathered, and they took twelve thousand along with them, leaving the remaining eight thousand to guard the city.

Battal came home and Zaynab said, "I am also coming along, I am helpless without you." Battal said, "No, that's out of the question. It would be much better if you stayed at home."

The army mounted and marched again and came to the previous spot where they settled with their backs to the mountain and trenches dug all around.

One day news came that Zaynab had come. She came and kissed Battal's hand. He said, "Why did you come?" , "I cannot live on separation" she answered. Battal ordered and they took her outside.

The following day the infidels' army arrived, drowned in iron. They saw that a small army division was standing there. Shammas had a brave warrior called Milad whom he sent along with a thousand men saying, "Go see what sort of people they are." Battal wanted to hurl himself on these thousand men, and Ahmad Turran and Juda and Musa and Na'im and Nasr Habbab and Sa'id and Ali b. Hashim and Abdu'l-Wahhab [A 47] and Tawabil and Aflahun, they all had the same wish. So they took ninety more men and attacked those thousand men. Ahmad Turran got there first, gave a war-cry and charged forward. Within one hour they put three hundred people to the sword. The rest, injured



and helpless, took to fleeing. The Sunnis did not suffer as much as a bleeding nose. Happy and joyful they returned and came to Battal.

Milad of Rûm came to Shammas who got furious and swore curses saying, "Damn heroes like you who cannot take on a hundred men with a force of a thousand." Milad said, "It's not as if you do not know what sort of a man Ahmad is. Who could stand up against his sword?" So they came back to rest and wine was brought in. They had a few drinks and became hot. Then Shammas ordered and they brought in forty monks and a vizier called Sabuh. They wrote a letter and Shammas said, "Sabuh go over to those people and tell them that they should give me Battal and that they should accept responsibility for paying tribute and bring it over to me. If they do so, I will back away from here, but if they refuse, then, for the sake of the Fire of Light, I will set to flames the whole province of Islam." He sent him along with the forty monks. They came and fell upon the trench where Juda was waiting guard. He brought these to Amir Umar and they read their letter. Battal got furious and tore it up saying, "Go and tell Shammas and Shamun [A 48] that they should become Muslims because my intention is to make all of Rûm a domain of Islam, to destroy Istanbul and demolish its churches and build mosques and convents in their places." He invited those monks to the faith but they started talking nonsense so he ordered and they cut their heads off. They then cut Milad's nose ear and lower chin and sent him off. When he reached Shammas in such a state he reported the story and there was hardly any blood left in Shammas' cheeks. He said, "What sort of people are they? God forbid that they humiliate our honor, let us better go back from here."

Empty place for miniature.

Shamun got upset and said, "Good grief, what sort of talk is this? I will kill you first and then go fight on my own with this army. It is better to die with a good name than to be alive with a bad one." [A 49] He gave the order at once and the army mounted.

On this side the Sunnis also mounted and came out of their trenches, lined up for battle and stood waiting with their backs to the mountain. Shamun saw that the Sunnis were positioned in a very tough spot and he sent a cursed infidel called Sarjayil with five thousand men to the right side of the mountain saying, "You go round this mountain." He sent another accursed called Namrud to the left side. Himself, he rolled the drums and marched against the Muslims, attacking from all four sides. The Sunnis threw a great number of stones from the mountain, thrashing a lot of infidels. They fought till the evening and then the armies on both sides rested until the following morning. The infidel Sarjayil complained to Shammas and did not shut his mouth the whole night.

In the morning the drums rolled and the two sides mounted and lined up for battle. Musa the son of Juda entered the battlefield and thrashed forty infidels. There was an infidel called Sunbat and he entered the battlefield. He exchanged a few attacks with Musa but in the end he got exhausted and said, "Oh Musa, I would truly like to become a Muslim. With your permission, let me go and come back with my army." Musa believed him and Sunbat returned to Shamun and said, "My bow is too small and I was injured when he appeared, otherwise he is no match for me." [A 50] Taryun attacked and Musa deflected his lance and mace and hit him with the sword. The infidel held his shield against it, but the sword cut through the shield and split him up into two pieces down to his chest. No one else entered the battlefield. Musa came back and Amir Umar and Battal offered prayers. Then they performed the afternoon prayer.

Musa had an uncle called Muhammad b. Ali who entered the battlefield and asked for someone to challenge him. Shammās said to Sunbat, "Hey Sunbat, you've shamed the Fire of Light and turned your back to that fellow. Is this what one must do?" The cursed one got excited and whether he liked it or not he came up to Muhammad. They fought a few challenges and again he became weak and said, "Oh young man, I've sent message with Musa and told Battal" Muhammad said, "What's the message?" and he said, "I would also like to become a Muslim, just like Ahmad and Rabi' b. Qaysar. If he agrees I will become a Muslim." Muhammad said, "Get on with it and confess the faith and become a Muslim now." But he said, "Go and inform him first." Muhammad came up to Sayyid and told him the story. Sayyid said, "He fooled you. He realized he was tired so he pulled a trick on you and sent you over here while he went off his own way." [A 51]

It had already become evening and they returned back and rested from both sides. The Sunnis stayed up all night until dawn praying and reciting the Koran. When it became morning they mounted again, lined up for battle and stood waiting. Muhammad was the first to enter the battlefield. He shouted at Sunbat, "Hey cursed wretch, come back! You've fooled me and ran away the other time, but if you are a man, come back." Shammās heard this and laughed, "Hey you ass of a man, why did you turn away?" He said, "My lord he is lying, he himself was tired." In any event, Tahir of Antioch attacked and hurled a mace but Muhammad repelled it and then hit back with his mace bringing horse and rider to the ground. One after the other he thrashed seven infidels. Shammās got furious and told Sunbat, "Quickly go fight with your man, otherwise I will give the order myself to cut you into pieces." Sunbat came to the battlefield unwillingly and hurled his sword. Muhammad repelled him and he returned to attack with the lance. Muhammad hit him with mace. He avoided being hit on the head, but the mace cut through his shield,

landed on his thigh and split it like a nut into two. Sunbat disappeared away from Muhammad and a loud clamor came from the army of Islam.

Shammas ordered and the cavalry charged against Muhammad. Sayyid Battal gave a war-cry and attacked. Ahmad Turran and Abdu'l-Wahhab also charged in attack. There was fierce fighting till the evening and a lot of [A 52] infidels were put to the sword. They came back again at the feet of their standard. They were a select group so they had a count. When they found that they had all, without exception, come back they rested happy and joyful.

On this side the infidels' army settled in great sadness and confusion. Shamun said, "See how the Fire of Light has shamed us and destroyed our dignity." Guards were posted on both sides protecting the army. The following morning once again they mounted and prepared for battle. The first one to move was Shamun. With a standard and a flag and two hundred gold braced servants and two hundred Bedouin-steeds from Rûm he circled around and made a show of force. Wondrous fear reigned in the battlefield. Ahmad Turran saw him and moved towards the battlefield. As soon as Shamun saw Ahmad he turned his horse's head and rushed on. There was a loud cry on the Muslim side and Shamun, helpless, came back to his own people. Shammas was furious, spat in his face and wanted to enter himself, only Sarjayil did not let him. Rather, he entered the battlefield himself. The Sunnis were amazed when they saw how handsome and tall he was.

The padishah of the Franks came up to Ahmad and said, "Oh Ahmad, is it right for you, a world champion of a padishah as famous as the caesar, to abandon the religion of your forefathers and join forces with a crowd of hungry wretches? Come now, let me take you and ask forgiveness for your sins. [A 53] Come back to your old station and religion. You are not aware of it, but Battal has bewitched you. Let me take you and baptize you." Ahmad got upset and hurled the lance he was holding. Sarjayil repelled it and they fought long until Ahmad was exhausted. Sarjayil hit him with the mace and his shield was smashed. He moved hid head away and the mace landed on the horse, which collapsed from the blow.

Tawabil entered the battlefield but fell with a single blow. Every believer who entered the battlefield was defeated. Sayyid led his horse into the battlefield and when he drew near he gave such a war-cry that Sarjayil was so shaken he almost fell of his horse. He collected himself and said, "What sort of a person are you?" Sayyid said, "I am Battal, the killer of infidels." The infidel heard this and saying, "I was just looking for you" he hurled the lance he was holding. Sayyid repelled it. When it became Sayyid's turn, he hit once with the lance. Sarjayil held his shield against it. But what could a poor shield do against the lance of Kaykawus? It cut through to his stomach and the steel came out of his

chest: without having the time to bid the world good-bye he surrendered his soul. Sayyid made an effort and snatched him from his horse and threw him into the middle of the field. The Muslims shouted, "*God is Great*" and offered prayers of thanks.

Shammas saw Sarjayil and wailed in lament. There was someone called Namrud, who also attacked and was destroyed. One by one Sayyid thrashed [A 54] seventy infidels.

There was a beg of Istanbul called Takfur Shah. He also entered the battlefield but Sayyid thrashed him as well. Shammas screamed and entered the battlefield himself saying, "Good God, let me die as well, so that at least I shall not have to look at these." He was wearing princely clothes, drowned in gold. He came up to Sayyid. Sayyid asked, "Who are you?" and he said, "I am Shammas, the son of the caesar. And who might you be to come and kill such men today? Each one of them used to have so many of the likes of you stand across him with their hands crossed." Sayyid got furious and said, "Come on, charge forth so I can send you too down their alley." Shammas hurled his lance but Sayyid repelled it. He attempted to cross over but Sayyid kicked him so hard that he went flying over the back of the horse and collapsed seven steps away. Sayyid jumped down from Ashqar and by the time Shammas stood up Sayyid had his hands tied up behind his head. Then Sayyid handed him over to Aflahun who brought him to the foot of the standard. When Shamun saw his brother in this state he screamed and charged in attack. As for the army, the cavalry charged and shot arrows. Battal gave a war-cry and charged in attack. The army of Islam shouted, "*God is Great*" and also charged in attack. Then the armies mingled and there was tremendous bloodshed. Battal moved along planting banners and breaking through the enemy divisions until he [A 55] snatched the standard with the shape of the cross. Finally the enemy army was defeated and turned to fleeing.

They brought Shammas to a tent and placed several men to guard him. But instead of guarding him they were busy observing the armies, so Shammas found himself unguarded and untied his hands, got out of the tent and fled. Actually, Zaynab caught sight of him, but before she could scream he went up in the mountain. A servant rushed in, found Sayyid and gave him the news.

The army of the infidels, defeated was on the run. The army of Islam persecuted them for three days killing, tying them up and carrying them away as prisoners. Afterwards all the brave warriors came back except for Sayyid. They looked for him among the notables but did not find him. The companions dispersed in all four directions. They did not leave a mountain, a river or a stone unturned looking for him. But it was all to no avail, and they all despaired.

When the army had been defeated Battal looked around for Shammas and came to a little pond. He dismounted, took off his clothes and went into the water. He washed his

clothes clean of the infidels' blood. He performed the noon prayer and sat down. Then he saw a rider coming from the other side. He recognized Shammas, mounted his horse quickly and crossed over. Shammas also recognized him and started trembling. Unwillingly he came forward and said, "Hey Battal, it's good that you've come in my hands in a desolate place." He took out his sword and charged but Sayyid came forward, snatched him from his horse and threw him on the ground. Then he dismounted, tied him up and carried him away. [A 56]

The believers were in deep sorrow so when Sayyid arrived they all rejoiced. The spoils still stood there. Sayyid ordered and they separated the fifth due to the caliph and divided the rest for the army. Sayyid did not accept even a small piece. (For a few days they feasted, eating and drinking. P)

Then the cursed Shammas again found an opportunity that evening and set himself free. He came straight to Sayyid's tent but did not find him there. Instead he saw Zaynab, sleeping. He stuffed her head cover in her mouth and did not let her scream, tied both her hands and carried her away. The following morning the guards did not find Shammas and the servant did not find Zaynab. They informed Sayyid who realized at once that it was Shammas' doing. He quickly got up, put on Greek style clothes, mounted and rode off in the direction of Rûm. He went for three days until he reached a monastery. There were seven monks there who asked, "Who are you" and Sayyid said, "I am one of the servants of Shammas. Didn't you see which way he went?" They said, "He went towards Mamuriya" and Sayyid rode off after him.

On the way he went hunting and stopped at a river bank. He let go of his horse and performed his prayer. He cut some firewood with his sword and cooked some of the game meat to eat. Then he saw that a monk appeared. Sayyid looked closely and saw that it was Mundhar, the spy of the Muslims. [A 57] Sayyid said, "Where have you been?" and he answered, "Actually, I've been looking for you." Sayyid asked about Shammas. He said, "I saw him ride his horse, but there was another person, all tied up, on the horse. He was off towards Mamuriya."

After a day Sayyid met a few travelers and asked them for information. They said, "The Caesar of Rûm is in Harjana, and Shammas also has gone there." Sayyid immediately rode in the direction of Harjana. He came near the city, hid his horse in a cave and entered the city alone.

As soon as Shammas arrived in Harjana they let his father know, and he was delighted. The begs went out to meet him and brought him in the presence of the caesar. He came and kissed the caesar's hand saying, "I was taken prisoner but no matter, Jesus liberated me. I wanted to get Battal but could not find him. I found his wife instead, tied

her up and brought her here. I am sure he will come looking for me. If only the good fortune of the Fire of Light would drop him in my hands so that I may cut his head off, and rescue the world from his evil."

Now the caesar had three daughters, the elder was called Katayun, the middle Humayun and the youngest Mah-Piruz. They trusted Zaynab to Mah-Piruz. She took her to the baths, dressed her in all kinds of beautiful clothes and came and sat by her side.

Meanwhile Sayyid saw an old man selling water melons. He gave him a penny and bought a water melon. He sat down to eat it and the old man asked him, "Young man, where are you from?" Sayyid said, "I belong to the retinue of Shammās. [A 58] The Muslims routed us and took everyone prisoner. This is what they made of me." The old man said, "Yesterday Shammās came and brought Battal's lady -goodness is she beautiful! For his part the caesar took an oath that this time he would lead the expedition himself up to the gate of the Kaaba and burn it in flames and kill its people, and flay Battal's skin and parade it all around the provinces. Tomorrow he will ride for a day and get to Mamuriya."

That evening he brought Sayyid to his house and offered him his hospitality. He laid out a mattress for him and went to sleep. But as soon as the old man fell asleep Sayyid got up and came out of the house and straight to the caesar's palace. He threw a lasso and climbed up to the roof. He passed by a window and looked inside. He saw the caesar was sitting on his throne with his four sons all around him. Gold and silver candle holders were burning, and there were also some begs from his guard. They were all sitting around praising Sayyid's bravery and heroism. But he moved on to the next window and saw that candles were burning there as well. Katayun and Humayun had sat down, and the two of them were also singing Sayyid's praises. He moved on to the next window and there he saw a beautiful maiden sitting on a throne -it was no other than Mah-Piruz. Zaynab Hatun was right next to her, eating and drinking. Mah-Piruz asked Zaynab [A 59], "What is your name?" and she quickly told her. Meanwhile Sayyid was listening from above. Mah-Piruz then offered Zaynab a piece of paper by her side. She took and opened it. On it were drawn the faces of Sayyid's companions. She showed it to Zaynab who said, "Where did you see their faces? How could you draw their portraits?" Mah-Piruz said, "It's been forty days now since I saw the Apostle in my dream. I saw these forty Sunnis there next to him. The Apostle told me 'We have sent these forty men to paradise' and I told him 'Apostle, please marry me to one of them.' Then he said, 'Whoever comes down from your window in forty days, it is to him I have married you.' Well, I've been keeping count, and tonight is the fortieth night that the messenger spoke to me about. He never lies, so if he is a true prophet, and if his word is true, let whomever is up there come down!" Sayyid had heard every single word of the conversation, and he shouted from above, "We are believers and

hold in truth that you are the apostle of the two existences and the leader of the two hidden treasures, Muhammad Mustafa --may God bless Him and protect Him." He held the ladder and came rolling down. Zaynab said, "Fair lady, this is Sayyid Battal!" Just as she was saying this Sayyid came down and they both came up to him and placed their heads on the ground. [A 60] Mah-Piruz feasted her eyes on Sayyid's perfect beauty and handsome stature, and her infatuation became even stronger. There was some roasted lamb ready waiting; she brought it and they ate. She brought sweet sherbets and they drank. Then Sayyid said, "We have to leave at once." Mah-Piruz got up and gathered as many worthwhile objects of her father and herself as she could. They took with them everything that was of value and just enough food provisions for themselves. He let a lasso and they came down from the palace roof. They took some horses from the city, some for themselves and some for their embroideries. Sayyid led the way and they rode off.

Meanwhile, the following day came the chamber-servants found out what had happened and informed the caesar. He screamed in fury and summoned his sons. The begs gathered as well. He dispatched three of his sons and some of the eminent begs with thirty thousand men on their tracks and announced, "Whoever kills Battal, he'll have my throne and crown."

Meanwhile Sayyid had reached a spring by dawn, where they dismounted and performed their ablutions and prayer. When they were through with the prayer they noticed that dust had risen. Sayyid quickly armed himself. Mah-Piruz and Zaynab also put on arms. Shammās appeared out of the dust and shouted, "Lady with the disheveled hair, is this how you act? Get ready because here I come." [A 61] Mah-Piruz said, "Amir dear, just have a look at what your sister is going to do." She walked against Shammās and before he could even say anything she hurled her lance and threw Shammās off his horse. Shammās collapsed on the ground several steps further. He got up with great trouble and quickly fled. Then his younger brother, the caesar Qonstantin charged in attack, but Mah-Piruz knocked him down as well, this time with a blow of the mace. Yet another brother of hers attacked -- they called him Ramin, and he was Mah-Piruz' brother on their mother's side. He came forward and said, "Oh Mah-Piruz, you have shamed us in front of everyone with what you've done." Then Mah-Piruz took out the paper with her drawing and showed it to him. She told him how she had seen the Apostle in her dream and all about what he had told her. When Ramin heard her story he realized that the fire of faith had sparked in his heart too, so he raised his finger, accepted the faith and became a Muslim on the spot. Sayyid was delighted and glad. Ramin came and rubbed his face on the ground in front of Sayyid and kissed him in both eyes.

Shammas saw all this and lost his breath. He ordered his army not to allow this. They charged on horse, but at the same time Mah-Piruz, Ramin and Zaynab drew their swords and charged forth. Sayyid gave a war-cry and charged as well. [A 62] Sayyid smashed that army against one another the way a hungry wolf attacks a flock of sheep and reeks terrible havoc. Blood flowed like a flood. Sayyid captured their standard and the infidels' army was broken and took to fleeing. They captured a thousand horses and a thousand men with their armors, and rode off in the direction of Malatya.

On a certain day they reached Malatya and when the Sunnis saw Sayyid they all rejoiced. They held a wedding feast for seven days and offered Mah-Piruz in marriage to Sayyid. They took out the spoil of war, and put aside a hundred horses with a hundred swords, a hundred armors and a hundred helmets to send to the caliph. So Abdu'l-Wahhab along with Ramin came to the caliph and everyone rejoiced. The caliph on his part also sent beautiful horses and beautiful mantles that they brought back. Sayyid's companions were merry and joyful.

CHAPTER FOUR  
The Story of Abdu'l-Salam  
and Nawruz Banu.

When Abdu'l-Salam heard the heroic and victorious deeds of Battal Ghazi he was greatly saddened and said, "Why don't I also go on an attacking expedition and get a name for myself? They have all, young and old alike, treated Sayyid with such respect and they all despise me." One night, livid with anger, he left and went to Tarsus. At the time Tarsus was part of the realm of Islam and Muhammad b. Husayn was padishah there. He had an army of about ten thousand. When he heard that Abdu'l-Salam was coming he gathered his people and came out to meet him. He brought him into the city and showed him great hospitality. Yahya b. Hamid, Abu Bakr b. Aziz and Nasr Habbab were all there.

[A 63] At that meeting Abdu'l-Salam complained a lot about Sayyid, how he had taken what was really his own due. Nasr Habbab said, "Well, you should also make a demonstration of skill and earn a reputation. Right here in Harjana there is the daughter of the caesar whom you could snatch, or you might kill the priest Sarabil in Istanbul, for there is no cursed infidel of higher esteem. Or you might blow out that candle that has been burning since Jesus' time, steal that idol that is made of red gold and is hollow inside, full of aloe and amber and musk, and spill the water of worship. We could send the idol to the caliph



and make you great again." Abdu'l-Salam changed his clothes and put on Greek style ones as soon as he heard these words, and started out in the direction of Rûm.

He came to Istanbul and one night he made an attempt to accomplish his mission but they heard him, arrested him and brought him to the caesar. He ordered and they tortured him. They found out what he was up to and then the caesar ordered and they brought a raw leather sack. They stripped Abdu'l-Salam naked and put him in the raw leather sack. An old, wounded man, all beaten up, and they put him in a place like that. Then they brought in a chain, and fastened one end on the fortress' tower and the other on the dome of the monastery. They hung poor helpless Abdu'l-Salam right in the middle and put forty people to guard him, and they kept guard in turns. [A 64] From the heat of the sun the fresh raw leather dried out and roasted Abdu'l-Salam. He screamed and wailed day and night, but no one would come to his rescue. So he remained helpless like this.

Now there was in Istanbul a horseshoe blacksmith called Mahak the Indian and who was a Sunni Muslim and who always used to inform the Muslims about what went on in town. When all of this happened to Abdu'l-Salam he set out and came to Malatya. The companions themselves had assembled and were wondering where Abdu'l-Salam might be. However, they didn't have a clue. Mahak the Indian entered, rubbed his face on the dust and offered a prayer. Then he handed Amir Umar a letter. He opened it, read it and started crying. Sayyid asked, "What's the story?" and Amir Umar gave him the letter. He also read it and started screaming. He informed the companions of the situation and they all burst into tears. Sayyid said, "May your good wishes be with me, I am off." He greeted the companions good-bye right there and changed his clothes. He took Mahak the Indian with him and they rode off.

He came to the monastery of Shammās and told him the story of Abdu'l-Salam. Then he pleaded, "May your good wishes be with me, so that I may, God willing, set him free." Shammās said, "It is a tough call/task, may God's help be with you." They spent the night there, and in the morning they got up and hit the road again. Sayyid vowed [A 65], "If I rescue Abdu'l-Salam I shall provide clothes for a thousand barefooted ones and shall fill the stomachs of another thousand hungry ones." They pressed on and came to Istanbul, where he sent Mahak the Indian home. He hid his horse in a cave and left his weapons and armor there as well. He moved on and came to the city alone. He saw what a huge and crowded city it was, with a great cathedral that looked like a whole castle right in the middle. Four hundred high-ranking priests, each from a different clime, were worshipping according to their religion. Sayyid went straight to the monastery. As he was wearing monk's clothes the priests came up to him and greeted him. They took him into the presence of Maftul Mugh who was the most revered of them all. He walked up to greet

Sayyid as soon as he saw him. That evening he was their guest there. Maftul asked, "Where do you come from?" and Sayyid said, "I come from Jerusalem and my name is Shamil Mugh." Maftul Mugh said, "I had a brother there called Sarabil who had a son who has been studying there for twenty three years." Sayyid said, "I am Sarabil's son. I have now completed my studies." Maftul greeted him for a second time, kissing him in both eyes and pressing him against his chest. That evening they held a pleasant gathering and all of the high priests of Istanbul got news of it and came to Maftul's place. [A 66]

They stayed up all night talking about things and Sayyid left everyone speechless. In the morning they informed Araqil caesar that a holy monk had come who was like the Fire of Light itself and who had silenced all the priests that were there. The caesar said, "Listen then, make preparations so that tomorrow we gather in Aya Sofia and have a chance both to visit him and to listen to his preaching." The following day the caesar, along with Shammass and Shamun and Matran and Ilad and Milad and the other decorated high-ranking infidels and enemies of religion were present there. The priests brought Sayyid to the great church (*ulu deyrA*; Aya Sofia P) and the caesar came out to meet them. As soon as the caesar saw Sayyid he started trembling and got so scared he would go out of his mind. He almost collapsed and those next to him had to hold him. He collected himself and came to pay his respects to Sayyid. But Sayyid did not offer him his hand to kiss, saying, "Your love and passion are for worldly things." He offered his cuff instead and the caesar rubbed it over his face. The begs came and offered their respects. Then they invited Sayyid to the pulpit. He went up and was just as was the ritual custom of the Christians, he read some passages from the Gospel and then offered his exegesis and plenty of advice. The caesar with the begs broke into such tears, they were beyond themselves. When he came down they scattered [A 67] golden plates with pearl jewels inside. Every one in Istanbul, young and old, fell in love with Sayyid. The caesar stepped forward and said, "Your Reverence, we are obedient servants of the Messiah. But there appeared a young boy who has thrashed so many of our dignitaries and led astray so many more making them abandon the religion of their fathers and grandfathers and bringing them into the religion of Muhammad. Now, with your good wishes, I have armed myself for an expedition to capture that boy and put all of the army of Islam to the sword. I shall destroy and burn that Kaaba of theirs and get hold of their caliph in Baghdad, so that I can restore the Messiah's honor." Sayyid said, "From now on do not worry at all, the Fire of Light is going to assist you." He came and kissed Sayyid's hand, and then lead his to his own quarters.

That evening, in the middle of the night, Sayyid got up and left the great monastery. He came and saw how Abdu'l-Salam was hanging in the air from the middle of that chain.

The leather had dried out and he had completely lost his voice. Sayyid sat in a dark place and said, "It won't be easy. May the exalted God not spare me His grace." He was standing there heavy with these thoughts when he saw that someone came and threw himself at his feet. Sayyid said, "Who are you?" and the other person said, "It's your servant Mahak the Indian." [A 68] "How on earth did you know to find me?" said Sayyid, and Mahak said, "I was so sad I was separated from you I cried the whole evening until I saw the Apostle in my dream. He told me 'Mahak, get up and go find Battal who is standing in such and such a place, and offer him your help.' So here I am, at your command." Sayyid said, "What do you suggest we do to rescue this poor Muslim from this tight spot?" Mahak said, "You tell me, and I will do it." Sayyid ordered and he brought forty big tree trunks. He tied them together and fastened a paring-iron like those used for horses' hoofs at their edges. He came to the bottom of the chain -a darkness had seized the world, you couldn't see a thing. The five hundred guards were all drunk and asleep, completely oblivious to the world. Sayyid drew his sword and cut off their heads. Then he pushed over the trunks to Mahak the Indian and cut the chain loose from the edge where it was fastened. It collapsed with great force. Sayyid advanced and grabbed Abdu'l-Salam. He placed him on the ground. Then they cut the other end and brought Abdu'l-Salam to Mahak's house. They saw that the leather had dried out and Abdu'l-Salam had been laced, he could not breathe. [A 69] There was a marble pool at Mahak's house, the size of a man, in which they placed Abdu'l-Salam in the leather sack. Then they brought sesame oil and filled the tub. Sayyid said, "This is the remedy for this sort of thing. Now I must be heading back." He left and came to the monastery and went to sleep in his previous place.

In the morning the city resounded with clamors and voices saying, "Last night Battal came, snatched Abdu'l-Salam and thrashed five hundred men to boot." The news reached the caesar. They searched the city house by house but did not find him. The priest Sarabil with four hundred monks turned everything upside down but to no avail. Maftul and Sarabil, the two of them came to Sayyid together and complained to him. Sayyid said, "My dear man, I have been having this vision that this Sayyid Battal must conquer the whole of this Rûm, ruin its churches and break this liturgy." Sarabil said, "Oh uncle dear, I have been seeing the same dream, and it is just as you described" and he broke into sobbing tears. They all sunk into deep sorrows.

Meanwhile Abdu'l-Salam lay in that oil for a week until the leather grew softer. Sayyid would come and visit every now and then and have a look. They took him out of the oil and there he was, just a piece of meat without skin that breathed. [A 70] Sayyid took out some almond oil and prepared a porridge. He opened his mouth with a knife and

fed him a spoonful of it. For three days they kept doing this until Abdu'l-Salam opened his eyes, moved about and understood what was going on around. Sayyid had prepared some sherbet and gave him to drink. In fact, good God, he would come every night and look after him and give him syrups to drink. As soon as he was a little better, he fell onto Sayyid's feet and asked for his pardons saying, "You have not treated me the way I treated you. You have acted like a real man. The duty of a man is to be generous and merciful. May all this not be forgotten in the presence of the exalted God." Sayyid also reciprocated to Abdu'l-Salam's nice words and his animosity was lifted and purified.

One evening the sultan of the ghazis got up and came over by Sarabil's bedside. He saw that he was snoozing and snoring like a pig. He grabbed him by the throat and Sarabil opened his eyes and said, "Who are you?" Sayyid replied, "I am Battal, so quickly accept the faith or else it's up to you." Sarabil said, "Hey, are you not the son of my brother?" Battal said, "Do not say much. I am Battal Ghazi and I came and rescued Abdu'l-Salam, so come on now, accept the faith." But that cursed wretch started his nonsense, and Sayyid cut his head off right there. Then there were those four hundred priests--he thrashed them all. He put out the famous candle, spilled the water of baptism, [A 71] and took that idol that was made of red gold and weighed seventy *batmans*. He also took all the silver and other valuable objects around and left. He came to the house of Mahak the Indian in the middle of the night. He gave him everything except for the idol, and made him rich. He took Abdu'l-Salam and bid Mahak farewell. They came to the tower and lowered a rope and climbed down. They came to Sayyid's horse and found a couple more. Abdu'l-Salam took one, they loaded the idol on the other one and rode off.

Meanwhile the news reached the caesar who came into the monastery and found Sarabil dead, the four hundred priests lying slaughtered, the candle no longer lit, the water of baptism all spilled and the inside of the church all red with blood. He started screaming. He smashed his crown to the ground, tore his collar off and cried with sobbing tears rubbing his head to the ground. His mind came and left. They brought him to the palace and for seven days he lay there, head downwards. Not even water went through his throat. These news circulated around the whole of Rûm and there was great mourning and lamentation.

Meanwhile Sayyid and Abdu'l-Salam were going along their way until they reached a area full of trees where the path forked. Abdu'l-Salam's eyes burst with tears. Sayyid said, "What has happened to you?" Abdu'l-Salam said, "Commander, [A 72]

Empty place for miniature.

a gloom broods over my heart in this neck of the woods. This path right here leads to a fortress where there is a beg called Sarabil. He has a daughter called Nawruz Banu, and she also lives here. I saw her only once, but her vision has not disappeared from my mind." Sayyid said, "You just stay hidden right here till I'm back." He put on Greek style clothes and rode off disguised as a priest. He rode for a while until he reached a small hill. He looked over and saw a fortress, tall as the high heavens. There were beautiful meadows right in front, and about six thousand people had camped there. [A 73] The commander of the castle was Tughanos, Sarabil's vizier. When Sayyid came near they sent the news and Tughanos came out to meet him with forty monks. They greeted him and asked him, "Who are you and what's your name?" Sayyid answered, "I am the son of the priest Boraz, my name is Aqanosh. I have seen great deprivation on my way, I have suffered great many troubles." Tughanos said, "God forbid lest you be Battal!" Sayyid burst into tears and complained, "Just how could you compare me to him?" Then he opened his mouth and recited a couple of lines from the Gospel. Then, upset, he turned his back and made to go. The monks protested, crying, "Never, ever since it was built, has such a magnificent sultan come to this city. Why did you speak so rudely to him, and broke his heart?" Tughanos came and fell to Sayyid's feet asking for forgiveness. They persuaded Sayyid to join them and took him to the fortress. In the evening they held discussions and he silenced them all.

In the middle of the night Sayyid got up and went up to Tughanos' bedside, cut off his head and then thrashed the forty monks. Then he rushed outside and saw that it had become crowded. He asked someone, "What's going on?" and got the answer that, "Tughanos' son, whom they call Mihribanos, [A 74] has come back. He was over at Taryun's and has just arrived." Sayyid waited until the fuss calmed and quieted down. Then he saw a servant passing by. He followed him until he got hold of him. The servant said, "Who are you?" and Sayyid answered, "I come as a messenger from Mihribanos. Is there a way to get a message to Nawruz Banu?" The servant said, "Do not expose yourself to anyone, just tell me what your message is and I shall convey it to her." Sayyid said, "Come forth and I will whisper it in your ear." Then he got hold of the servant and strangled him. He threw him down the tower and entered straight into the palace.

He saw that they had set up a throne from red gold. The lady was asleep on top of that throne, her face as beautiful as the full moon.

He woke her up and the lady saw someone standing there and wanted to scream but Sayyid said, "I am Battal, don't scream otherwise I am going to rip your belly open" The lady was so scared, did not even move. He tied her up and stuffed her mouth with her kerchief. Then he lowered her down from the tower, found a horse and put her on it. They rode and until dawn they had reached Abdu'l-Salam. When Abdu'l-Salam saw the

lady he was delighted. He fell to Sayyid's feet and all of the earlier animosity went away. Now he became Sayyid's devoted servant. They performed the morning prayer there and were about to mount when they saw dust being raised from the road to the castle. Twelve thousand infidels appeared. When Sayyid saw this army, he hid the lady inside a tree and the two of them stood there against it. [A 75]

As it were Mihribanos had earlier on gone to his father's and saw that he had cut his head off, thrashed forty men and snatched his sister away. Furious he mounted, and there he was now. Mihribanos noticed Sayyid before anyone else and ordered his army, "Don't you spare him! Encircle him." They surrounded him and fired arrows. Sayyid gave a war-cry and attacked. Mihribanos came up to Sayyid and hurled his lance. Sayyid cast it away with his whip. Mihribanos tried to pass but Sayyid hit him with such a blow that even though Mihribanos held up his shield it was cut into two pieces. The blow cracked his head open and landed on his back, but did not stop there and came out to his chest and cut him into two up until the saddle. The army saw that and was broken. He killed many infidels. Then he turned back and returned to Abdu'l-Salam, who rubbed his face on the ground and prayed for Sayyid. They took the horses and armor of the killed and rode off.

One of those days they reached Malatya and the Sunnis came out to meet them. They exchanged greetings both with Battal and with Abdu'l-Salam. They were very happy to see them and Abdu'l-Salam told them, one by one, all of Sayyid's adventures. They all prayed for him. Nawruz Banu became Muslim. They had a great wedding feast and offered her as a bride to Abdu'l-Salam. So some time passed on like this. The world learned of Sayyid's good fame and they all fell in love with him. [A 76]

## CHAPTER FIVE

### The Death of Mihran

Meanwhile, in the city of Tarsus, the notables sat around one day and were reminiscing about the heroes of the bygone days. Nasr Habbab remembered Sayyid and said, "These days now there is no hero like Sayyid Battal." Someone called Madhur said, "Since you've mentioned Battal, keep in mind that he hasn't even avenged his father's blood. Mihriyayil was the one who killed his father but he's only one of three brothers. He has killed two of them, but he hasn't yet killed the one who's the cause of it all, an evil cursed infidel." , "Who's that?" they said and he answered, "Mihran's the name." Now

Muhammad b. Fallah who was very fond of Sayyid, said, "I will thrash this Mihran for Sayyid's sake., " He got up, mounted his horse and set off for Mamuriya.

He went on for three days and then one day he came upon another rider on the road. He greeted him and said , "Where are you going?" The other person said, "I am on my way to Mamuriya." Muhammad exclaimed, "I am on my way there, too." Then that person warned him, "You better watch out lest Mihran kill you, he's merciless." Muhammad said, "As a matter of fact, he's the one I am looking for. I want to have his head cut off." The infidel replied, "Look, Mihran is not the man you want," and his hand reached for his sword. He attacked Muhammad, but he avoided it. Then it was Muhammad's turn and he hit the infidel with his sword and cut him into two. [A 77]

Then he came to a monastery whose gate had been locked shut, so he settled by a river and performed his ablutions and prayer. After he completed his prayer, all of a sudden the face of a fair maiden, beautiful as the full moon, appeared at the monastery's roof. She came to the edge of the roof and, upon seeing Muhammad, shouted, "Young man, who are you and where are you coming from? This is no resting place here: even birds shed their feathers when they fly by this place. Get up and leave at once." Muhammad said, "I am a Muslim" and the young girl said, "Is your name Muhammad?" "How did you know?" he said, and she replied, "I am Mihriyayil's daughter, my father was killed by Sayyid Battal. This evening I saw the Apostle in my dream and became a Muslim. He told me about you and said 'Sayyid Battal is going to kill Mihran'. Now there are a lot of young girls here, all of them princesses who have devoted themselves to the ways of Mary. They do not reveal their face to anyone. They don't even allow male flies to touch them." She lowered down a kerchief with food inside and said, "Eat this quickly, then get out of here fast, so Mihran does not find you here. He will show no mercy and will kill you." Muhammad said, "Where is Mihran now?" and she said, "He's at the other side of this mountain there, with forty of his servants." Muhammad said, "If I kill Mihran, will you be mine?" She answered, "The Apostle has in fact assigned me to you. I am already yours. And yes, he also said that it is Sayyid who will thrash Mihran." [A 78] Muhammad took his leave from the maiden, mounted his horse and rode off.

Meanwhile, as soon as Muhammad left, the companions were in great distress. They told Sayyid what had happened. Sayyid mounted his horse and rode off. He came to that monastery and the maiden him. She him the story of what had happened with Muhammad and how she had become Muslim in great detail. Then she said, "Brave man, go and find Muhammad at once, lest Mihran bring a great disaster upon his head." Sayyid mounted and rode off.

Meanwhile, Muhammad went through a couple of hills until he saw a great red tent with a parasol pitched in the middle of a meadow. Under it they had set up a golden throne and Mihran was sitting on it. They had lit a fire and were roasting game meat. The cursed wretch was drinking with his forty servants all around him. As soon as he saw Muhammad, by God did he get furious. He sent one of his servants saying, "Go and cut off the head of this man at once, and bring it to me." That servant mounted and came up to Muhammad. Saying, "Hey, who are you?" he hurled the sword in his hand. Muhammad avoided it and hit him with his sword and cut him in two. One after the other he thrashed seven of them. Mihran started screaming, "Don't you let him do that" and thirty three of them surrounded him. Muhammad shouted '*God is Great*' and attacked, thrashing twenty more of them. [A 79] The remaining ones fled. Then Mihran got up in a rush and mounted his horse. He took his mace and marched against him like a dragon. As soon as Muhammad saw him, he abandoned all hope for his life, saying, "I am tired and weak. What could I do against this cursed wretch?" He supplicated and asked for the intercession of the Apostle of God.

It was just at that moment that Sayyid appeared and saw Muhammad was facing Mihran in battle. When Mihran reached over and attacked with fury. He hit Muhammad with his lance and threw him the ground far away. He was about to turn and finish his job when Sayyid gave such a war-cry that heavens and earth shook together. Mihran was startled. He collected himself and wondered, "How on earth did Sayyid make it here?" Sayyid said, "You cursed wretch, keep your hands away from him, he's my man." The cursed wretch said, "Here you are, have some of the same gifts" and hurled the lance he was holding. Sayyid avoided it and when Mihran tried to pass through, Sayyid took his right foot out of the stirrup, gave Ashqar a spurring, and then hit Mihran in the chest so hard that both his feet went off the stirrups and he collapsed from the horse's back head down on the ground. By the time Mihran managed to get up again, Sayyid had sprung to his chest. Mihran opened his eyes, saw Sayyid and said, "Who are you?" Sayyid said, "I am Sayyid Battal Ghazi, so accept the faith fast, otherwise I've cut your head off." The cursed wretch started his nonsense so Sayyid severed his head from his body. [A 80]

Muhammad came and fell to Sayyid's feet. Sayyid kissed Muhammad in both eyes and they took Mihran's head and the armor and clothes of his servants and came to the monastery. The maiden came out to meet them and fell to Sayyid's feet. There were forty more girls that came and became all Muslim in front of Sayyid. The girls at once informed them that forty Sunni Muslims were held prisoners there in that monastery and they got them out and gave these girls to the forty young men to marry.



Mihran had a son called Ilyun who came to the monastery and became Muslim. Sayyid gave him the name Ilyun Rûmi. They got plenty of booty from the monastery and Sayyid distributed it all and did not accept even a small piece for himself.

Then they set out and came to Tarsus, where Husayn b. Ali had been informed and came out to meet them. They exchanged greetings with Sayyid and brought him to the city where they had a lot to eat and drink.

## CHAPTER SIX The Story of Sunbat

One day Sayyid was sitting with the companions and there was a great fuss, dust was raised and Sayyid asked, "What's going on?" Husayn answered, "In a nearby place there was a castle in ruins. An infidel called Sunbat came and restored it. Now there are some thieves and rogues there who block the roads and at times they also came and attack and burn our province and no-one can give them an answer back." Sayyid said, "God willing I shall exterminate his evil from this clime." Without wasting time, they wrote a letter and sent it to Malatya informing them of both this and the castle story. [A 81]

When the letter reached Amir Umar he read it and was glad. He sent Ahmad Turran, Abdu'l-Wahhab, Juda with his four sons, Abdu'l-Salam, Tawabil, Junayd b. Sa'id and Nasr Habbab along with three hundred thousand troops to assist Sayyid.

On the other side, Husayn b. Ali with a hundred men and Sayyid set out in the direction of Sunbat. They came and saw that an army of ten thousand men had settled and was waiting. Sayyid divided these hundred men into four groups in four different places. In the middle of the night they rolled their drums and attacked. The Franks were frightened out of their wits and they started slaughtering one another. Sayyid would pull his war-cry at times and the infidels were killing each other. They fought until the morning and in the middle of the battle Sayyid came up to Sunbat and knocked him down with a blow. But they charged forth and captured him back. The cursed did not stay any longer but fled to the castle and barred the gate while the army was being broken and annihilated. They took the goods of these ten thousand and collected them in one place. Sayyid walked up and around the castle trying to find an opportunity and take the castle. He reached a place and saw water coming out. He followed the water which came and dropped in a whole. Sayyid said, "This water here goes into the castle. If there is any hope, it comes from right here." He placed his horse somewhere and took off his clothes. [A 82] He placed his trust in God and passed through this whole in the water and went on. After going on for a while

water came and collected in a cistern. Sayyid also fell into that cistern whose water was very cold. It was a great struggle until he saw a ladder which he held and climbed out. It was evening prayer time and he stood there for a while. Then an old lady came down to the water in tears, and she looked and saw Sayyid. As it were she had lost a son and the exalted God made Sayyid look like him, so she said, "My dear son Nawdhar, where have you been? Sayyid said, "This is no time for idle talk, I am cold. Take me home because I am sick, and do not whisper a word to anyone." She took him home and he said, "Fix me a place to lie down for a while." Sayyid lied down and the old lady covered Sayyid with what she could find and locked the door. Sayyid slept a little until he came to himself and said, "Mother, I am hungry, bring me something to eat." The old lady quickly got up and cooked some eggs and brought grapes and grape paste. Sayyid ate and filled his stomach and then got out and left. He had put on the clothes of that woman's son. He set out and came to Sunbat's palace and saw that he had drunk and was intoxicated and was chatting along saying, "Tomorrow let me go down there and let me not spare either Battal or the caliph himself [A 83] and kill everyone who comes my way. Let me see what Battal's God is going to do to me." He was drunk so he lied down and fell asleep while his servants burst into tears. Sayyid stood patiently in a dark spot and when everyone had left, he trusted himself to God and walked up against Sunbat. Next to his head there was an Indian sword, he took it and woke Sunbat. The cursed one opened his eyes and said, "Who are you?" and Sayyid said, "I am Battal, the killer of the infidel, so quickly confess to the faith, otherwise it's your choice." The cursed tried to scream but Sayyid grasped his throat and brought him up against the door. There were forty people, lying down all drunk. He took out his dagger and cut off their heads.

Empty place for miniature.

[A 84] He broke the key to the door, and he let a war-cry right in front of the door. The Muslims launched a speedy attack on horses and the castle folk hit one another. Sayyid invited the cursed Sunbat to religion but it was to no avail so he hanged him in front of the gate. They fought till the morning brandishing swords until they annihilated the army of the Franks. When morning came the three hundred ghazis from Malatya appeared. They kissed Sayyid's hand and presented their greetings. They were glad at the conquest of the castle. They had found plenty of booty and distributed it to the ghazis. Now Sunbat had a lovely daughter that Sayyid offered to Husayn b. Ali to marry. They demolished the castle leaving it in ruins. Then they headed back to Malatya and got there and for a while they

stayed there eating and drinking. And so it was that the caesar in Rûm could not get any sleep out of fear for Sayyid.

CHAPTER SEVEN  
The Story of Sa'id and Gazban,  
Son of Shamun.

One day the companions had gathered and were sitting around when all of a sudden an old man came in through the door crying and put his head on the ground in front of Sayyid. He wept a lot and Sayyid said, "What's the matter with you and you are crying?" The old man said, "I had two sons, Muhammad and Sa'id, they were both very brave and one day they just disappeared and I do not know what happened to them. I am an old man and I am afraid my destiny will come and my longing will have to wait until Judgment Day" and burst into tears. Sayyid and the begs sitting around all became very sad, their insides burned and the sobbed. [A 85] Sayyid said, "Oh old man you stay here until I come back. Let me go and look for your sons. God willing I will find them." He changed his clothes, mounted on Ashqar and headed for Rûm. In the evening he reached the monastery of Shammas and spent that evening talking with him. Shammas said, "Which way are you going?" and Sayyid told him the story of that old man. Shammas said, "Brave warrior, these fellows are all imprisoned in Mashtiran. There is a castle there, and a son of Shamun, an evil cursed wretch called Gazban has been killing or imprisoning any Muslim he comes across. The other day a monk told me the story." As soon as Sayyid heard this he took his leave of Shammas and rode off.

One day he reached a fountain close to a castle and spent the evening there. It became morning and he noticed how people were coming down from the castle in great groups. Sayyid marched forward and asked someone, "Where are you going?" and he answered, "There is a monastery over this mountain here, where they are having a synod for three days and people are coming from all places. Gazban the son of Shamun also will come. They have caught a lot of Muslim prisoners and they take them out and execute them with all sorts of tortures." [A 86] When Sayyid came over to that side he saw a monastery that looked like a castle, made of white marble with an iron gate. Taryun and Gazban had pitched tents and pavilions in front of the monastery and were engaged in festivities. Sayyid also settled at the foot of a tree in the back, hid Ashqar somewhere and came up to the monastery. He waited till the evening and then he threw a rope and got up

to the roof. He came down, observed well and walked house by house and came to an iron gate that was fastened shut: it was the prison. Sayyid pricked his ears and listened. Every single one had given up hope of their life and was saying in sobs, "Alas, we will die in the realm of infidelity, tomorrow they'll take us out, torture and execute everyone of us." Sayyid said, "God, grace comes from You" and pressed all his body against that iron gate. He made a great effort, he hit and tore it away and saw that it was pitch dark. He cut some firewood with his sword and light some candles and went inside. He saw that there were seventy two people their hands and legs tied with iron. As soon as they saw Sayyid they were very glad. Sayyid introduced himself and they were happy. Sayyid [A 87] carried their weights and lowered them down one by one.

Meanwhile Gazban was informed that Shammas the son of Caesar had arrived and they came out to meet them -he arrived with one hundred and thirty thousand troops- and they exchanged greetings before they settled and busied themselves with eating and drinking. Towards the morning it became known that during the night the prisoners had been freed, and Shammas became very sad and said, "It was no-one other than Battal." At that moment Sayyid who had been standing right there stepped forward and said, "My lord, they killed Sayyid Battal at the castle of Sunbat. I was there present, but, yes, they do not announce it to anyone." These words greatly pleased Shammas who ordered that they give Sayyid a thousand red ones. Then Shammas said, "Relax now, and let us celebrate. Now that Battal has died let me march down with so much army and let me not spare neither Syria, nor the Hijaz, nor the caliph himself: let me set them all on fire." In this joy they had a lot to drink and they went to sleep wasted drunk. That night he took Gazban and sent him to the seventy two people and left him there.

In the morning Shammas looked for Gazban but could not find him. They said, "My lord he has gone out to hunt" and Shammas asked, "Which direction did he follow?" He answered, "Over here." Sayyid took Shammas and fifty of his servants and, walking ahead, brought them to that valley river where he had brought Gazban. [A 88] The seventy two Muslims appeared and cut Shammas and his retinue into pieces. They also killed Gazban. Then they mounted and arrived in the middle of the night and attacked this army. Sayyid shouted, "I am Battal", and Muhammad shouted that, "I am Abdu'l-Wahhab Ghazi" and Sa'id said, "I am Abdu'l-Salam." Everyone mentioned the name of a different ghazi and then charged in attack. By the following morning they had annihilated them one by one.

When the following morning came they saw that Shammas and Gazban had died and the army was broken and stood no more. They killed a lot of people and took their goods and set the monastery on fire. Having taken incredible quantities of goods they

turned back. When they were close to Malatya these brave young men asked for permission and everyone went to his native home. Sayyid took Muhammad and Sa'id with him. The poor, helpless old man was so happy to see his dear children. They offered many prayers to Sayyid. They heard about the conquest of Sayyid and the killing of Shammas and they wrote a letter and sent Muhammad and Sa'id to the caliph. When the caliph heard about all this he was happy and they spread the news to the province of Syria and they rejoiced in the provinces. Again the caliph sent the answer to the letter along with expensive clothes to Sayyid [A 89], "Watch out and do not get caught at unawares. If the caesar makes a move please inform me as well." For a while they lived happily, eating and drinking.

CHAPTER EIGHT  
The Story of Bayda the Witch,  
Daughter of Aqratis.

Meanwhile when the caesar heard the story of his sons he threw himself down from the throne and screamed and pulled out his hair and beard, wore black for forty days and did not sit on the throne. There was a vizier called Aqratis who had a daughter called Bayda. She mastered witchcraft and came into the presence of the caesar and said, "My lord, my daughter keeps saying, "Send me to go and I will cut Battal's head off." The caesar said, "If she does that , then I shall also give her my son to marry and she'll be my bride."

Inside the city there was a Jew called Yamliha. They summoned him, dressed him as a merchant and gave him a lot of gifts. They gave the daughter to him, he took her and came to Malatya, where he offered her to Battal as a gift. He gave presents to all the notables, each according to his rank and position, and he himself settled in a caravan in the palace waiting for the moment when something would come by the lady's hands, always sending men to let her know that he had given his word , "Whenever you are up to something, notify me and I will come and get you again." [A 90]

Sayyid also saw the girl and found her very pleasing to his heart. He always called her and had a good time with her. One evening while sleeping next to him she took aim at Sayyid. She pulled out a dagger and came on top of him. Sayyid felt it and hit her with a punch fending her off. He wanted to kill her but the girl fell to his feet and accepted the faith and became Muslim. The cursed Yamliha heard this and fled abandoning his goods.

They looked for him but could not find him. There were forty loads of gold and silver that Sayyid distributed evenly to the ghazis, who were rejoiced again.

Sayyid had two sons, one of them Ali from Zaynab Hatun, and the other one Nazir, from the caesar's daughter Mah-Piruz. Sayyid was happy and joyful with his two sons. two.

Meanwhile Yamliha came to the caesar and reported the story. He was greatly saddened and said, "I had a debt of a lovely young girl and forty loads of gold and silver, I've sent it all and rescued myself." He cried in sobs.

Now while these were busy with such activities, let us return to our story and Sayyid Ghazi.

One day Sayyid and the companions were sitting around when Tawabil brought an old man. The old man came inside and presented his greetings. When Amir Umar saw the old man he recognized him and said, "Oh Abdu'l-Rahman, how are you? It's been a long time since you have not visited us. Where have you been?" The old man said, "I was in Istanbul" and the [A 91] Amir asked, "What news for the caesar?" The old man said, "The caesar has not sat on the throne or ridden a horse for three whole months. Taryun came and they shed plenty of tears for Shammass and Gazban. Taryun said, 'My lord, it will not do to cry like this. I now have under my command seventy castles and eighty thousand men, their horses all saddled, themselves all dressed up and armored. So many castles and so many people are afraid of Battal; no one dares to go from one city to another and no caravans dare pass through. The whole province is suffering from famine because of Battal's revenge. And a young boy came about and ashamed the Messiah. Now what is your advice, what should we do? If you approve we would like to march against them and do our job and get our justice from Sayyid.' The caesar said, 'I am afraid lest the caliph attack us with them and the whole of Rûm be trodden under their horses' hooves and annihilated by them.' When Ilyun heard this he got upset at the caesar and took his twenty thousand men and came back to his station. There, next to the sea, he had a pavilion built, and stayed there while he sent twenty thousand men to look for Sayyid everywhere and capture him. And, wouldn't you know it, they have thrashed two thousand Sunni Muslims, and whomever they kill, they hang their heads from trees around the pavilion. This is what I've heard and I've brought you the news, lest Sayyid set out in that direction and they capture him." [A 92]

Sayyid heard all of this and that evening he changed his clothes, entrusted himself to God, mounted Ashqar and set out in the direction of Rûm. He rode all that evening and in the morning he reached the monastery of Shammass. He informed Shammass of the

developments and Shammās said, "It's a tough job, do not go on your own, turn back." Sayyid said, "There's no chance of that, I must press on." They brought various things to eat, so they ate. They performed the dawn prayer and Sayyid mounted his horse and rode off. After a day he reached the monastery and saw the skulls hanging from those trees, some all dried up and others fresh. His inside burned with rage. He walked up to the pavilion's gate and pricked his ear to listen. He saw a man come out who saw Sayyid and fell to his feet with all his arms. Sayyid looked closely and realized it was Muhammad b. Fallah. Sayyid, "Hey Muhammad, what are you doing here?" he said, "My lord, I had heard that this cursed one here was punishing Muslims and I came but found no-one, I thought you were him..." All of a sudden the father of Dihyan Ilyun appeared and said, "Hey, who are you, and who are your people?" Sayyid said, "And who are you?" Dihyan introduced himself and Sayyid wanted to attack him but Muhammad asked for the favor and marched up to him himself, hit him with the lance and unsaddled him. [A 93]

The infidel Taryun came out and saw what condition his father was in. He hit Muhammad with the mace in such a way that his shield could not resist it and he collapsed down. Sayyid attacked and he also hit another blow with the mace against Sayyid who repelled it and pulled the mace away from his hands and then hit so hard that he threw him off his horse. By the time he got up Sayyid had sprung to his chest and grabbed him by the beard. He now introduced himself saying, "Without delay accept the faith and become Muslim, otherwise you know." The cursed insulted him and Sayyid realized that he was not receptive at all and severed his head from his body. Dihyan got up and drew his sword. He walked against Sayyid and hit him. Sayyid crossed Dihyan's sword with the sword of Zāhhak and Dihyan's sword was smashed into smithereens. Sayyid hit him with his sword and Dihyan was cut in two. Muhammad came forth and cut his head off and Sayyid ordered and they hanged it from those trees.

It was then that the army appeared and attacked all at once. There was great battle. All of a sudden dust was raised and from the midst of it appeared the standard of Islam and the begs of Tarsus, Husayn b. Ali with Nasr Habbab and Ali b. Hashim. The newly arrived brave warriors of Tarsus charged in attack and destroyed the twenty thousand infidels, killing and capturing them. Then they came and fell to Sayyid's feet and exchanged greetings with Sayyid. They came to the pavilion where they found ten caves and liberated all the Muslim prisoners that were inside. They also found abundant goods [A 94] that they took. They put the pavilion to flames and took down the skulls from those trees and offering a prayer in their honor they buried them. Then they came back and the Tarsus begs returned to Tarsus and Sayyid with Muhammad b. Fallah returned to Malatya.

They came up to the place where they had taken Mihriyayil's daughter and as soon as they got there Muhammad burst into tears and said, "Brave warrior, every time that I come around to this little place I fall in love. Mihriyayil's daughter has died -may you live long. One day I had come this way hunting and four mounted men appeared from that path right here. My eyes fell upon one of them, a maiden as it turned out, and I went out of my mind, and by the time I came back to my senses I no longer knew who was who and what was what. Ever since that time sleep does not come to me either by night or by day." While these two were talking on like this four mounted men appeared and one of them stepped forward and threw a lance at Muhammad. He threw him off his horse. Sayyid got furious and stepped forth saying, "Who are you?" and the other person answered, "I am Yuhanna b. Afshin, a Sunni Muslim. Who are you?" As soon as Sayyid introduced himself Yuhanna dismounted and fell to Sayyid's feet saying, "Brave warrior, I am one of your devoted admirers. Please forgive me that I did not recognize you." He talked with Sayyid saying, "These ones that you see here are my people. I am a wandering nomad, a tent-dweller. We are a thousand tents, all of us Sunni Muslims." [A 95]

Muhammad looked at these people and said to Sayyid, "Oh brave warrior, these are not the ones I saw. Sayyid quickly informed Yuhanna of Muhammad's condition. Yuhanna said, "My lord, it is the daughter of your servant, myself, that they are after." He took Sayyid to his home, and showed them his hospitality in the summer pasture on top of the mountain, with meadows in the midst of pleasant, cold waters. He brought out his daughter and offered her to Muhammad, who exclaimed, "That's her." Sayyid married them and they held a wedding feast and gave the girl to Muhammad. Sayyid stayed there for seven days and then he posted Muhammad there and came to Malatya himself. The Sunnis saw Sayyid and were glad.

After a few days Yuhanna came to Sayyid -all the faithful came out to meet him and honored him and celebrated. Then they sent him to the caliph who also showed him great honors and presented him with ceremonial mantles and praised him, before he sent him back.

Meanwhile, when the caesar heard the death news of Ilyun and Dihyan he was beyond himself with fear. He wrote a letter to Sayyid saying, "The income of a couple of cities is yours so that you may relax and not come this way again!" And this because, being afraid of Sayyid no-one was going out and the province of Rûm was in great famine and no-one was sowing their seeds. When the letter reached Sayyid [A 96] he was pleased. So for a while things stayed like that and the caesar would send gifts -it was tribute really, but he sent it as gifts. As for Sayyid, he would collect the tribute and income of certain cities and distribute it to the Muslims.



CHAPTER NINE  
The Story of Qaytur-Abad

One day the ghazis were sitting around Sayyid when two young men came inside and touched the ground with their faces right in front of Sayyid and burst into tears. Sayyid asked them, "What's your problem, why are you crying?" and those young men said, in tears, "We are scholars of the Scriptures in Alexandria and brothers. When our father died and we were orphaned. Our father bequeathed a great fortune to our uncle whom he declared inheritor in his will. Our uncle gathered all our property and now that we need it he refuses to hand it over when we request it, and makes all sort of excuses. Now at this present time we have no-one to turn to for support better than you, so please help us." Sayyid's inside burned and he jotted down a letter immediately to their judge of the city saying, "As soon as this letter arrives, restore the rights of these two young men from their uncle so that they are not treated unjustly, and make sure that they do not need to come to me again, otherwise you know." He gave them the letter and they forwarded it. They read it and the judge ordered and they gave them back their property. Several days passed after that until one day there was a fight and they slandered these young men that they tried to kill a man and shut both of them into prison. [A 97] One night they broke the prison's lock and escaped. Coming to Malatya they slept somewhere along the road. Now there was an infidel city near by called Qilimiya, and the Padishah of Qilimiya was called Qaytur b. Sasan. A group of infidels fell upon them and captured them because they were Muslims, brought them to Qatayun who ordered that they put them in prison.

They had stayed in prison for a month when one day Qatayun's daughter came for a stroll down to the prison, and fell in love with Qasim when she saw him. She invited him to her religion and pulled a lot of charms until she converted Qasim. The other prisoner's name was Mansur and she got him to abandon his religion by talking and talking, and the two of them became infidels now. They reported the news to Qaytur who went and gave his daughter to Qasim but also treated the other brother well, and also gave him a wife.

One day they were discussing Sayyid's bravery in the presence of Qaytur, and Qaytur complained bitterly about him. Then Qasim and Mansur said, "How about if we were to go out and kill Battal?" Qaytur promised them a great many things to do it. Now they changed their clothes again and came to Sayyid's presence. They offered their prayer and presented their complaints saying, "They have not held to your letter." Sayyid got furious. He mounted Ashqar in a rush and set out in the direction of Alexandria. When

they came close to Qilimiya they settled at a place. When Sayyid lied down asleep, Qasim and Mansur stood up to kill him, but could not bare not to spare him. [A 98] So they took Ashqar and came to Qaytur and reported, "We've brought him to such and such a place, send the army to catch him." Qaytur was glad and he ordered the troops to march against Sayyid.

When the army arrived Sayyid woke up from all the fuss and saw that he had been surrounded. He looked for his clothes and horse but could not find them. His weapons had been fastened on the saddle. He sighed and said, "You see, these two infidels have tricked me into coming here", while the army narrowed in on four sides. Sayyid got up and shouted a war-cry and charged in attack. He brought down one of them and took his horse and clothes and made the army fight one another. He thrashed no less than fifty or sixty infidels. The infidels showered him with arrows and wounded him seriously. A lot of blood gushed out and flowed. Sayyid lost his senses and they threw ropes and caught him. The took him into the presence of Qaytur who looked at the perfect beauty of Sayyid and marveled saying, "Pity, that a fine man like you should die. Come and join by my side and let me treat you well and give you my daughter. Sayyid said, "Do not speak much. The exalted God has so ordained that I must make the whole of Rûm the realm of Islam. Now, it is you who should quickly accept the faith and become Muslim. Rescue your soul from the fire of hell." [A 99] Qaytur laughed and ordered, "Quickly kill this fellow, so that Rûm is spared from his evil."

Now he had a vizier called Ham who said, "You should send this fellow to the caesar and let him do what's necessary. He's his bitter enemy and he has killed his own sons. Moreover, this fellow has many companions, all of them treacherous, so God forbid that some calamity reach you." And so they in fact did: they wrote a letter to the caesar and sent it reporting the story. They put Sayyid in prison.

One day Qaytur saw the prophet in his dream: he saw that the Day of Judgment had arrived and all the prophets and the saints asked for intercession from the exalted Messenger. Qaytur also came along to ask for assistance and intercession but they chased him away. The Messenger said, "Qaytur, release Sayyid Battal, my own son, immediately out of his hole and become Muslim right there in front of him so that I may intercede on your behalf when your turn comes up today." Qaytur woke up trembling in fear. Mansur also saw the Prophet in his dream and without delay accepted the faith and got up and released Sayyid from his bonds falling to his hands and feet and begging for pardon. He told Sayyid about having seen the messenger and the Day of Judgment. Sayyid consoled Mansur, "Do not worry, what will happen is all preordained" he said. He took Sayyid to his home and gave him a meal to eat. Sayyid said, "Take me to Qaytur." [A 100] He took

him to Qaytur's palace. They threw a piece of rope and climbed up. Sayyid saw that Qaytur was lying alone in thought, in his bed-clothes; it was exactly the moment he had woken up. As Sayyid lifted the trap-door and looked down, Qaytur raised his head and said, "Come down, oh brave warrior of the horizons, Sayyid Battal Ghazi, come and rescue me from the darkness of disbelief." Sayyid came down as soon as he heard this message. Qaytur fell to Sayyid's feet and accepted the faith and became Muslim. Mansur rejoiced and was glad and he summoned his begs and servants and they all became Muslims. The news reached the city and they all at once became Muslim. Sayyid took Qaytur and his begs along with plentiful booty and came to Malatya. The companions came to meet him and exchanged greetings with Sayyid and Qaytur. They held festivities and everyone rejoiced. They reported this conquest of Sayyid as well to the caliph in a letter. The caliph on his part sent expensive clothes to Sayyid and Qaytur, along with a congratulating note. Qaytur himself had a city built in a place called Qaraqib Brook and he named it Qaytur-Abad. He moved and settled his people there, and it became part of the realm of Islam.

When the caesar heard about these news he was deeply anxious. All the people of Rûm became helpless [A 101] and dejected because of Sayyid's scare. Things remained like this for a few days.

## CHAPTER TEN

### In the Land of Maghrib: The Story of Firdaws Shah the Jew.

The storytellers say that one day Sayyid sat down to eat in his own house. They brought him food and he tried to get a bite but it fell from his hand. Seven times he tried but the food always dropped from his hand. Sayyid was bewildered and told his wife, , "Isn't this strange?" She answered, "What would be strange is if a respectable Muslim, a descendant of the Apostle himself, has not just been taken prisoner." While the two of them were talking like this Tawabil stepped in with an old man dressed in blue. He greeted Sayyid, offered a prayer and stood there waiting. Sayyid asked him, "Who are you?" and he answered, "Man of the world and sultan of the warriors, I am a Jewish person, that's who I am. For seventy years now I have been a merchant, I have been traveling the world. There isn't a city and a castle in this world that I have not seen. Now, there is a city in the Maghrib called Samiliya. Samsuvar had it built. Its padishah is called Firdaws Shah and he is the caliph of all the Jews that there are and of the Christians. He's an evil dog and a most cursed wretch. He captures every Muslim he gets his hands on. During the day he forces them to carry stones, at night he chains them in a great moat. I had sent him a lot of

textiles so I went over there and he paid me their worth. [A 102] Now I had some valuable stone with me, and no-one could afford its price. But there was a girl who came to look at those stones. The minute I saw her face, I fell in love with her. So I stayed in that place for three years now. On a particular day once a year the young maiden came out to distribute alms to the dervishes. One of the times I got up and came over to those prisoners. I found an old man there and told him all about my situation. He said 'I could be of help if you were to do what I will tell you.' I said 'On with it, what's your plan?' He said 'Get out of here and go to the border of the province of Syria. There is a city there called Malatya and there's a man there called Sayyid Battal Ghazi. Let me give you a letter to bring to him and you can tell him all about us here and explain your situation to him. I know that he is certain come here: there's a descendant of the Apostle held prisoner here, whose face has not seen the light of day in that cavern for seventy years. Moreover, there's two more men in prison here, one of them a descendent of the children of Abu Bakr the truthful, and the other one from the line of Umar -may God be pleased with both of them.' So he spoke and wanted to give me a letter, only he did not get a chance. In any event, here I am, I've come anyway and informed you of the condition of those believers. Finally, I have forty loads of gold hidden away over there, but may they all be sacrificed in the path of God, and may I also become Muslim [A 103] on the only condition that you will give that girl to me." Sayyid accepted and started out. They saddled Ashqar and they set out for the Maghrib.

After a few days they reached a place in the middle of a forest and camped to spend the night by a spring. They had a bite to eat and all of a sudden a fearful lion came out of the forest. The lion looked at Sayyid once, and then turned back and disappeared. After a while it appeared again, with a tray with fresh and dried greens of the mountain on its head.

Empty place for miniature.

The lion greeted Sayyid saying, "My apologies, but this is what this forsaken place has to offer to eat." Sayyid and Umar had some to eat and Umar was amazed at the actions of this lion. Then Sayyid entrusted Ashqar to the lion, as the lion accepted eagerly. They put the saddle and the harness up on a tree and the lion took Ashqar and disappeared. [A 104] Sayyid and the merchant came to the coast of the sea and saw a ship of merchants passing by. They boarded it and sailed off. They reached an island where they disembarked; the seamen and the merchants sailed on but Sayyid with Umar stayed behind.

Suddenly they saw a demon of man, all decked with arms. Another demon came behind and asked Sayyid, "Who are you?" Sayyid said, "First, you tell me who you are."

That person said, "I am Sanjar, the warrior of Firdaws. I am on my way to Malatya to find Battal." Sayyid said, "What will you do with Battal?" and Sanjar said, "Firdaws has been seeing Battal in his dream: Battal comes and grabs him by the throat, saying 'Quickly, become Muslim, otherwise you know.' He has seen this dream a few nights and it grieves his soul, so he ordered me 'I will give my daughter to you if you kill Battal and spare this province from his evil.' So I am after him now." Sayyid said, "The caesar has sent me to Firdaws because he is helpless in the hands of Battal and wants help from Firdaws." Sanjar said, "Have you seen that Battal? What sort of a person is he? What sort of a warrior is he?" Sayyid said, "I've seen him. He's a real man, and no-one can confront him. You two now, do me the favor and turn back, he's not your kind of person. Not even a hundred like you could take him on. I could not stand up as a man against him myself, so imagine what sort of a position you're in!" [A 105] Sanjar laughed and said, "Just who are you to judge my powers?" Sayyid said, "You obviously haven't taken a liking to me. Come forth and let us wrestle it out." Sanjar, furious, came over and grabbed Sayyid, but however much he tried he could not even move him from his place. Now it was Sayyid's turn. He gave a war-cry and threw Sanjar to the ground. He sat on his chest and put a dagger to his throat. Sanjar opened his eye and saw that the situation was grave. Sayyid said, "I am Sayyid Battal Ghazi, so quickly accept the faith, otherwise I will take your life." The cursed wretch started insulting him, and Sayyid cut his head off. The other person came and fell to Sayyid's feet and said, "My lord, I am from the city of Baghdad, the son of a Muslim, my name is Sa'id. I was a prisoner., " He accepted the faith again and offered prayers to Umar the merchant and Sayyid. Sayyid put on Sanjar's clothes, disguised himself in his appearance and off they went.

After a week they reached an island. Umar the merchant said , "My lord, this is Saminiya. There are seven islands, three hundred and sixty six castles, and five thousand villages, all of them Jews. The leader of all of them is Firdaws." Sayyid summoned Sa'id, who took an oath that he would keep the secret, so Sayyid told him, "Rush to Firdaws and give him the good news that Sanjar killed Battal on the way, [A 106] took his head and is coming back." Sa'id went off to Firdaws and gave him the good news. Immediately they presented Sa'id with mantles. Firdaws ordered and they decorated the city for celebrations. The begs came to meet him and Sayyid came up to Firdaws and rubbed his face on the ground and rolled Sanjar's head in front of the horse. Firdaws said to Sanjar, "Why are you holding a veil in front of your face?" Sayyid said, "When I fought with Battal he hit me from across and smashed my face." They brought Sayyid to Sanjar's room and settled him to rest there. For three days they stayed there and held festivities. Then Firdaws had everyone leave the palace and invited Sayyid, saying, "Sanjar, what should we do? What's

your plan now that we are safe from the enemy? My purpose has always been to attack the province of Syria and conquer it before the caesar gets to it first." Sayyid looked around him at all four sides and saw that it was still crowded, so he said, "My lord, when I met Battal he told me a couple of things, so please ask everyone out and I will let you know." He immediately gave the order and they left them alone. Sayyid stepped forward, lifted his veil and said, "Come and take a look at my face." Firdaws looked well and was amazed. He said, "Who are you?" and he answered, "I am Battal Ghazi, I've come [A 107] to make you a Muslim. How many times in your dreams did I invite you and you still refused to become a Muslim. Here I am now, so become a Muslim, otherwise you know. As for the head that you saw, that was Sanjar's head." As soon as Firdaws heard these words he lost his mind. He said, "Even if I die, may I not pronounce these words" and attempted to scream. Sayyid clasped his beard, pulled him down from his throne and cut his head off.

All of a sudden a boy came out under the throne and fell on Sayyid's feet saying, "I saw the prophet in my sleep and became a Muslim. He told me, "The person who will come is Battal, not Sanjar, and he must kill Firdaws. Go and become a friend to him. Stay by his side in this great *ghaza*." He raised his finger and became a Muslim and said, "My name is Awhad." Sayyid said, "Quickly now, tell me where those fifty people are held prisoner. Firdaws saw a scary dream and he's going to sacrifice them. Tell me now, or even better, go and fetch them." He sent Sa'id along, and the two of them went and got them. On their way back the prisoners were sobbing in tears crying, "Alas, we are stuck in the land of infidels." They brought them into the palace and Sayyid ordered, "Run and have the gates shut so that no-one finds out." Sa'id ordered and they freed their hands. They looked around, [A 108] saw Sayyid and threw themselves at his feet. Sayyid said, "I am Battal Ghazi" and they all rejoiced. Then they armed themselves. Sayyid told Awhad, "Now I say you invite all the great notables in, one by one or two by two. Tell them the Shah is seeking your opinion." They brought them in and Sayyid showed them Firdaws and invited them to the religion. They did not accept and he cut their heads off. There were ten famous begs altogether, and after he thrashed them he gave orders and they brought in prisoners in groups of fifty. They freed their hands and armed them. In this way they had set five thousand prisoners free by the morning. They all armed themselves and were drowned in iron.

In the morning Sayyid shouted the call to prayer from the roof of the palace. The people listened and wondered, "What on earth is this?" They came out of their homes and saw that the head of Firdaws and another ten famous begs were cut off and posted on lances, while Sayyid and five thousand men were standing there fully armed. As soon as the people of the city saw them, fear fell upon them.

Sayyid performed the morning prayer along with the five thousand men on the roof of the palace. When they completed their prayer, Sayyid shouted with a loud voice, "I am Sayyid Battal Ghazi, here I've come and killed Firdaws along with his begs, and I've liberated the five thousand persons who were prisoners here. So you too now, accept the faith and [A 109] rescue yourselves, otherwise I will thrash you all and take your sons and daughters prisoner." As soon as the people of the city heard a message like this they broke out into loud sighs. Sayyid ordered, they opened the gates, charged outside and put their swords to use. There decimated them for one day and one night until the city folk asked for mercy and protection. They had taken five thousand prisoners. Sayyid invited them to religion and they all became Muslim. In seven days they converted the whole city. Sayyid mounted the throne and upon his order they pulled down and destroyed the monastery. In the place of monasteries they built mosques. He also ordered them to build a Friday mosque fast.

Thereafter he asked, "Tell me now, which descendant of the Apostle is still here in prison." Awhad stepped forward and said, "He's underneath the throne." He ordered and they brought the throne. An iron window opened, and Sayyid went inside. He went down fourteen steps and found a white-bearded old man, his beard falling over his chest. It was as if a candle was burning in that cave from the light of his face, and one's head was overwhelmed with the scent of musk and amber. A reading stand with a Koran was standing in front of him. When he saw Sayyid he said, "Welcome to you Battal Ghazi. Last night I saw my forefather the exalted Apostle -peace be upon Him- in my dream and he told me 'In the morning Sayyid will come to you and take you out of prison.' Sayyid stepped forward, presented his greetings and kissed his hand and foot. The old man also kissed [A 110] Sayyid in both eyes and said, "I was seven years old when I became a prisoner, and I've been in the cave for seventy years." Sayyid took his hand and led him out of the hole. His name was Asim. They took him to the baths and dressed him in the proper clothes of an imam. Then they led him to the throne. Asim said, "There are two more prisoners, one is called Afw, from the family of Abu Bakr and the other Abu Tahir from the family of Umar. He ordered and they took them also out of prison, sent them to the baths and made both of them Asim's viziers. The Friday mosque was completed. Asim and Tahir and Afw all came to the mosque, Sayyid delivered the sermon and they performed the prayer. When they completed their prayer everyone went to his own station. Suddenly there was a tumult.

Abu'l-Muhdhif Shami tells the story that Firdaws had a son named Jalut and a son-in-law called Harut. Well, when the two of them heard that Battal had killed Firdaws they gathered three hundred thousand Jews and came over. When the people of the province

heard about this, they got scared and took refuge in the city. The city was a well protected city, and they stood on guard at the towers and ramparts. That army of three hundred thousand arrived, laid siege to the city and camped. That evening Sayyid made a sortie attack and forced the Jews to fight with one another till the morning. When it became morning they saw that there was no [A 111] foreigner amongst them and realized that they had been killing each other. Ten thousand people had been put to the sword. They said, "Battal is such a devilish trickster, look at what he's done to us." Jalut ordered and the army mounted, fastened their banners and stood waiting. Jalut entered the battlefield and shouted, "Hey Battal, you have ruined the whole world with your devilish tricks. If you are a true man, come out to the battlefield and I will show you what manhood is all about." Sayyid placed Asim with five thousand to the castle, took the rest and came out. He spurred his horse and came up to Jalut. Jalut said, "Who are you, what sort of a person are you?" and he answered, "I am Sayyid Battal Ghazi, the killer of Firdaws." Jalut sighed loudly and hurled the lance he was holding. Sayyid came across, held the lance and pulled it away from Jalut's hands. Jalut attempted to cross over, Sayyid hit him so hard with the back of the lance in the belly that he collapsed from the horse's saddle to the ground. He fell down and by the time he got up again Sayyid had clasped his beard. He invited him to the religion, but when he saw that there was no promise he cut his head off.

Harut shouted and all at once the whole army attacked. Sayyid gave a war-cry and threw his army against the others. In the midst of battle he came across Harut and a few charges went amiss. While they were fighting he walked away from Harut, pretending he had gotten weak. Everyone stood watching, from above or below. Harut gave a war-cry saying, "Battal, where are you trying to flee from my hands? Would I ever let you go [A 112] before I cut your head off and rid this province from your evil?" He spurred his horse and followed Sayyid until they entered an area with trees. He caught up with him saying, "You devilish trickster, are there no real men in Rûm? What did you take the Maghrib to be? Did you think it was like Rûm here? Watch now what I am going to do to you." Right when he had come close, Sayyid turned fast and hit him so hard that Harut flew seven steps away from the horse's saddle and collapsed. He cut his head off and put on his clothes. He hung Harut's head from his own horse; he had beaten Harut's head so much to the ground that no one could recognize it. Then he came out of the forest again and the Muslims saw that Harut was coming leading Sayyid's horse and having cut his head off. They screamed sobbing in tears, "Alas, dear beautiful Battal." They army of the infidels was exuberant, "What on earth are you still lying in there for. The Fire of Light has given us a chance like this. Let us get up and march against the castle." Sayyid said, "I fought a great battle with



Battal, you go ahead and lay siege to the city and do not allow the Muslims to exit and flee, while I sleep here for a while."

They did in fact do so and Sayyid himself slept for a while. After part of the night passed he got up and saw two boys sitting. He called them over and said, "I am Battal Ghazi, I killed Harut, [A 113] so accept the faith right away, otherwise you know." They came and fell to Sayyid's feet and said, "We are Muslims from Syria. We came to this area and fell prisoners.

Empty place for miniature.

They killed our fathers but spared us because we were young" and they raised their finger professing the faith. Sayyid said, "Summon Talut here." He was Harut's younger brother. They called him and he came by himself. He entered and when he saw Sayyid his heart jumped to his head. Sayyid said, "I am Battal Ghazi, and I've killed Harut. Now, become a Muslim, [A 114] otherwise I will kill you too." Talut wanted to scream but Sayyid jumped and sat tightly on his chest and cut his head off. One by one he summoned the begs and thrashed them. He took those two boys and came to the castle gate and shouted loudly. Asim heard Sayyid's shout and opened the gate to let them in. They rejoiced and Asim said, "Brave hero, when we saw that skull, we lost our breath. Whose was that skull?" Sayyid just said, "Nine tenths of bravery is mere trickery."

When morning came the drums rolled from inside the city and Sayyid came out and shouted once with a loud and clear voice, "I am Sayyid Battal Ghazi, the infidel slaughterer. I've killed Harut and Talut, so now you accept the faith and become Muslims, otherwise I will hack you all to pieces." The people heard him and screamed rushing to their tents. But they did not find their begs, in fact they found them headless. They could not endure that and they took to fleeing. Their ships were waiting by the sea shore. They came to board them and flee when all of a sudden the Prophet Khidr appeared and said, "Oh people, why are you fleeing?" They answered, "The slaughterer Battal has decimated us and thrashed our begs." He asked, "Why?" and they replied, "He keeps inviting us to religion, but we are not giving up our own religion." Khidr said [A 115], "His religion is the truth, the real religion. He's speaking the truth, go and obey him." They said, "Jesus would bring the dead to life, Moses performed so many miracles and we confessed to him. What did we see from this one to abandon our religion?" The prophet Khidr said, "You go and tell him 'You bring a dead person back to life and we'll offer you our confession.' Just tell him that!"

When they heard these words they turned back once again and came to Sayyid saying, "Brave man, why are you killing us?" He said, "Accept the faith and you'll be free and rescued." They said, "Would you like us to follow you? Well we have something to say in your presence, if you will allow us." , "What do you want to tell me?" They said, "Bring a dead person to life and we shall follow your religion." As soon as Sayyid heard these words he shouted, "Do not kill anyone else" Then he told them, "You stay right here now, I have some dead of my own, let me go and announce the good news." He rushed to Asim and said, "Is there anyone who could bring the dead to life?" and Asim replied, "Of course, the prophet Ilyas keeps a prayer and whoever reads it may bring a dead one to life." Sayyid asked, "Where might one get hold of him?" and Asim answered, "That mountain over there in the middle of the sea is Ilyas' spot, and that's where the exalted prophet is. But first you must fast for forty days [A 116] and then your wish will be fulfilled." Sayyid turned to the army of the infidels and said, "Grant me a delay of forty days and let me present myself to my God so that he may grant me my request."

He immediately boarded a boat and came up to that mountain. He saw an island resembling Paradise, with meadows and rivers sweet as sugar, all covered in green. He climbed the mountain and came to a magnificent spring that resembled the waters of Paradise. There was a huge tree next to it, in whose shadow a recluse was built. It had a door made of white silver with a golden ring.

Empty place for miniature.

Sayyid performed his ablutions and was busy with worship. He fasted for forty days and did not eat or drink. [A 117]

On the fortieth evening, the prophet Ilyas appeared at dawn with his white beard. Man could not set eyes upon him, they were blinded by his radiant light. As soon as Sayyid saw him he fell to his feet and kissed his hand. Ilyas on his part kissed Sayyid on both eyes and said, "Sayyid, I know why you've come and what your wish is!" At that moment he taught Sayyid that prayer and said, "My dear boy, this province must come to Islam under your leadership." And he added, "Come let us pray the morning prayer together" and led him to the door. As soon as they drew near the door flung open and he said, "Oh Sayyid, read out the call to prayer." Sayyid recited the call to prayer and walked inside where he saw a *mihrad* and a green prayer rug spread out, its light reaching the heavens.

Empty place for miniature.

At the corner of the *mihrad* there were many more different kinds. Ilyas took one and offered it to Sayyid saying, "Let this be a remembrance present from me." They performed the *sunna* part and Ilyas led the prayer. Then they performed the *farz* part and he recited a prayer. [A 118] When they completed the prayer he offered advise to Sayyid. Then he said, "Close your eyes" and Sayyid closed his eyes. When he opened them again he found himself by the seashore. There was no Ilyas and no recluse any more, but, yes, there was the prayer rug next to him! Sayyid was amazed. Then came a voice, "Sayyid, you may go now, your wish has been fulfilled." Sayyid offered a prayer of thanks, boarded the boat and came out to the shore across.

The news spread and the Muslims came to collect him. Sayyid sent someone to call for the begs and notables of those infidels. Then he said, "Tell me now what you have to say. Show me the one you want me to resurrect with the grace of God." They said, "There, out on that mountain across there's a young boy and a young girl killed by Firdaws. Resurrect them for us so that they rise and confess to your religion. Let us see that and we'll obey you."

Sayyid ordered and all the Muslims and infidels of the area were present. They showed him the tomb and Sayyid laid out the prayer rug on top of it. He read the prayer of the prophet Ilyas while all the Muslims raised their hands saying, "Amen." As soon as Sayyid completed the prayer, the tomb was rent asunder thanks to the power of God, and the two of them got up throwing off the dust from their heads. One of them was a young man and the other a maiden [A 119] beautiful as the full moon. They said, "We testify that there is no God but God and that Muhammad is His servant and apostle." As soon as that people saw that, they raised their finger and accepted the faith. The two young persons said, "Sayyid, please read that prayer again for we do not have a destiny in this world. We have had our share of its taste but we no longer need this world." Sayyid read that prayer again and the two of them put their faces on the ground and surrendered their souls. Sayyid buried them right there and had a dome built on top. That spot is still a place of pilgrimage.

Sayyid stayed there seven days and then came to the city.

Empty place for miniature.

Two hundred and fifty thousand people became Muslim by confession, as well as seven great cities and three [A 120] hundred sixty castles and five thousand villages that became Muslim in the hands of Sayyid. Once all of this was completed, Sayyid invited the

Jewish merchant to the faith. He pronounced the confession of faith right in front of Sayyid and became a Muslim. Then Sayyid offered him the daughter of Firdaws to marry. The merchant on his part brought the forty loads of gold and placed them right in front of Sayyid, who dedicated them all to the path of God. Then he summoned Asim and wanted him to be a caliph there. Asim did not accept and said, "I took an oath in prison that if the exalted God liberates me I shall go to Kaaba and shall stay there. Now, thank God, I have been set free by you, and I shall never abandon you." However much Sayyid tried to convince him, it was to no avail, so he said, "Now we need a person here to be caliph in this realm and keep us informed of whatever happens here." They went and made one of the descendants of Abu Bakr, Abdu'l-Mu'min, padishah and provided him with arms. They gathered the goods of Firdaws and of Harut and Jalut and of all the begs whom Sayyid killed, prepared their ships, boarded and sailed off.

One day they reached the shore and Sayyid got out and shouted a loud cry. The lion appeared and rubbed its face on the ground in front of Sayyid and paid its respects. Then it left again and came back with Ashqar and another seven hundred horses, saying, "I kept Ashqar company so he wouldn't feel sad." Sayyid caressed the lion and then the Sunni Muslims mounted the horses, loaded the textiles on some of them and set out. [A 121]

## CHAPTER ELEVEN The Story of Bakhtyar

There was a castle with an infidel padishah called Bakhtyar who was an evil cursed wretch who showed no sympathy to Muslims. Sayyid had been informed about this infidel so he hid his companions and walked to the castle alone. He found a pig herder outside the castle and asked him about the situation in the castle. The pig herder answered, "They call this castle the Fortress of Balang." Sayyid invited the pig herder to join the religion but he tried to scream so he grabbed his throat and strangled him. Then he put on the herder's clothes and lead the pigs up to the castle. The people there said, "What's happened to you and you've come here at this hour?" Sayyid said, "At such and such a place I saw a few Muslims -here, that's why I came." There was a great rushing about, they came down [from the castle walls] and there was great arguing-noise inside the castle. They informed Bakhtyar who laughed loudly and said, "Battal cannot sleep out of fear for me, sleep does not come to his eyes, so he wouldn't dare come near. Bring me this shepherd here at once so I can get the news directly from him."

They took Sayyid and brought him to Bakhtyar. Sayyid saw a drunken cursed man sitting, with a mountain like iron mace, two cubits long, placed in front of him and four hundred servants of his standing across. They asked news from Sayyid and he said, "At such and such a river valley I saw a few Muslims and fled from them." Bakhtyar got furious and told his servants, "You get down there and capture them all and bring them here." The servants got out [A 122] and Bakhtyar remained alone. He looked and saw Sayyid across from him and said, "You silly shepherd, you should have gone along." Sayyid said, "With your permission, I have something to tell you." Bakhtyar said, "Speak up." Sayyid stepped forward and grabbed the mace with his hand as if it were an apple. Bakhtyar said, "What on earth are you doing?" Sayyid said, "Did you recognize me? I am Sayyid Battal Ghazi, so now quickly accept the faith otherwise I've made your head into little pieces." Bakhtyar reached for his sword but Sayyid hit him with the mace and leveled him to the ground along with his throne.

Sayyid came outside and gave a war-cry and put his sword to work. Then the ghazis attacked from outside, Sayyid from inside and they decimated the infidels, some of whom asked for mercy and protection and became Muslims. Sayyid ordered and they destroyed and ruined the castle. Two hundred believing Muslims, people of great usefulness declared obedience to Sayyid. They gathered the goods of the castle and set out with six hundred men.

Meanwhile, the news reached the Caesar of Rûm that Battal died and disappeared. There was a brave warrior called Shamasp, whom he sent with one hundred thousand men along with Sarjayil saying, "March and destroy Islam. Do not spare anyone."

The news reached Malatya and Amir Umar gathered the companions and told them what the story was. They held a council and every one spoke many words. Abdu'l-Wahhab said, "The proper course of action is to move out of here and go to Mount Conquest (*Fath Jabal*) [A 123] and dig a trench and stay behind it as we did in the past. From there we can deal with the enemy. Moreover that is a blessed place, every time we made it there, with the blessing of Muhammad's miracles, God the exalted gave us a chance and victory." They all liked Abdu'l-Wahhab's words, so twelve thousand Sunni Muslims moved out and came to Mount Victoria and settled there entrusting themselves to God.

Then suddenly one day appeared the dust of the army of the infidels. The infidels arrived in great numbers and came and camped with their cross-bearing banners. Shamasp ordered and they wrote and sent a letter to the believers, "Come and obey me. I've forgiven your sins and Battal himself has died, so who are you fighting for? You should catch that old man that goes around saying, "I've seen Muhammad" and send him to me so that I may do to him what I did to Battal." The envoy arrived and they read the letter. They tore it to

pieces, cut the nose and two ears of the envoy and sent him packing. Shamasp saw him and got furious. He gave the order and the army mounted. Himself, he entered the battlefield and made a show of force and asked for a challenger. From our side Ahmad Turran entered the battlefield and fought bravely. But all of a sudden his horse stumbled and collapsed, and by the time he got back on his feet again the cursed one threw a lasso and caught Ahmad. The cursed's slaves rushed and brought Ahmad to the foot of the standard.

The ghazis were in despair. Abdu'l-Wahhab entered the battlefield and was caught prisoner. Juda followed him and was taken captive. [A 124] Fourteen famous heroes were defeated by Shamasp. The Sunnis shouted loudly and charged in attack. The army of the infidels did so as well. The Muslims broke their ranks and did not manage to get back to their trenches, but fled to Malatya.

Amir Umar came to Malatya and immediately wrote a letter to the caliph reporting the situation, "Sayyid went out to the Maghrib and has not appeared since. As for our condition, this is what happened." As soon as the caliph heard this news he became sad. The son of Mizrab of Khwarazm, Ali b. Khwarazmi, the son of the daughter of Abu Muslim was there present, and the caliph sent him along with twelve thousand men as assistance.

Meanwhile on the other side, Shamasp entrusted those companions taken prisoners to the infidel Mantinos and attached another thousand men to him. There were also another two hundred Muslim prisoners and he entrusted these as well to the infidel Mantinos. He also gave him plenty of fine horses and a few other goods to give to the caesar as a gift. Then he set out from there and came and laid siege to Malatya.

There was great deprivation in the city and the Muslims were despairing as they had no strength left because of the hunger.

The storyteller say that one day the army of infidels made a concerted effort and marched against the city laying a tight siege and making holes in the castle walls. Suddenly Ali b. Mizrab with twelve thousand men appeared from the road to Baghdad. [A 125] Ali ordered a rain of arrows to be shot. Screaming, "*God is Great*" his men charged in attack from different places. They killed and injured twelve thousand infidels. The army of the infidels retreated away from the castle. Ali ordered once again and they drew their swords and mounted. They left another twenty thousand infidels dead on the ground. Night was approaching so they returned to their camps. Amir Umar came up to Ali and presented his greetings and congratulations. Then he took Ali b. Mizrab and brought him to the city.

The following morning the drums rolled and the armies mounted. Ali entered the battlefield and made a show of power and asked for a challenger. One after the other he

thrashed ninety infidels. When the cursed Shamasp saw what had happened he set out for the battlefield. They fought all day and all evening but no one managed to defeat the other and they retired. Amir Umar and the Sunnis offered prayers for Ali. Ali gave the order to pitch their tents outside the castle. Amir Umar played host that evening and they had a pleasant gathering till the morning. They were sorry for Sayyid for a while.

When morning came the drums rolled again and the armies mounted and lined up for battle. Meanwhile, the cursed Mantinos was marching along with his thousand men and those prisoners he had taken. The companions were lamenting in their bondage, exclaiming with sobs, "Alas, if the caesar sees us he shall have no mercy and we shall not see the face of Sayyid again, at least not until the day of Judgment."

All of a sudden dust was raised from across the way and when the wind cleared it away the banner of Islam appeared. [A 126] Ahmad took a look and saw a tall handsome man at the foot of the banner. The prisoners sighed and exclaimed, "If only this man were Sayyid he would liberate us from the hands of this cursed wretch."

Meanwhile Sayyid noticed them and the banner of the infidels and wondered, "What could so many infidels be doing around here?" Upon his order the expedition camped somewhere to rest. They were six hundred Sunnis. Sayyid dismounted from his horse, fastened his stirrups, mounted again and gave such a war-cry that those thousand people thought the earth and the heavens collapsed. He shouted, "You wretched creatures, did you really think I wouldn't be back? Well, here I am" and charged forth. Mantinos saw Sayyid and attempted to flee but Sayyid caught up with him and cut him into two with a single blow. The army of the infidels saw that and took to fleeing. Sayyid rushed to the prisoners. They all saw Sayyid and started to cry. He dismounted and did away with their bonds. They fell to Sayyid's feet and he asked them how they were. They told him their story. Having thrashed seven hundred infidels they took their horses and clothes and set out for Malatya.

Meanwhile, Ali b. Mizrab entered the battlefield and summoned Shamasp. Shamasp saw him and steered his horse to the battlefield. The two of them fought hard. In the end Shamasp was exhausted and said [A 127], "Hey Ali, did you get tired and you are looking out for your army?" Ali said, "How much of a man do you think you are to exhaust me?" , "Well in that case tell your troops beside you to go back to their place" said Shamasp. Ali thought he was speaking the truth and turned back to see. Meanwhile the cursed wretch drew his sword, reached Ali and cut his thigh open. Ali sighed and said, "You cursed wretch, you've caught me at unawares and injured me with a trick!" His servants saw what had happened and carried him away leaving his horse behind. Amir Umar ordered and they took him to the city. The Sunnis stayed helpless in lamentation.

It was just at that moment that dust was raised. The lion banner appeared out of it. At the foot of the banner came Sayyid Battal Ghazi followed by those brave men who had been taken prisoners, along with about another thousand men. The Muslims saw them and rejoiced and spread the good news. Sayyid steered his horse to the battlefield and came up to the cursed wretch. Sayyid said, "Who are you?" and Shamasp answered, "I am Shamasp, the caesar's brave man." Sayyid said, "Did you recognize me?" and Shamasp replied, "I recognized you, you are Battal!" Sayyid said, "Very well, so now accept the faith immediately, otherwise, you know" The cursed wretch said, "Take a look here at this!" Sayyid looked and saw a man's thigh lying down. He said, "What on earth is this?" and the cursed wretch answered, "It's the thigh of the king (*mālik*) of Khwarazm." Sayyid shouted, "Bring Ali here immediately, and if he has no strength left, put him on a stretcher and bring him over." [A 128] That's what they in fact did, they strapped him on a stretcher and brought him to the battlefield. Sayyid came up to him and placed the thigh in its missing place and read the prayer of prophet Ilyas. Right that moment it healed perfectly thanks to the power of the exalted God. Ali stood up on his feet, placed his head at Sayyid's feet and kissed his foot. A servant brought a horse and Ali mounted and all the companions saw him and rejoiced, offering prayers of thanks and congratulations.

The cursed Shamasp saw this and was amazed, exclaiming, "Hey Battal, you are a witch, aren't you? I shall have your head cut off, and we shall see whether you have a trick to rescue yourself this time. Having said that he steered his horse against Sayyid in order to hit him with his sword. But Sayyid hit him from below in such a way that his hand and head went flying in the sky. The companions could no longer contain themselves, they screamed at all different places and sprang to their feet. The infidels' army saw all of this and took to fleeing. The Muslims pursued them for three days taking prisoners and then turned back again. They gathered the goods of that army, put aside the fifth for the caliph and distributed the rest to the ghazis. Sayyid also distributed the goods he had brought. For a few days they treated Asim and Tahir and Afw with great honor. Then they sent them to the caliph. The caliph was delighted to see them, and they told him all about Sayyid's story. The caliph was amazed and they all offered their good prayers for Sayyid. Then they sought permission and set out for the Kaaba. [A 129] They got there and became pilgrims.

Meanwhile on the other side, the caesar was informed that the army had been defeated, Shamasp had died and Battal had returned; they reported, one by one, the stories of the adventures he had come across in the Maghrib and of Ali b. Mizrab. The caesar sank in great grief and cried in sobs, lamenting, "Alas! I will be damned if the next thing



Battal does is not to claim prophethood. The preachings of Jesus have lost ground to the victorious religion of Muhammad. From now on there's no splendor left in our religion."

There was a vizier named Manjayil, who said, "My lord, something came to my mind. With your permission, I may tell you." The caesar said, "Out with it!" He said, "All the provinces that are attached to you should close their mountain passes, and troops should be posted at those places where men used to cross, they should not allow anyone through. Whoever they find they should kill and show no mercy, and if it is someone they know themselves they should send him over to you. If you want you may kill him or you may imprison him. And surely Battal will not stand still and shall come this way, so that you might, the Messiah willing, catch him and get your due from him."

The caesar was pleased with this plan and he dashed a letter to his son Shamun informing him of the developments. Then he also sent a letter to Sunbat b. Ilyun, Kalib b. Sabbah, Faridun the Persian, Qalun of Jerusalem, Takfur Shah and to [A 130] Gulbad the Greek ordering them to guard the mountain passes and either kill whoever they find or send them to the caesar. Indeed that's what they did: they strictly forbade anyone from crossing, so that not even a bird could cross. They placed two thousand five hundred men at every mountain valley. There were places where there might be ten or twenty thousand men on guard. That's how well they guarded. Next the caesar sent ten thousand gold pieces to Shammās warning him, "Watch out, if Battal comes your way, be sure to let us know." Shammās himself of course was a believing Muslim, as well as Sayyid's dear friend.

Meanwhile, Sayyid was sitting around with the companions one day when Yahya b. Munzir entered and exchanged greetings with the companions and Sayyid. Sayyid said, "Where are you coming from?" and he answered, "I am coming from Rûm. The caesar has sealed off all the passes, and on every route there's ten or twenty thousand men at the river down below and at the top as well. He has strictly forbidden everyone, so that not even a bird may cross. Well, that's the developments I saw, so I came over here with the news lest, God forbid, Sayyid decide to set out in the direction of Rûm."

Amir Umar said, "Where on earth is that piece of paper that came from Tarsus, bring it over." They brought it and placed it in Sayyid's hands. He read what they had written, "Careful, careful! Do not let Sayyid get excited about going to Rûm this year. This is how the story has, they might get hold of him and then the situation will be most adverse indeed." Sayyid said, "When did this letter arrive?" and Amir Umar answered, "It's been twenty days." Sayyid retorted, "Why did you not show it to me?" and they replied, "Brave hero, we were afraid that as soon as you heard this you would rush and do the contrary, so we did not tell you lest something go wrong" [A 131] Sayyid said, "In this matter the power of the exalted *God is Great*. Who may know what he might show. Now wish me well

because I'm off." The companions spoke at great length but did not manage to stop him. Sayyid changed clothes that evening and set out in the direction of Rûm.

He came to the monastery of Shammās and spent the evening in conversation with him. He asked him news about Rûm, and Shammās said, "Seven days ago the man of the caesar was around, and he brought ten thousand gold pieces saying 'When Battal comes by this way, let me know so that I may capture him.' So, here take this money and think of it as a tribute payment and don't go to Rûm this year." But Sayyid insisted, "That's no good, I absolutely must go." The following morning he mounted his horse and rode off. He came to the castle of Qalun but thirty thousand people were guarding the roads to it. He left that place but everywhere he visited it was full of soldiers guarding the roads. He came out into a field and somebody armed appeared on horseback from across, who steered his horse against Sayyid and hurled his lance. Sayyid avoided his lance and when that person came to pass, Sayyid grabbed him by the belt and held him tight. Then he recognized that it was Musa b. Juda and he put him down saying, "Hey Musa, what are you doing around here?" Musa also recognized Sayyid and rubbed his face on the ground saying, "Lord, after you left the companions despaired and said 'How could it be permissible that Sayyid risks his head in the path of religion while we [A 132] sit quietly at home?'"

While they were talking ten brave young men appeared and as soon as they saw Sayyid they dismounted and rubbed their faces on the ground. Sayyid looked closely and saw it was Ahmad Turran and Nasr Habbab and Aflahun and Abdu'l-Salam and Muhammad b. Zayd and Ali b. Hashim and Qasim and Mansur and Yuhanna b. Afshin. Sayyid exchanged greetings with all of them and said, "Friends, what are you doing here?" They answered, "We came to join you" but Sayyid retorted, "You did not do well, in fact you've just given me additional cause for worry. I was fine by myself and now you've become burdens on my head." These fellows said, "Lord, we saw strange things as we were coming after you. We saw those soldiers on the road and turned back. We could not pass when suddenly an old woman appeared with a prayer rug on her back and a cane in her hand. First she told us 'Turn around and let me send you out to Sayyid', and then she brought us to this meadow here and disappeared."

Upon saying this Tawabil appeared, and they exchanged greetings with Sayyid. The companions said, "How did you cross these valleys?" Tawabil said, "I came and saw the soldiers on the roads and turned back. Then an old woman became my guide and brought me right here. I have no idea which way she herself went afterwards." Sayyid asked, "Now what do you say, what should we do?" and they answered, "We should launch an attack by night." Sayyid said, "Now, we should first go over to the place where the caesar himself is to be found. [A 133] Whatever we do, we should do it there.." They made their

way to the caesar's army and saw that there were about two hundred thousand troops camped. They were guarding themselves very tightly, in great fear of Sayyid.

Sayyid was cautious, "God forbid that something terrible happen to my friends" he said and they left that place and came to the castle of Mashtiran, where Kalib b. Sabbah had camped with fifty thousand men. Sayyid said, "Friends, let us rest for a while in this spring here. Then we shall put our trust in God and launch an attack against this army."

They came down to the water. It was Sayyid's custom to go in the water and perform his ablutions before embarking on a *ghaza*. So he took off his clothes, fastened his horse and dived in the water. At that moment Kalb b. Kalb, who was the commander-in-chief appeared. He saw that a horse was standing there and a lance was nailed to the ground and that there was someone in the water. He said, "Who's there, what is your name?" Sayyid answered, "I am one of the servants of Kalib." Kalb retorted, "You are lying, come out and come here so that I may have a look at you." Sayyid used many excuses but to no avail. Kalb said, "You are Battal and that ablution you are performing is the ablution of the Mohammedans. Quickly come outside now, otherwise I will shower you with arrows." Sayyid realized that this cursed wretch was becoming restless, [A 134] so he went towards the middle of the water and said, "You cursed wretch, may you find me by your bed-side one night." Kalb heard him and gave the order to shoot arrows, but Sayyid dived underwater and the exalted God protected him.

Evening had come so Kalb got Sayyid's horse and clothes and rode off. He came across Sayyid's ten friends who were still asleep, so he tied them up one by one and brought them to Kalib b. Sabbah saying, "I found Battal, he was in the water and I showered him with arrows, so by now he should be well dead. I got his horse and clothes and his friends and brought them here." Kalib took a look and recognized Ahmad and said, "Oh Ahmad, how could it be allowed that you should abandon the religion of your forefathers and ancestors and go and listen to the religion of a witch? Come back to the religion of Christ and let me forgive you and petition the caesar about your sins so that he may give you back your province and people. If you refuse I will cut your head off." Ahmad replied, "Speak no nonsense, cursed man, I have found my religion and have brought my confession. If you yourself have any dignity left, come and accept it as well." The accursed Kalib got upset and said, "Hey, kill them all at once," but his viziers did not let him and said, "The proper thing is to send them to the caesar, not to kill them. Moreover, it is not certain that Battal has died, so you should still be after him." [A 135] And they continued, "Battal is an evil person and he holds a big grudge. He may come one night and spare neither you nor us. So put these ones in prison and send a patrol out at once to capture him." That's exactly what he did. He put Sayyid's companions away in

prison, while his son Shamun rigged a boat with forty men and started out to look for Sayyid.

Meanwhile, Sayyid kept going until dawn when he reached a place where there was a great monastery with an iron gates next to a great river. He came up to the iron gate and hit it with his hand and it flung open. He went inside and found bread and fish. He ate until his stomach was full. He came out again, saw a cave and went inside. He sat in that cave and saw a boat approaching. There were forty two persons on it. Sayyid hid somewhere in the cave, but they came and looked for him everywhere. Still, they could not find him so they left again, except for five persons who remained in the cave. They had one or two jugs of wine that they took out and started drinking. They drank from each other's glass, full glasses that is. One of them said, "Here's to the sultan of brave warriors" and the others became restless and asked, "Who are you talking about, who is this person and what sort of a man is he?" The first fellow answered, "It is Battal. The others exclaimed, "Hey, you are a follower of Muhammad, aren't you?" and they tied him up. Then they kept on drinking.

This poor fellow started moaning, "Oh God of Battal, help me out here." Sayyid [A 136] heard the talk of these fellows and came out from his hole and grabbed two of them by their necks and strangled them and thrashed the other two. The other one was watching lying on the ground and sprang to his feet and came and fell on Sayyid's feet and said, "Who are you?" and Sayyid answered, "In whose love were you drinking those cups? I am Battal Ghazi." He fell on Sayyid's feet once again and accepted the faith. Sayyid was bare naked and put on the clothes of one of them and asked, "So, where is Kalib?" and the fellow answered, "I don't know, they went looking for you."

Meanwhile, the cursed Kalb looked around for a little while and then came to the monastery and knocked at the door. They said, "Who are you?" and he answered, "I am Kalb" and they retorted, "You are lying, you are Battal." He swore an oath, "I am Kalb and have come looking for Battal." They opened the gate and he got inside where forty monks came out to meet him and treated him with great respect. So these fellows kept busy having a good time.

Meanwhile Sayyid told the young man, "Well Kalb has now gone to the monastery, so go and call him, tell him, "Over there in the cave something huge has come out of the water, it looks like Battal", take him and bring him here." He went and came alone into Kalb's presence saying, "Lord, there was five of us staying in the cave across from here. While we were sitting around there was a wave and a giant appeared, looking just like Battal." Kalb rejoiced and rushed into a boat and came into the cave. [A 137] Just as he was saying, "Well, where is he?" Sayyid hit him with the sword and his head went flying.

They also thrashed his forty servants. Kalib's son was still a boy and he fell to Sayyid's feet and accepted the faith becoming Muslim. Sayyid gave him the name Ismail and gave Yamliha the name Ahmad. Then he said, "Well now, let's get to the monastery" and they hopped in the boat and came to the monastery.

The forty monks that were there came out to ask for news. Sayyid walked ahead, straight to their leader who was called Hays, and invited him to join the true religion. He screamed and attempted to escape, Sayyid hit him with the sword and cut him into two. They thrashed all forty of them and got back on the boat and left. Sayyid said, "Oh Ismail, you've become a Muslim now, go to your father and tell him 'There came a monk to Hays from the mountain of Salwan, he is a pillar of the religion of Jesus and said wonderful and unusual things. Hays has sent him to offer you his advice.' Let me come along, for it might be that the exalted God may convert him into a Muslim." The young boy got out and came to his father and threw his hat on the ground saying, "Oh father, where is Kalb and where, where are your forty servants and Hays with his forty monks?" Kalib said, "What happened to them?" and the boy said, "Battal has put them all to the sword and now he has come with the boat disguised. I tricked him and pretended to enter his religion [A 138] and rescued myself. He has sent me here saying, 'Go to your father and tell so and so, he might become a Muslim'. So do not stand here like that. Get up and face your troubles."

Kalib b. Sabbah gave the order and fifty thousand men mounted and came out against Sayyid. Sayyid saw them and steered the boat to the middle of the water saying to Ahmad, "You see what that snake's up to? He went and turned us in and brought such a big army against us. Not to worry, though, God's grace is with us." Kalib approached Sayyid with forty monks, stood across and said, "Hey Battal the slaughterer, where do you think you can rescue your life from my hands, however many tricks and cunning schemes you come up with. This time I am going to destroy you." Sayyid said, "Your heart is overtaken with so much fear that you think everyone you see is Battal. What about me reminds you of Battal? I come from the Mountain of Salwan." He recited some lines from the Bible with the melody of David, in the *maqam* of Husayn. The monks listened and burst into tears and exclaimed, "Hey, how could this fellow be Battal? No saint like him has ever come the way of this province. For the sake of Jesus, do not spoil this fellow's mood, he is not the one you talked about." The young boy shouted, "In the truth of Jesus and Mary, this man is Battal. He's just pushing you out of the right path." [A 139]

The monks shouted back, "This is not Battal. Do you think we wouldn't recognize him?" Battal also shouted, "That little boy is epileptic, in the boat he tried to throw himself in the sea, and started to call me names! He has a laceration in his mouth and needs medical attention." The boy said, "Father, this person is Battal, do not believe these priests." The

priests shouted to the boy, "Enough, do not say another word. This is not Battal, this is the Fire of Light, that's who this is." However much the boy insisted and screamed it was no help, they all dismounted and bowed their heads and pleaded, "Forgive us, Battal has inflicted so much upon us."

They led Sayyid outside, fell to his feet and pleaded for his grace. Sayyid offered them such spiritual knowledge and guidance that their hearts were torn from all the crying. The monks said, "These are not the words of a mortal human being, he must be the Messiah himself." The young boy screamed again, "Listen people, I am not mad, in all honesty I recognize that this person is Battal. He has come to rob you of your senses and your belongings." It was to no avail. No-one took the boy's warnings seriously. They led Sayyid and put him up at a great monastery nearby and treated him with the utmost hospitality. Upon Sayyid's order they set up a pulpit [A 140] and he got up on it and recited some verses from the Bible and offered a commentary on them. All the priests were beyond themselves and cried so much you might think it was the Day of Judgment. And yes, all along the young boy was crying next to his father, saying, "Dad, watch out, this person is not Battal. If you do not believe send someone to the monastery to look for Hays. If he's alive, then I am a liar." The vizier nearby said, "My lord, this child is not lying. Let's send a boat, it isn't such a long trip, in an hour they'll be back with the news." At that moment they selected a few men and sent them off, without Sayyid knowing anything about it. After an hour they were back and Sayyid also had come down from the pulpit and was thinking, "I wonder how I am going to rescue the companions during the night.."

Meanwhile the men who had gone to the monastery came back with pale yellow faces. Kalib said, "Come on, tell us exactly what the situation is like. We want the story in all detail." They informed him at once that Hays and forty servants had been slain and forty monks slaughtered. Without being noticed Kalib got together forty of his servants. They drew near and they lassoed Sayyid. He was sitting carefree and they captured him before he could even say "Hey." Dragging, pulling and fighting they brought him to Kalib. Kalib ordered, "Quickly blow his neck off, rescue the world from his evil." The executioners [A 141] drew their swords to hit his neck. The vizier did not let them, saying, "My lord, inform the caesar, this is no small matter, this is a serious affair, not to mention all the pain this fellow has caused the caesar. If he decides to kill him, let him be the one to kill him. He might turn against you saying, "Why did you not inform me about such an important affair?" So they immediately sent Battal to prison and wrote a letter to the caesar informing him of the incident: "I've captured Battal and put him in prison. What is your order? Should I send him to you or should I have him killed here?"

Meanwhile they took Sayyid to prison and when the friends saw him they cried and sighed out loud, "You were our hope, and now you've fallen in captivity as well." Sayyid said, "Not to worry friends. Do not be sad. This was also written up for us. Let us see the bright side of even this moment. The wishes of the exalted God must be fulfilled, so let us wait and see what will happen, let's wait for the miracle." And in a corner of the prison they took to a session of *dhikr*.

Meanwhile, the caesar was informed and when he heard that Ja'far had been arrested he threw his crown in the sky and ordered for festivities to be held. Then he wrote back to Kalib saying, "Take him and rush here with fifty thousand men. I must kill him with all kinds of torture." [A 142] He handed the letter over to the messenger and sent him off.

Meanwhile Kalib called his son by his side and they engaged in festivities. One evening Kalib was sitting around with his son asleep on his lap. All of a sudden his son woke up and sprang to his feet. Kalib said, "Hey, what happened to you?" and he answered, "Father, I saw a dream, that a dragon was coming against me and I was trying to flee but it was following me shouting, "Tell your dad to abandon disbelief and enter the religion of Muhammad, otherwise I will gobble him up along with his palace." Kalib said, "My dear boy, you are scared, you are afraid of Battal." The boy fell asleep again but saw another dream and screamed again. Kalib said, "What happened this time?" and the boy answered, "Father, there was a lion after me. I fled but it shouted from behind, 'Tell your father to abandon disbelief and become a Muslim, otherwise he'll be destroyed'." Kalib reacted, "You are so scared your mouth has speaks only foul words. You need an enema." He fell asleep again and saw a water-dragon with his mouth open ready to attack him. The boy ran and the water-dragon shouted, "Young boy, tell your father to abandon disbelief and choose the religion of Muhammad otherwise he will be destroyed." The water-dragon pulled another cry and disappeared. Kalib said, "My dear boy, what happened now?" and he told them the story. [A 143]

Kalib was devastated. He gave the order to prepare for an assembly. The monks were rushed in and they told them the story. They brought a Bible and hung it from the boy's neck and baptized him. It became evening and everyone went to sleep. Kalib lied down and fell asleep and saw a dream: A light appeared from the direction of Mecca, and a scent of musk and amber filled the air. Everywhere voices were screaming, "Follow this path, for this most prominent handsome man of the world, Sayyid the son of Adam, the lord of all creation and the glory of all beings, the foremost amongst the purest of the pure, the moon of the dome of fidelity, Muhammad Mustafa." Seventy thousand angels and one hundred twenty thousand prophets were walking on either side of the banner of

Muhammad while His Excellency the Apostle had mounted the white Buraq, and was drawing near wearing that magnificent crown on His head, a distinguished long robe and the belt of worship on His waist. When Kalib saw His Majesty he walked straight to him, fell to his feet and accepted the faith. The Prophet caressed Kalib and named him Abu Bakr, saying, "Oh Abu Bakr, rush and take my son Sayyid Battal out of prison and be a faithful friend to him. His religion is the true one. Invite your begs so that they may all declare their obedience to him."

Then Kalib woke up trembling like a tree leaf as if a lightning had struck. [A 144] He put on his clothes and gathered his viziers and domestic in one place and explained to them the dream he had seen the previous night. They said, "We also saw this dream" and they all accepted the faith. Kalib saw them and was mad. He got up and came to the prison on foot, had the gate opened and went inside, smiled brightly and fell to Sayyid's feet and said, "Oh sultan of the ghazis. Forgive me, I did not know, I was wrong." Sayyid replied, "You weren't going to wake up before you saw the prophet and he gave you the name Abu Bakr, were you?" He kissed Sayyid's hand and sought forgiveness from the friends as well. Then he ordered and they released their chains and lead them to the *hamam* and gave them fresh clothes to wear. The brought Sayyid and sat him on the throne. Abu Bakr sat next to him, and he invited the begs from near and far and invited them to religion. They all said, "We also saw had a dream and accepted the faith in front of his excellency the messenger." Fifty thousand people and plenty of begs and plenty of provinces became part of the real of Islam, darkness was raised and the world was enlightened.

The storytellers tell the story that Sayyid and his friends were sitting around when suddenly a messenger arrived with a letter from the caesar. He placed the letter in front of Abu Bakr who read it tore it up into pieces and said, "It was Kalib that did all of this, I am Abu Bakr. Kalib has fled, there's no worry left." [A 145] The messenger said, "At such and such a place I saw Muhammad Mustafa in my dream and accepted the faith." They said, "What is the caesar up to?" He answered, "He has sent Gulbad with one hundred thousand to Malatya. They should be there by now."

Meanwhile, the news reached Malatya that Kalib b. Sabbah had imprisoned Sayyid and ten companions in the monastery of Mashtiran and the caesar had sent Gulbad with one hundred thousand to come and turn Malatya upside down. Amir Umar and the companion heard the news and started screaming. Amir Umar gave the order and public criers were sent out. An army of ten thousand ghazis was gathered. They sent letters to the surrounding provinces and scared them, while they shut themselves in the castle and waited.



Meanwhile on the other side when Sayyid heard the story of Gulbad he said, "Oh Abu Bakr, I am leaving. All these provinces are your, except for all the churches that are mine." Upon his order they demolished the monastery of Mashtiran and Sayyid took all the goods that had been inside, gold and silver and candles. He gathered one thousand gold icons which he offered to Abu Bakr and then said, "I shall rush ahead, but you follow me." In the middle of the night he mounted his horse and rode off. One day he reached the army of Gulbad, which had camped and was asleep. Sayyid put Ashqar away at some place and walked up to Gulbad's tent and found him [A 146] completely drunk and asleep. He came against but saw that he was a beautiful young man, his inside burned and pitied to kill him. So he wrote a short note, "Hey Gulbad, I, Battal the slaughterer of infidels, have come to kill you but could not bear to do it, I realized that you are a beautiful young boy. Now, abandon infidelity and become a Muslim, otherwise I will come again and thrash you." He put the note next to Gulbad's pillow and rushed out. He reached the city around dawn and he stood opposite Malatya and shouted loudly. The Muslims heard the voice of Sayyid and rejoiced and came out to meet him and exchanged greetings. Sayyid told them at once his own story and adventures and they were all very happy and offered many prayers for Sayyid. Then Sayyid mounted his horse and rode off saying, "Gulbad is here with one hundred thousand, so that's where I am going, you follow me."

On the other side, when Gulbad woke up he found a piece of writing next to his head and read it and realized what had happened. He summoned his begs who saw it and were amazed and fell in great despair saying, "Alas, Battal is free from his chains." Fear settled in the army. It was night time by the time Sayyid reached a forest top and looked down for a moment and observed the infidels' army. Then he shouted a war-cry once, [A 147] and you would think the Day of Judgment had arrived and Israel was blowing the trumpet. The infidels' army hit one another in confusion. Sayyid shouted a war-cry three times, one after the other, "Hey Gulbad, I am Battal Ghazi. I came the other night to kill you but could not bear to do it because you are still a young boy of a man. 'He might become a Muslim' I told myself. Now come and become Muslim and abandon that useless religion and come to the true one, otherwise I am going to spare neither you nor your caesar this time." When Gulbad saw the army had frozen where it had been standing he shouted once, "Let the army mount at once" and put on his own arms and girded his sword on. The army mounted and Gebriyanos entered the battlefield. Sayyid came down from that forest top, Gebriyanos approached him and said, "Oh Battal, are you a sort of wheat bud? What is the story with you? They kill you and you are resurrected, they arrest you and put you to prison and you get out again. God, you must be quite an experienced witch." He tried his hand at the lance and hurled it at Sayyid, who avoided it. When he came to cross over,

Sayyid reached and held him from his girdle, shook him violently and pulled him out of the saddle and then made an effort and tossed him in the air like an apple. When he was coming down he pierced him with the sword cutting him in two pieces. His brother Abriyanos entered the battlefield and was destroyed, Qalun entered and was destroyed. One by one Sayyid destroyed one hundred and twenty people each with one blow. [A 148] Horrid fear fell on the infidels' army.

It was around noon time when dust appeared from the road to Malatya and the banner of Islam appeared with Amir Umar and twelve thousand men. Sayyid came out to meet them and when they saw the bravery of Sayyid they offered prayers of praise and performed the noon prayer together. Sayyid entered the battlefield again and Gulbad ordered an attack by ten thousand men. Sayyid himself charged against those ten thousand, and the Sunnis also sent a thousand men to attack. Sayyid was charging from one side to the other and the ten thousand abandoned Gulbad. Then he charged and grabbed the standard of the infidels with the cross, and they attacked all at once.

Now while these people were fighting, dust was raised and from within it arrived the begs of Rûm with one hundred thousand men, together with the faithless wretched infidel Suhayl b. Sunbat, Taghanos the Frank and Taryun of Hamadan. They all attacked all at once. Blood flowed like a flood. When Sayyid would shout his war-cry the infidels would tremble fall to the ground like autumn leaves. In one go, Sayyid put fifty thousand infidels to the sword. But the infidels numbered many men and the Muslims only a few so they were in a tight spot.

Suddenly Abu Bakr with fifty thousand men appeared from the road to Mashtiran. These new converts arrived shouting, "*God is Great*" and charged in attack. Ahmad Turran and Abdu'l-Wahhab, those ten friends all became very busy with fighting. Sunnis were emboldened [A 149] and once again fought with great courage and managed to depose the infidels' army from its place and break its ranks. When it started getting cold, Qonstantin the son of the Caesar, with ten thousand men, all drowned in iron. It became dark soon and that army turned its back. The signal for retreat was given and the two sides retired. And yes, there was no limit to the number of dead, no-one could count. They came up to Qonstantin and complained. They drafted a letter in a rush that moment and sent it to the caesar, "Come join us at once, otherwise Battal will ruin everything." They revealed to the caesar that those fifty thousand had been killed, that Sayyid had made Abu Bakr a Muslim, that he had destroyed the churches, that he had snatched that golden lantern. When the letter reached the caesar and they read it he smashed his crown on the ground and screamed and cried, "Alas, there's no more splendor left in the religion of Jesus and the

ceremonies of the Fire of Light." He ordered at once and two hundred men mounted and whipping their horses marched day and night.

Meanwhile, on this side the armies did not mount for three days but collected their dead and cleared away the battlefield. On the fourth day drums rolled on both sides and the armies mounted and prepared for battle. Ahmad Turran entered the battlefield and asked for a challenger and an infidel stepped in called Aqarib. Ahmad did not [A 150] allow him enough time to speak and killed him. He thrashed fifty infidels and Gulbad saw him and steered his horse to the battlefield. They fought but could not overpower one another. In the end they held each other's belts and scrambled together, when suddenly dust was raised and caesar Araqil appeared, leading two hundred thousand men with four hundred patriicians holding banners with the cross and icons. The throne had been attached to an elephant as well as a royal shade tent, one thousand two hundred rows of saddled auxiliary horses attached in the front, sides and rear. When he appeared with all this majestic pomp the begs of Rûm rushed and kissed his hand and sobbed in tears in front of him, complaining about Sayyid. The caesar said, "Where are the Mohammedans now?" and they pointed out, "Right there across." The caesar took a look and saw and said, "Is it just them?" and they answered, "Indeed, that's as many as they are." He persisted, "Is there an army in another place, or are they really just these ones?" They said, "These ones that you can see are the army which came with Kalib, the recent convert. Otherwise, what sort of army could someone like Battal have?" The caesar spat at their faces and said, "Hey, may the Fire of Light burn you to ashes. What is the matter with you? You are such a formidable army and such begs and you still can not do battle with such a tiny group of people? I can not believe you could not manage to capture this Battal and bring him over to me. You just sit back now and watch what I am going to do to this people."

Meanwhile Ahmad [A 151] and Gulbad had gotten hold of each other. Ahmad made an effort but could not unsaddle Gulbad. Gulbad made an effort and seized Ahmad from his horse and carried him away. He wanted to bring him over to the foot of the banner but Ahmad cut his belt and fell from Gulbad's hands. Sayyid saw him and gave a war-cry like a thunderbolt and steered his horse into the battlefield. Gulbad saw Sayyid and fled away from him at once. There was great commotion in both sides. Sayyid spurred Ashqar once and reached over fast as a lightning. He grabbed his belt from behind, lifted him like an apple, turned him upside down and said, "Hey Gulbad, I am Sayyid Battal, the slaughterer of infidels. So accept the faith and save your life, otherwise you know."

The caesar exclaimed, "Who's this fellow? What sort of a man is he? How can he do things like that?" They said, "That Battal we've been talking about, well that's him" and

the caesar's color changed. The accursed Gulbad said, "Battal, for me it is better to die than become a Muslim." Sayyid realized that there was no chance for anything good so he threw Gulbad up in the air and hit him with Zahhak's sword as he was coming down. He was cut into two pieces. When the caesar saw this he held his two sides and cried. Then he waved with his own hand the banner with the cross.

Come and have a look now at that sea of an army letting their cavalry loose on Sayyid and showering him with arrows. Sayyid fastened his shield, gave a war-cry and charged. There was heavy fighting until noon, and there was so much blood it would carry the corpses away. Sayyid [A 152] aimed at the enemy banner and the caesar saw that Sayyid was enraged and approaching, breaking through rank after rank. The caesar started trembling and said, "Come along, don't let him pass through." They threw a rain of sharp and pointed arrows on Sayyid but he held his shield tight and directed his lance against the caesar. The caesar saw that he had drawn very near and jumped down from his throne. They prepared a horse for him, he rode it and sped off. Sayyid did not manage to reach the caesar now, but hit the throne with his lance and threw it to the ground. He took out his sword and cut the banner and its holder in two pieces. The army broke its ranks and took to fleeing. The Sunnis decimated, chased and captured them for three days. Then they came back and collected the goods of that sea-like army in front of Sayyid. They put aside the fifth due to the caliph and distributed the rest among the ghazis. Then they came to the city and Sayyid ordered and they sent the crown and throne of the caesar, along with four hundred horses and plenty of goods to the caliph.

The caliph saw them and was glad and greatly regaled. He wrote the conquest account of Sayyid and sent it to the province of Syria and they rejoiced there as well. The caliph also sent the lance of the wizard Janduwal as a gift to Sayyid. Sayyid and the ghazis were all glad.

Then Amir Umar asked for permission and set out for the castle of Mashtiran. Thereafter the news spread in all the land of the infidels that the caesar had been defeated and there was great mourning and lament. The caesar returned broken and defeated [A 153] and held council immediately and agreed that they should sue for peace with Sayyid. So they sent an envoy and they agreed to make peace and to send annual tribute. Year after year the caesar would send Sayyid the tribute and all kinds of presents. (For a while, things stayed like that and the Muslims passed their days eating and drinking with Sayyid P)

## CHAPTER TWELVE

### The Story of Taryun and his

Daughter Gul-Andam

One day the friends were sitting in the company of Sayyid when an old man entered. He offered a prayer in front of Sayyid and said, "I come from Harjana, and there is an infidel there called Taryun. I had a servant whom they arrested and put in prison. I went to see him and saw a young man there who took an oath and told me 'Listen carefully: if you go to Malatya, please tell Sayyid Battal that I saw Musa the son of Juda that Taryun has imprisoned. Moreover there are nine elders here and you should tell Sayyid that they have been suffering for sixty years now in the prison of this cursed wretch.'" When Juda heard this he burst into tears and Sayyid said, "Don't you cry, I am still hopeful that thanks to the exalted God I will liberate your son. Anyway, don't forget to mention me in your prayers!" He waited until the evening and as soon as it became dark he changed his clothes and set out for Harjana.

One day he reached a place where he saw a tall castle whose tower was high in the sky and waited until the evening. When evening came he tried to find a way in, but however much he tried he could not because there were three thousand men guarding the passes every night. During the day he stayed in the mountain across [A 154] and during the night he would come down and look for a way to the castle, but it was no good. Then one day he saw a caravan arriving from Chîn. Actually the Padishah of Chîn wanted to get Taryun's daughter for his son and he had come to ask for her with numerous presents. When Sayyid saw them he rolled down and charged in attack. He killed the envoys, took their goods and came back up to the mountain again. Taryun was notified and he sent his son with a thousand men. Sayyid saw them and came down from the forest and gave a war-cry. He broke their ranks and decimated them. He captured the son of Taryun and took him up in the mountain. He adopted the name Suhrab for himself and blocked all the paths.

They informed Taryun about his son and they lamented. At once they sent fifty thousand men under Mahyar and they came to the mountain looking for Sayyid as one hunts for a rabbit. Sayyid appeared and gave a war-cry, "I am Suhrab" and he annihilated five thousand people. He thrashed Mahyar and the rest dispersed. The news reached Taryun and this time he mounted himself with fifty thousand men. They selected two hundred famous people and sent them ahead. Taryun himself entered the forest. Sayyid placed Taryun's son in a cave all tied up and came out to perform his ablutions. When he rose to proceed along with his prayer those two hundred select young men fell upon him. They threw lassos and caught him. [A 155] They tied him up and he consented to being caught because he did not want to break his contract in the prayer. Taryun was informed

and he came over to Sayyid. He immediately ordered them to chain his hands and legs. They took him along with his son and the goods he had taken and led him into the city.

The news had reached the city and they came out to see Sayyid. Taryun sat on his throne and they brought Sayyid out to execute him. One person recognized Sayyid and said, "My lord, this fellow is not Suhrab." When Taryun heard that he put Sayyid to the oath, saying, "Tell me the truth so I don't have to kill you." Sayyid said, "He's speaking the truth, I am Battal." Taryun was delighted and he immediately ordered to throw him in prison. Then he sent a letter to the caesar saying, "I've captured Battal, what are your orders?"

So on this side they sent Battal to prison and when Musa b. Juda saw him he sighed and said, "My brave warrior, you were our hope, and now you have also fallen in this state because of our misery. Well, what's our situation going to be like, now?" Sayyid said, "Musa, don't worry, I've seen plenty of adventures like this, so let us see what the exalted God has in stock for us this time around." The elders came and fell to Sayyid's feet and Sayyid consoled them.

On the other side, the news reached the caesar and the messenger brought the letter. They read it and the caesar was so delighted and glad that he threw his crown up in the air and gave plenty of gifts to the messenger. Right away he gave the order and they wrote a letter to Taryun saying, "As soon as this letter reaches you [A 156] take Battal outside the city and burn him in a bonfire. Send me a handful of his ashes to rub in my eyes. Thereafter I will mount and will spare neither the caliph nor any Muslim in the world. There'll be no trace of them left anywhere." So they wrote and dispatched a messenger.

On the other side, Sayyid Battal was sitting in prison with four hundred guards standing there watching after him. Sayyid would tell his friends at times, "Do not worry, I keep seeing the prophet in my dream and he tells me that the kingdom of Rûm must be rescued from the disbelief of darkness under your hands and mosques and *madrasas* built." Moreover the exalted God sent such a voice to Sayyid that every time he recited the Koran none of those who listened could remain passionless, they all cried and sobbed so much they went beyond themselves. Sayyid opened his mouth and recited the Koran and there was no one, young or old who did not gather around there and start crying in sobs. The guards saw that and informed Taryun about it. They said, "This fellow has no fear for his life, he recites poetry and whoever listens to him loses his mind." A week passed after this.

Now Taryun had a daughter called Gul-Andam, and she was gorgeous, as beautiful as the full moon. One day she came out to the palace grounds for a walk [A 157] when Sayyid's voice reached her ears. It was extremely pleasant so she asked her nurse about it.

She said, "This is the voice of Battal, the one your father has imprisoned." She said, "Nurse dear, if only I could see his face just once, so that I could see what he looks like." Then she prepared something to eat and came down to the prison. The prison guards came up to her and she said, "Open that gate, I am bringing food to the prisoners, and also I would like to have a look at Battal to see what he looks like." They opened the gate and she got in and looked at Sayyid and saw a handsome beauty like she had never seen before. She fell in love with him at first sight with the passion of a hundred thousand souls and hearts. She presented her greetings and placed the food that she had brought right in front of him., "Eat" she said and Sayyid ate it at once. She said, "Young man, are you Sayyid Battal?" and he said, "Indeed I am." She said, "Come to my religion and you'll be free from this prison. I will plead with my father so that they do not kill you." Sayyid answered, "Beautiful lady, do not speak this way, words like these do not go through my ears."

The maiden got up and left and came straight to her father saying, "Dad, you've imprisoned such a fine brave young man but why have you not invited him to your own religion, so that you might have him as back-up support?" Her father answered, "My dear baby, he has read a lot of books, he's not going to give in listen to us." [A 158] The maiden said, "How about if I were to lead him out of his path/way?" Taryun said, "I would gladly offer you to him then."

That day went by and the following evening that girl came to the prison again. She held a gathering in the presence of Sayyid and said, "Battal come to my religion and I will plead with my father. Accept me as your bride and become my father's commander as well." Sayyid replied, "No need to speak much, this is not possible. It cannot be, do not even say it." The maiden got up and came up to Sayyid. She put her hand around his neck but Sayyid screamed and did not let her saying, "You've soiled me now. First become Muslim and then you may put your hand around my neck." The maiden answered back, "My religion is the true one over yours, so why are you avoiding me?" Sayyid retorted, "The only religion is the religion of Muhammad, and where one can have the religion of Muhammad, what good is it to also have the ceremonies of Jesus?" The maiden answered, "Prove to me that your religion is the true one so that I may believe in it." Sayyid said, "What would you like me to do?" The maiden replied, "Ask from God to send you something out of nothing so that I may see it and become Muslim." Sayyid held his head towards His Excellency and said, "My God, do not shame me in front of this maiden." Just at that moment the wall of the prison collapsed thanks to the power of the exalted God, and a tray with a plate of food and bread appeared right in front of Sayyid. The smell of the food was like musk and amber and everyone in the prison was taken by it. [A 159] Sayyid

stretched his hand and ate from that food and offered some to the maiden as well. She was amazed at its taste. Then Sayyid distributed it to the prisoners. Then the tray of food disappeared and the maiden marveled at herself and walked away.

Meanwhile, the storytellers tell the story that Sayyid looked down and noticed some iron things. He shook them and it turned out it was a crowbar. He opened a hole and cut the iron chains on his legs. Then he told the friends, "Do not worry at all, the exalted God has given us freedom." Then he drilled the prison wall and got out to a kitchen. In the darkness of the night he saw a rope lying around, took it and climbed to the roof of the palace. From there he threw a lasso and came up to a window. He looked inside and saw the maiden asleep on the throne. He lifted the window and lowered himself inside. He came up to her and beheld a perfect beauty the likes of whom no one had seen. He observed her for a while. The maiden for her part saw the Prophet speaking to her in her dream, "Gul-Andam, I have given you to Battal as a bride. You will bear him a son, and his name shall be Bashir. Rush now and come to the faith, for here he is standing at your bed-head."

All of a sudden the maiden woke up and saw Sayyid. She exclaimed, "It is true, oh Apostle of God" she fell to Sayyid's feet and accepted the faith. [A 160] , "Summon the prison sergeant to come here" Sayyid said. They summoned him and he came. Gul-Andam wanted to give him some gold pieces so he would keep his mouth shut, but the prison sergeant said, "Fair lady, I saw the prophet in my dream last night and I've become a Muslim." The maiden was delighted and told him about her own situation. When he saw Sayyid, he fell on his feet and renewed his confession of faith. They rushed to the prison and liberated the friends.

There was an infidel there in prison, and Sayyid killed him. Then he dressed him in his own clothes and disguised him to look like himself, wore him his own cap and attached his own chains to his legs. He made Musa b. Juda and the nine elders promise they would not reveal this to anyone. Then the maiden said, "Stay here and look after these fellows." Sayyid went with the maiden and they had a celebration.

The following morning the maiden went to her father and just at that time the letter from the caesar had arrived. They read it, "Rush and burn Battal in a pyre outside the city and send me his ashes" The maiden said, "Allow me to tell you that Battal may no longer be alive." Taryun said, "How do you mean?" and the maiden replied, "The day that I went to visit him he was very sick, and he may simply have died." Just at that moment the prison sergeant came in screaming, "Last night the prisoners opened a hole and escaped!" Taryun wailed and ordered at once that they should burn the prison sergeant with his son



and daughter. Gul-Andam stepped forward and said, "Just a moment, be patient and let me go and see what sort of a hole they dug and how they escaped." [A 161]

They went to the prison -her father came along- and entered inside. The maiden saw that only one infidel was lying down, all the rest had escaped, so she walked back to her father and said, "The Fire of Light has helped you once again: Battal is dead but the rest have fled." Taryun was delighted and excited, "Battal was the one I wanted, what do I care about the rest. Quickly now, let us carry out the caesar's order." They brought firewood in some square of the city and set it on fire. Then they brought that infidel and burned him in the fire thinking it was Battal. Taryun sent the ashes to the caesar, who rubbed it over his eyes. They held great festivities and the whole Rûm rejoiced and the news spread around the world that they had burned Battal.

The news reached Malatya and the friends wailed and lamented with sobs, "Woe Sayyid Battal Ghazi, our beautiful brave warrior. Woe to such forbearance, such knowledge, such beneficence and generosity." They lamented in tears and mourned for seven days. They rushed a letter to the caliph and he went into mourning. All of Sayyid's friends wore black. Sayyid's two children, Ali and Nazir, wore black. As soon as Zaynab Hatun heard the news, she heart stopped and she passed away on the spot. Those who would hear about it would feel burning in their livers and tears would flood their eyes. The whole realm of Islam went into mourning. So that's how things were with them.

[A 162] Meanwhile, when the caesar was finished with Battal he dispatched letters to the seven climes and gathered the begs and armies of all of them in Istanbul. They sent a letter from Malatya to the caliph informing him of the caesar's assembly, and the caliph on his part immediately sent out letters. He spent a great fortune and invited all the brave padishahs of Islam from all over to Baghdad. He himself stayed outside Baghdad saying, "Let us first see which way the caesar is going to go. Meanwhile let us strengthen our reserves and place our trust in God; let us march to meet the enemies of religion and let us fight and cut their heads off." Then they sent letters to the Hijaz and Yemen, to Tayf, to Turkestan, to Chîn and beyond, to Bulghar, to Georgia, to Iraq, to Isfahan, to Herat, to Tus, to the outskirts of Qirwan, to Khurasan and to the realm of Abdu'l-Mu'min, nowadays called Diyar-Bakr-Abad. So those who heeded the letters started to gather.

Meanwhile, caesar Araqil also spread letters to the kingdom of the Franks, to the land of As and Rus, to Khitay and Khotan, to Samarkand, to Circassia, to Transoxiana and Taliqan, to Mazandaran, to Haluq, to Garja, to Sarhang-Abad, to the province of Jamshidiya and to any province where there were infidel begs. He invited them saying, "Come [A 163] and let us wipe out the Mohammedans and make the world safe from their evil. Let us march and let us spare neither the caliph nor Hijaz nor Syria. Let us destroy it

all and burn down the Kaaba and restore the honor of the Fire of Light and the Messiah." He gathered armies from every clime, the likes of which only God knew.

Meanwhile, when Sayyid stayed with Gul-Andam he agreed not to go anywhere without her permission. A full year passed like that and then one day Sayyid was sitting around and his eyes filled with tears. Gul-Andam said, "My brave warrior, why are you crying?" He answered, "How could I not cry? Every year I used to go out on *ghazas* for the sake of God and his Apostle, and now it's been a year since I have stepped out of home or even remembered my sons or my friends." He burst into tears again and Gul-Andam said, "Don't be sad. Here, a letter just arrived from the caesar, he is on the march. I will let you go too, but on condition that you will not forget me, especially as my baby is about to be born. God forbid should you forget me!" and burst into tears. Sayyid swore on oath, "I will not forget you." He had an armband with four jewels which he gave to Gul-Andam saying, [A 164], "If a boy is born, tie it around his arm and call him Bashir. If a girl is born, put it around her neck and name her what you will."

The following day Taryun gathered his army and set out in the direction of the caesar. The day following that Gul-Andam prepared Sayyid's horse, clothes and arms, wished him farewell and sent him off.

He rode for a day and a night and reached a place. There he saw that an army of one hundred thousand had camped. He saw a man and asked him, "Whose army is this, and where are they going?" That person said, "This is the caesar Qonstantin, and he's on his way to Malatya, for his army must burn and ruin everything all the way to the gate of the Kaaba and wipe out the Mohammedans."

Sayyid moved on from that place and came to the land of Qalun and saw the Shah of Jerusalem, Shamun, the caesar's son, camped there with an army without count. He found an infidel from inside the army and asked him, "Whose army is this?" and he answered, "This is Shamun, the caesar's elder son. He is on his way to his father. Taryun burned Battal in Harjana, so now the begs of all of Rûm have agreed to march together and decimate everyone in the realm of Islam, to scorch them with fire and destroy their provinces and counties." Sayyid said, "Now become Muslim at once, otherwise you know." The cursed wretch started his nonsense so Sayyid held him tight and plucked his beard hair by hair. Then he cut his nose and two [A 165] ears and said, "Rush to Shamun and tell him 'Are you really sure that Ja'far has died? There's three hundred and sixty of us, and each one of us is Battal himself. We've girded our belts and stand here waiting, so just prepare yourself' ." That man escaped from Sayyid's hands and ran for his life.

He came straight to Shamun and informed him. Shamun turned pale. He got on the march again and rushed to his father. He reported the news and the caesar fell in despair.

His viziers said, "My lord, your father wanted to wipe out the Mohammedans at the time when Abdu'l-Malik was caliph, and all the begs of Rûm agreed and joined in the effort. He raised three times as large an army and he still was not able to overcome the Mohammedans. Now you also will not manage it with such an army." Once again the caesar sent out letters and more armies gathered that the sky and the earth could not contain them all. Taryun ordered that they write up an army roster. They found out how many soldiers every beg had, counted them and recorded that there were a hundred times a hundred thousand. It was an army as long as a forty days' trip. Here are the great begs of the infidels: Aqritis the Wizard (*jazu*), Manjayil of the Maghrib, Sarjayil, Mihriyayil, the infidel Aqarib, Qarun of Taliqan, Sulayman of Antioch, Ishaq of Kufa, Haluq the Tatar the renegade, [A 166] the renegade Yalaman the Turk, Nasr of Hamadan the renegade, Kalb of Rûm the renegade and numerous other famous begs of endless names, each one of them a padishah of a different clime.

Meanwhile, when Sayyid passed through Jerusalem he disguised Ashqar as a black Zangi horse and himself as a black Hindu. He rode off and reached a place where he saw an army had camped. He came and rested under a tree and slept. At dawn he got up and performed his ablutions and prayer. When he completed his prayer he saw Taryun's son, Qasure approaching from across, with many of his servants. As it turned out he was on the hunt. He fell upon Sayyid and saw a Hindu man sitting around, only he was extremely beautiful and tall. He advanced saying, "Who are you, what sort of a person are you and where are you going?" Sayyid did not answer so he shouted a second time, "Come on, tell me who you are." Sayyid said, "I come from Zanzibar. I've heard that the caesar is gathering an army. They say he is going to wipe out Islam, so I came to be of service if he treats me well. If he doesn't, I will move on to some other place." Qasure said, "I am Taryun's son. My father was the one who burned Battal in a fire. He's the uncle of the caesar. Stay in my company and I will treat you well."

Sayyid got up, mounted his horse and snatched Qasure's lance, moved it around over his head forty times and then handed it back. [A 167] He asked for the bow, took it and stretched it a few times with force until it broke into two pieces. He spurned his horse and rode forth and said, "It seems there are no real men in this land of Rûm here. They do not appreciate real men here. It would be such a pity were I to stay with such wretches" and rode away. Qasure got upset and ordered, "Don't you let go of him, catch him!" The servants charged after him. Sayyid turned back and left fifty servants lying in the dust, all with a different move. The rest dispersed in all directions. Sayyid followed the road to Istanbul and rode along. Every where he passed he saw that armies were guarding mountains, planes and passes. He was amazed.

He found a cave on a mountain with a fountain in front of it. It was a tough spot indeed. He came there and hid his horse and clothes and dressed himself as a water seller carrying a container on his back. He mingled within the army and started giving out water and observing the signs. Anywhere he saw a strongly built brave infidel, he would come in the evening and thrash him, cutting his head off so that they would find them headless the following morning. Every night he thrashed five or six famous lords (*mālik*). The caesar was bewildered. He summoned Taryun saying, "Taryun, what shall we do about this? We haven't even reached the realm of Islam yet and they've already struck us within our own territory. So many of my begs have been killed, and, good grief, it is not even known who or what sort of person is doing this. If only you could think of some solution."

They assembled and agreed that [A 168] everyone in the army would have to pledge for someone else. Sayyid was left without a pledge so they brought him to the caesar and announced, "Here, this fellow has not been pledged for by anyone." The caesar summoned Sayyid forth. Sayyid came up to the door of the tent and the caesar noticed that he was a pitch black Ethiopian, dressed in exquisite clothes, and with a turban wrapped around his head. The water tools on his back were arranged so well that they shined like gold, and he was holding a bowl that looked like it might be made of gold. He walked and offered a prayer, served water to the begs and then slowly stepped back. Then he opened his mouth and recited some verses from the Bible. The begs all around burst into tears. Then he said, "I've been serving water in your army for the sake of the Fire of Light for forty years now. I come from the castle of Mashtiran, my name is Yahud. Now they want a pledge for me." The caesar said, "Come here, let me pledge for you." Sayyid offered a prayer and left.

That evening they found a hundred and ten men without their head. The following day the Sultan of India arrived with five hundred thousand men. He was an idolater and had two brothers, one called Suhrab and the other Luhrasp. They brought along five hundred large combat elephants, each with its own leather castle on top. They informed the caesar who came out to meet him in majestic pomp himself. He presented his greetings and offered a great many flattering praises and then [A 169] treated him to his hospitality. That evening Sayyid killed two hundred famous men and they found them beheaded the next morning. They informed the caesar again and he was in great grief. He gathered the begs in his audience and said, "People of the cross and unworthy servants of the Messiah, do you see how I suffer in the hands of the Muslims, how they have been filling my liver with blood? I have gathered an army as big as this and before we even confront the enemy so many of my begs and kings have been executed. He's amongst us again. I do not know who he is, I am helpless. It will be a miracle if our ranks are not broken from now on, if

our resistance and resilience is not destroyed." He spoke and burst into sobbing sighs. The begs sitting there all fell upon the caesar and said, "My lord, collect yourself. From now on whom are you afraid of? We used to be afraid of Battal, but ever since he died burned by that fire we have no worry. You've had a good rest, give the order now for the army to march. Let us move on and darken the world in the eyes of the Mohammedans and kill them all. Let us put them all to the sword."

Things being like that, the caesar gave the order and the army moved on. They fastened the throne of the caesar on top of an elephant and they held a royal parasol box and he climbed and sat on his throne. They carried banners in the shape of the cross and seven hundred combat elephants were at his side. [A 170] So he passed to the front of the army and all these begs passed in front of him with great majesty and pomp, slowly and with a lot of noise. He gave presents and niceties to every single one of them. In fact the story goes that for seven days the caesar remained mounted on horseback while all the armies passed in front of him. Never before had a padishah gathered such a huge assembly or anything like it. So there they were, marching in this manner.

Meanwhile, Yahya b. Mansur, the spy of the believers, came and saw all this pomp and immediately reported it to Amir Umar. He burst into tears and said, "Alas, now is the time we needed dear Battal alive and well: he would take on this army by himself and would do things no one has seen." Yahya said, "Friends, let me give you a strange piece of news. Every night they kill fifty or sixty famous begs in the caesar's camp and no one knows who is doing it. The caesar tried everything and looked everywhere, even had everyone pledge for someone else, but it was to no avail. That army is still scared dry out of fear of this. Every morning they find forty fifty people without their heads and they haven't the slightest clue what is going on." The Sunnis were amazed and said, "Maybe it is the grace of God that these infidels shall be destroyed like that." Then Amir Umar gave the order and all those provinces and districts [A 171] migrated, some to Syria and some high up in the mountains. They sent pigeons to the caliph at once informing him that the caesar was on the march against Islam and he was all prepared for it. The caliph in fact had himself been gathering an army for half a year and had levied men from one thousand two hundred cities and a thousand castles. As soon as the news arrived he assembled an army of nine hundred thousand. He gave all of them goods and ceremonial robes and offered them kind words. , "You are risking your heads for the sake of religion, for your sons and daughters-if you are killed you are martyrs, if you kill you are ghazis" he told them. They all braced their hearts and marched with their armor.

On a certain day they reached Malatya. Amir Umar, Juda, Abdu'l-Wahhab, Abdu'l-Salam, Qasim, Mansur, Ali b. Hashim, Nasr Habbab, Ahmad Turran, Yahya b. Muti',

Muhammad b. Fallah, Rabi' b. Qaysar, Ali b. Hashim, Aflahun, Tawabil the Greek, Juda's four sons, Sulayman, Musa and Sayyid's two sons, Ali and Nazir, all came out to meet the caliph along with fifty thousand Sunni Muslims. Sayyid's friends were all dressed in black. They came up to the caliph and exchanged greetings. When the caliph saw Sayyid's two sons he cried with sobs. There was such wailing and lament in that army, huge like the sea that some people's stomach was torn apart. [A 172] Then the caliph consoled everyone and they camped to rest.

Then Amir Umar held festivities in honor of the caliph and the caliph presented robes of honor to the sons of Sayyid, to Amir Umar and the other friends. He ended their period of mourning and assigned his leadership of the prayer to Amir Umar. He also gave the standard of the Commander of the Faithful Ali to Amir Umar and said, "No one knows this area better than you, so you should be the commander-in-chief." Thereafter they fastened a throne on a white elephant with a royal parasol box for the caliph. The caliph said, "Now let us march against the caesar crying 'In the name of God'."

Meanwhile Sayyid continued killing several people every night in his guise as a water carrier, and however much they tried and looked, they could not find who it was. One day the caesar had a feast and all the begs and infidels gathered around. He gave robes to all of them and all of them boasted saying, "We are going to do this, that and the other to the Mohammedans" and things like that. Then suddenly the news arrived that the army of the Mohammedans had arrived. The caesar asked five persons to step forward. One of them was the infidel Aqratis, another the infidel Alqan, the third the infidel Qalun, the fourth the infidel Taluq. Finally there was the infidel Qonstantin, his own son. He assigned two hundred thousand men to each of them and sent them off saying, "March ahead and find out where they have come and report to me [A 173] every detail."

They came up to a place and stopped to camp. They held council and said, "If only we had someone to spy on the Mohammedans." Sayyid stepped forth and volunteered, "If you'll allow me, let me go and bring you reliable information." They accepted. Sayyid waited till nightfall and then came over to the tent's gate in plain darkness. He saw that they were lying down drunk. Qabus woke up and was about to scream but Sayyid stuffed a kerchief in his mouth and tied his hands. He took him to a valley and tied him at a tree. Then he came back to the tent of Qonstantin and saw that they were drunk and busy with wine. Sayyid stepped forth and announced, "Qabus says 'I know where the Mohammedans are to be found. Let the crown-prince mount and come at once and let us restore our honor under the auspices of the Fire of Light!'"

In the middle of the night he ordered, "Let the army mount" and the army regiments started to mount. In the midst of this confusion, Sayyid gave the battle-cry, "*God is Great*"

and shouted loudly from one direction , "People, how could you be sleeping carefree, the enemy is upon us!" At the sound of '*God is Great*' the army turned against itself in panic. Then Sayyid shouted from another direction, "I am Abdu'l-Wahhab Ghazi. Hey infidels, how are you going to rescue yourselves from my hands?" and charged in attack. From there he went to another direction and gave his war-cry again. He shouted, "I am Ahmad Turran" and charged in attack. From there he moved to yet another direction [A 174] and shouted, "I am Abdu'l-Salam." The infidels' army seeing all this commotion turned against itself. They slaughtered each other until the middle of the night; there was so much blood it carried the corpses away. At times Sayyid would step up and mention the names of all these heroes. Once he shouted in the presence of Qalun, "Alas, sweet dear Qabus has been killed" and Qalun said, "Hey, who killed Qabus?" Sayyid answered, "My lord, the killer has just disappeared." Qalun retorted, "Quickly, point him out to me, so I may pay him back for Qabus." Then Sayyid lead Qalun outside the army. While they were going along, he threw him off his horse with a single blow. He tied him up and brought him over to where Qabus was. He untied Qabus and then fastened both of them, hands tied, on their horses and came over to the monastery of Shammas. He shouted at the gate. Shammas recognized Sayyid by his voice and rolled down to open the gate. He presented his greetings to Sayyid and said, "Lord, they said that Taryun burned you alive. All the friends wore black. Well, praise be to God now, you are alive and well!" Sayyid said, "Watch out and do not reveal my secret to anyone." There was a well there in the monastery and they put the two infidels in it. He brought Sayyid food and they ate. Then Sayyid mounted his horse and rode off again.

He came straight to Shamun's army [A 175] and saw that he had camped with one hundred thousand men. He came to his tent and started wailing. They said, "Hey, what happened to you?" and Sayyid said, "Qabus and Qalun have disappeared from the army. We do not know what happened to them." Shamun heard this and came out of his tent. He had a brave warrior called Almas and he told him, "Come on, let the two of us mount and go find out." So they mounted and searched up and down for a while. Then, Shamun sent Almas off in one direction and remained by himself.

Sayyid said, "My lord, come, let us go into this small valley, we just might get some of them and take our revenge from the Mohammedans." He lead Shamun into that valley, and when he saw that there was no-one around, he pulled the reins of Shamun's horse. By the time he said, "What on earth are you doing?" Sayyid had given him such a blow with his club on the breast that he threw him on the ground. He tied him up and brought him to Shammas. They put this one also in the well.

Meanwhile, on this side, Qonstantin, the son of the caesar, and that impressive army were killing each other till the morning. There was no account of the number of the infidels killed. When it dawned they saw that there were no Mohammedans amongst them and they sighed loudly and fell into sadness and despair. Qonstantin had just sat down when Sayyid came and said, "My lord, the caesar said that Qabus and Shamun have turned their backs to us and joined the religion of the Mohammedans, so watch out and take precautions." When Qonstantin heard this he lamented and then [A 176] they brought out a horse for him and he mounted. Then Sayyid sent the crowd away and said, "I have some news to tell you." Qonstantin took five servants with him and they went a little further away. Sayyid acted as if he had a few words to say, looked around and saw that they could no longer get any help from the army. He drew his sword and thrashed the five servants. He got Qonstantin, tied him up and brought him to the monastery of Shammas. They placed him too in the cell, and Sayyid returned back.

The storytellers tell the story how Sayyid came back and fell upon Aqritis. He was approaching with two hundred and fifty thousand men. Sayyid stepped forth and said, "My lord, where are you off to?" Aqritis said, "Who are you to come and ask me questions?" Sayyid said, "I am a servant of the caesar, my name is Aqqush." Then Aqritis said, "The commanders of the army have disappeared and I do not know what the story is, are they dead or alive? What sort of answer should I give to the caesar? This is why I want to make an attack now, by night, so that I might with the good fortune of the Fire of Light restore our honor." Sayyid said, "Divide your army into two and then send someone to go and spy, do not advance carelessly lest a catastrophe hits you." Aqritis said, "But who could go as a spy now?" Sayyid said, "Let me go and report their situation to you. I have good experience with such missions, in fact that's what the caesar sent me here for." [A 177] Aqritis prayed for Sayyid and Sayyid rode off. Aqritis camped at that place. When Sayyid returned it was past the evening prayer. He said, "How can you sit around so comfortably? I went and found out what they are up to: They are in Malatya but, sure enough, there are thirty thousand men behind that mountain there, with Ahmad Turran and Abdu'l-Wahhab and Juda and a few more warriors. So pull yourselves together, divide the army into two and let us march against them." Aqritis mounted and divided the two hundred thousand men in two parts.

Just at that moment Taryun and his son Qasure came along. They informed Taryun of their plan and he said, "Let me go with one side as well." Sayyid said, "Sir, why don't you come with me. You are an auspicious young man, there's the hope that this conquest might come from you." Sayyid told Aqritis, "Noble prince, you stay right here and wait for



Taryun and let us go. I will come and bring you the news." He took Taryun with an army of forty thousand armored men and they marched for a while. Then Sayyid said, "Good God, we've come very near. Let the army stay right here, and come alone with your son. Let us go together so that I can show you the army to see with your own eyes. Then we'll do as you order." Taryun liked Sayyid's proposal and praised his intelligence. They left the army there and the three of them went ahead. When they were at a distance from the army [A 178] Sayyid grabbed the two of them by the belt with his hands. He used all his power and before one could say, "Hey, what are you doing?" he lifted them from their horse and threw them to the ground. He tied their hands over their heads and brought them to an inaccessible valley and tied both of them to a tree. Taryun collected himself and said, "Who are you and how did you manage to do such a thing to us?" Sayyid said, "I am the one whom you burned on the fire at Harjana and sent my ashes to the caesar. The God of Muhammad has resuscitated me. As for all these begs that were killed in your camp, I am the one who has killed them." Taryun was speechless and lost his consciousness.

Sayyid came to Aqritis then and said, "Taryun needs assistance, there are a lot of Muslims. Let us catch them in the middle so that we don't allow anyone to escape." He took one hundred thousand men and left another hundred thousand in place. Sayyid said, "If you are needed I shall come to you again. Of course stay alert and do not dismount."

Then he took Aqritis and brought him right in front of Taryun's army and said, "Here you see them? Here they stand, so what are you waiting for, go after them!" They drew their swords and let the cavalry loose. Sayyid rushed to Taryun's army saying, "What are you standing here for? Here come the Mohammedans!" He himself got out of the way and the two armies mingled in the middle of the night. Fancy now what sort of a massacre there was! Sayyid rushed back to the remaining hundred thousand saying, "How much more heedless could you become? [A 179] They have surrounded Aqritis, rush to his help." He led that army and sent it in one direction while he came out on the army's right side and gave several war-cries, "I am Ahmad Turran," , "I am Tawabil the Greek," "I am Abdu'l-Salam." Then he observed from a far off point how the armies were massacring each other: the bodies were swimming in blood and the dead were collapsing in huge mounds. Seventy thousand infidels were put to the sword that night. When morning came and one could see one another, they realized that there was not even a single stranger amongst them: they had themselves massacred each other. Some had killed their and some their sons, yet there was not a Sunni to be found. They sighed in despair.

Then they tried to find Taryun and Qasure, but to no avail. Aqritis was amazed: , "You fools, go and look for Aqqush at once. He is the one who did it all!" They did look for him but could not find him anywhere. He wrote a letter to the caesar at once. He said,

"Be informed that Taryun and Qasure and Shamun and Qonstantin and Qalun and Qabus, these six begs have all disappeared from the camp and it is not clear whether they are alive or dead." He also reported everything that had happened every night and said, "I've remained alone, either send some help or let me come back with you."

Meanwhile Sayyid left from there and took Taryun and his son and brought them to Shammas. [A 180] He put them too in that cell. Once again he bid Shammas farewell and rode off and came to Malatya. He climbed up to a forest hill across from the city. In the morning he got up and recited the call to prayer. They heard the voice of Sayyid in town and there was great commotion. Tawabil heard Sayyid's voice and was beyond himself. He pulled himself together again and roamed the streets all puzzled until he came and saw Sayyid right across from him. He rushed to him and fell to his feet saying, "Commander of the Faithful, where have you been? You made us suffer bitterly." Sayyid stood there without saying a word. He did not answer. Tawabil raised his head and looked at Sayyid's face. He saw a young man, but, yes, he was black. Yet the face, the stature, the eyes and eyebrows were all Sayyid's; it was just that he was black... He rubbed his eyes and took another look and cried with loud sobs. Sayyid said, "Dear friend, you came up to me and started crying. Could you please let me know what all this means?" Tawabil said, "Friend, you just tell me what sort of a person you are." Sayyid said, "I am from Chîn and I come from the Mountain of Qaf. I am a faithful Muslim and I heard that the cursed caesar has levied an army from the seven climes and plans to march and wipe the Muslims out. We are ten thousand Chinese and we came to serve the faithful and take part in the great *ghaza*. But now, as soon as you saw me you started crying and you are wearing black to boot. [A 181] What is the reason, tell me." Tawabil said, "Commander, we used to have a splendid lord, a most brave hero, but he was captured in the land of the infidels and the cursed Taryun burned him on a fire. His external appearance, his face, his posture and stature, his way of speaking and his fieriness, his way of entreating, his movement and agility, well they all were just like yours. Only he was white and you are black." Sayyid said, "Whoever is born from a mother must die, only God is the one who is immortal and unchangeable. He caused his turn to pass, but now you too should behave like real men and perform the religious obligations. The army of the caesar is without count and your army is small. Where's your caliph by the way?" Tawabil answered, "The Caliph has come too, but indeed, he has not managed to come to the city yet."

Tawabil led Sayyid to the city. Everyone who would see him from afar would come and fall to his feet. But when he would look at his face he would realized that he was black and would go out of his mind. All the friends gathered in the company of Sayyid, they saw his stature and were amazed. They would say, "My dear soul, this is

Battal here," and then would say, "God the Almighty is powerful, look how much a person can resemble another person!" Sayyid's blackness left them all marveling. Then Amir Umar stepped forth and led the prayer and they performed the morning prayer.

Once they completed the ritual their spy came and said, "At such and such a place seventy thousand [A 182] infidels have been killed and lie there dead. There is not one Muslim amongst them and they do not know how it all happened." Sayyid said, "They were killed by the Chîn." He mounted his horse and rode off. The Sunnis rejoiced, rubbed their faces on the earth and said, "Praise be to God that God the Almighty has sent us help, he has sent us the Chîn in assistance." They reported this story to the caliph and afterwards they mounted and rode to the place where those people had been killed. They saw for themselves and were delighted.

Meanwhile, on this side, Aqritis' letter came to the caesar. They read it and the caesar fell in despair. He gathered the begs and told them the story. The Shah of Mazandaran stood up and spoke at length. He said, "My king, you sit where you are, let me, your slave, go and find those lost begs and turn Malatya upside down." They assigned him three hundred thousand men and the caesar sent him off along with three hundred famous brave warriors.

On this side, the Sunnis with fifty thousand men were standing at the place where that army of infidels had been massacred. They saw dust raised across from them and the infidels' army appeared: five hundred thousand men, all of them drowned in iron armors. They saw that the Muslims were standing across from them and had raised banners and had lined up for battle, so they also raised their banners and brought their ranks together. Both sides directed their attention to the battlefield. [A 183]

A young brave man called Ibrahim entered the battlefield first from the Muslims. He made a show of force and asked for a challenger. Alqan entered the battlefield from the infidels, saying, "Iron-hearted people, we have burned your army commander in fire, so now you are a people without a leader. With what sort of pluck have you, such a small army, dared to come out against us? There's no doubt you will be defeated. The caesar is marching against you, the earth and the sky cannot contain his army, seventy two nations have agreed to wipe you off the face the earth." Ibrahim said, "Cursed wretch, you believe in your begs whereas we entrust ourselves to God. God Almighty will come to our assistance." They attacked each other and Ibrahim hit Alqan with the sword and cut him in two pieces. One by one he thrashed seven infidels.

The cursed Aqritis got furious and entered the battlefield and hit Ibrahim with the mace. An evil cursed wretch, Aqritis was. Ibrahim's shield was smashed and the lance landed on his head and made him a martyr. His brother Suhayl entered the battlefield in his

place, but Aqritis showed no mercy and made him a martyr as well. That day Aqritis held the field and out of forty warriors, some he made martyrs and some he injured. The Muslims' strength was exhausted.

He gave a war-cry once, "I am Aqritis the Wizard (*jazu*), son of Bayda the witch (*jazu*). Mohammedans what are you doing? Come on, come to the battleground! Are these the skills and discipline with which you dare to face the caesar?" Tawabil steered his horse into the field and came up to him. Aqritis said, "Who are you and what do they call you?" He answered, [A 184] "I am Tawabil the Greek, Battal's trainer." They fought and seventeen attempts failed on both sides. Aqritis was furious. He held Tawabil from his cummerbund and using all his force carried him away from his horse. He wanted to take him over to the foot of his banner when they heard a terrifying war-cry. It made earth and sky tremble and tore the insides of many. This is how it went, "You cursed wretch, let go of this young man. I am the fellow you need." The Muslims heard it and were delighted. They said, "Why, it is Battal himself" whereas some said, "What Battal, where? Battal has been killed." Amir Umar said, "Friends, this is Ja'far. He is that man from Chîn who keeps appearing. Mark my words, my heart tells me that that this person is Battal, only he is black. That is the only reason why I still have some doubts."

When Aqritis heard Sayyid's voice he panicked and dropped Tawabil from his hands. He got up and rushed to Sayyid. He took a look at his face and realized he was the man from Chîn he had seen before in Malatya. He said, "Brave warrior, tell me the truth, what sort of a young man are you? When we see you our pain is renewed." Sayyid answered, "I am Saluk from Chîn. My army is up on that mountain, we have come to join in the *ghaza*." Tawabil sighed and started shouting. He came over to the army of Islam and all the friends said, [A 185] "This is Battal. He has just disguised himself." Tawabil said, "I've just asked him now, and he said he is Saluk from Chîn. He also said 'Our army is right here behind that mountain'."

While these were talking like this, Aqritis had left the field and a cursed wretch called Ham had come in and was facing Sayyid. After a couple of attacks Sayyid got hold of him from his cummerbund. He used his force and tossed him in the air. He struck him with the sword of Zahhak as he was coming down and cut him in two pieces. One by one he annihilated one hundred and twenty infidels, each with a different blow. Everyone rejoiced in the camp of Islam whereas fear settled on the infidels' camp.

Aqritis said, "I wonder who that person might be. He came down from the mountain and annihilated the servants of the Messiah and shamed the idols of Lat and Manat." Sayyid shouted and galloped around the field seeking a challenger, but no one entered the battlefield. Sayyid dismounted and checked his horse's reins, then mounted

again and charged by himself against that army. He would come in on the right and out of the left side destroying whatever came his way. The Muslims saw him and fifty thousand men attacked all at once, shouting, "*God is Great.*" There was a bitter fight until the evening, when the armies separated. Sayyid steered his horse and went back into the mountain. The Sunnis saw what had happened and were delighted and came to camp.

The infidels' army, sad and in despair, also [A 186] camped for the night. They manned the outposts and guarded their camp. Then, right in the middle of the night, Sayyid came down from the mountain and shouted, "People I am Shamun and I've become a Muslim. I've had enough of the ceremonies of Jesus. The true religion is the religion of Muhammad. I've killed Qonstantin the son of the caesar and I am no longer going to offer any help to the infidels." With these words he charged in attack. The infidels turned against each other. They drew their swords and killed one another. Blood flowed like a torrent until the following day.

When it dawned the Muslims attacked. Sayyid captured the flag of the infidels and their army was broken and fled in disarray. Close to fifty thousand infidels had been put to the sword. The Sunnis saw this and were happy. They came back and collected the rich booty from the army in one place and distributed it. Sayyid went back to the mountain.

Meanwhile on this side, Qonstantin's servants came to the caesar and said, "My lord, Shamun has become a Muslim and killed your son. They attacked your army by night and annihilated it." When the caesar heard all this he screamed and smashed his crown on the ground. He descended from his throne and fainted. His viziers fell upon him and put him back on the throne. He lied there for a long time but couldn't regain his consciousness. Whatever sorts of medicine they tried, it did not help. They said, "He needs a doctor who will be able to bring his mind back."

Sayyid was present there, so he disguised himself [A 187] as a doctor and came and banged on the camps gate. They saw Sayyid and invited him saying, "Bring back the padishah's mind and we'll make you rich." They brought Sayyid to the caesar and Sayyid took a pot out of his bag. He opened it and took out some oil that he rubbed on the caesar's head and face. He said, "Cover him up so he may sleep for a while." They covered him and after a while he sneezed and got up, opened his eyes and held his face with his hands. He felt his face and eyes: all at once he had lost his hair and beard and had become like a wandering dervish. When the caesar saw his condition he said, "People, what has happened to me? Tell me at once what my condition is like." They said, "Ruler of the world, when you heard Qonstantin's news you fainted and we brought a doctor to bring your mind back. We know nothing else about what the doctor did to you. Whatever he did

it was he himself that did it" The caesar said, "Come on, call the doctor!" They looked up and down for the doctor but did not find him.

Sayyid was right there present so he rushed outside and found a doctor -he was a convert. He said, "How about if I were to do you a kind favor?" and he answered, "How about it?" Sayyid said, "An ill-omened fellow came and treated the caesar. The padishah is well now, but the fellow has disappeared. They want to give him a great fortune, but he is no-where to be found. Come, let me send you, and I will say 'Here's the doctor'. Of course with one condition, that you won't hold anything back from me. [A 188] Whatever they give you, we will split it evenly."

The convert doctor accepted and Sayyid disguised him as it pleased his mind. Then he brought him to the presence of the caesar. He offered a prayer and said, "My lord, I have found the doctor" and summoned him inside. The caesar, with his head in bandages, asked, "Doctor, were you the one who treated me?" He answered, "Yes lord, I was the one who treated you." The caesar ordered, "Quickly now, you too give him the proper treatment." They came and grabbed the convert by the beard and pulled him outside while he was screaming, "For the sake of God, I am not the one." But he saw that it was to no avail: they cut him up into pieces.

Afterwards the caesar gathered the sultans and padishahs of those seven climes in his presence. With the veil still over his face, he told them, "Lords, get ready now and arm yourselves, tomorrow morning we'll march and restore the lost honor of the Messiah." Every one of them gave a long speech and once again he presented them with ceremonial robes and crowns.

Meanwhile, on this side, the Sunnis camped at the foot of that mountain and Amir Umar said, "Friends, we owe this victory here to the efforts of that young man from Chîn." They all offered prayers for Sayyid and then they dug out trenches at the foot of the mountain and built gates out of which they would come to engage in battle. Then they sent someone to the caliph and reported, "Come fast, otherwise this caesar here is going to defeat us." The news reached the caliph [A 189] and he gave the order to advance. So these fellows were on their way.

Meanwhile, on this side, the news reached the Muslims that, "The caesar Araqil has arrived" and they looked up and saw dust in the air. The noise of drums and trumpets filled the world. The infidels' army appeared row after row. The Sunnis were fifty thousand men. They lined up for battle and placed their souls and heads on the line for the sake of religion. They stood observing carefully.

The first one to appear was Sarjayil the Greek, the brother of Taryun. He appeared with one hundred thousand men. He tightened his dark blue iron ranks and stood waiting.

Following him came Tarun b. Mihran with a hundred thousand men, and after him, came Sulayman of Antioch, also with a hundred thousand men. He lined up for battle and waited. Then came Uqqab of Mashtiran with a hundred thousand and a hundred pairs of drums, and following him came Suhayl b. Shayban. Then came several units of begs, row after row, and also lined up for battle. Then there were twelve thousand pairs of drums from red gold whose noise filled the world. The caesar Araqil came out with tremendous pomp and majesty and banners with the shape of the cross and icons filled the world. A thousand two hundred horses with red gold saddles and bridles trotted in front of him, and a thousand five hundred sturdy elephants followed him. Each elephant had a leather castle on its back, with thirty archers [A 190] of pointed and sharp arrows. Illustrious infidel begs were standing to the right and to the left of the caesar. He got up on a mound and observed the army of Islam. He noticed that they had their back to the mountain and stood there shouting, "*God is Great*" and, "There is no God but God." He was amazed. He said, "Fellow princes, what sort of a fearless and bold people are these? Look here, they are standing against such a huge army and against a sultan like myself." It was rather late in day so the caesar said, "It is late now, otherwise I would have given the order and we would pull them and their mountain down to pieces." They camped for the night and spread over mountain and plane. The caesar sat on his throne as soon as it was set up. That evening they ate and drank till the morning. As soon as it dawned the caesar gave the order and the army mounted and marched in tight rows and lines like a mountain of iron.

On this side the army of Islam also mounted and made a sortie out of the trenches shouting, "*God is Great*" and, "There is no God but God," and saying, "What can we do? May our heads and lives be sacrificed in the name of God and his Apostle, let us fight for the sake of religion."

They fastened the caesar's throne on an elephant and held him inside a parasol shadow box. The caesar remembered Taryun and started crying and said, "We needed Taryun here now, [A 191] he would restore the honor of the Messiah." Aqritis said, "My lord, as long as you yourself are well do not worry: Taryun may be gone, but you could order me your worthless servant, and I will go and bring all of them, hands tied, to you."

While these two were talking like that, dust was raised from the road to Baghdad. The wind blew it away, and a hundred thousand Sunni ghazis led by Mamlan of Khwarazm -they had taken up arms for the love of God and had already sacrificed their heads and lives for the sake of religion. They were all such good archers that they would throw their arrows so far that they wouldn't let even the flying birds pass over them. They appeared with a hundred pairs of drums and a hundred banners. When Mamlan took a look at the infidels' army he saw that they had occupied both the mountain and the planes.



The Sunnis next to them were a grain of mustard dangling between the earth and the sky. He immediately ordered his own people, "Shower this infidels' army with arrows." They raced their horses and shot. Each one shot three arrows. A hundred thousand infidels fell to the ground and they managed to roll the army back over the caesar. The caesar lost his breath and started screaming, "Servants of the Messiah, what has happened to you? May the Fire of Light find its justice from you." They said, "Somebody has arrived to help the Mohammedans."

On this side, Amir Umar and the remaining ghazis went out to meet Mamlan. They exchanged greetings and asked about the caliph. He replied, "Here he comes." Suddenly [A 192] dust was raised and there appeared a hundred thousand men with a hundred pair of drums, and Nu'man b. Zayd, the Padishah of Yemen and the Hijaz. Following him came the padishah of the Ethiopians, Abdullah Najashi, who also lined up for battle. Following him, the Sultan of Egypt, Qarun Aziz with twenty thousand men drowned in iron and steel armors. Following him came Abdu'l-Qadir with twenty thousand men, and they too lined up for battle.

The caesar had in his service a warrior named Rusin, one of the begs of the Franks. He entered the battlefield. From the side of the Sunnis, Ali b. Ardashir entered the battlefield and challenged Rusin. They fought bravely but in the end that cursed wretch hit Ali with his sword and made him a martyr. Qasim entered, but he too got injured. Nu'man b. Zayd took over and they rushed a horse and took Ali out of the field. Rusin and Nu'man fought each other and twenty four attacks were fruitless. The cursed wretch got furious and hit Nu'man with the mace so hard that Nu'man's shield was smashed. The tip of the mace landed on his helmet and his head was cut in three. They raced in with a horse and took him back. That day that accursed held the field and many of the Sunnis were crippled, and even more became martyrs. Evening came and both sides retreated to rest. The Muslims were sad and in despair. They offered prayers for their martyrs and buried them. They also [A 193] looked after the wounds of those wounded.

On this side the caesar, happy and merry sat on his throne and the begs gathered around him. Upon his order they brought in ceremonial robes and he presented one to Rusin. All the begs of Rûm praised Rusin and every one of them became drunk and gave long speeches. In the morning the drums rolled again and the armies mounted. The battlefield was arranged. Rusin entered the battlefield and bustled about with his horse and said, "You mindless people, if you are going to be the enemy of a padishah like the Caesar of Rûm, you should at least have someone to turn to. And this time Battal is no longer alive to come and rescue you from our hands. So don't not drown in your own blood, come and let me lead you to the padishah. Abandon the religion of Muhammad and accept



the religion of the Messiah and the padishah might just forgive you your crimes. If you refuse, I shall put you all to the sword today." While he was in the battlefield the caesar sent an envoy and said, "Let Rusin come back, he fulfilled his duty/turn yesterday." He sent Sulayman of Antioch. He hustled around until Uthman b. Suhayl came in from the Sunnis and they started fighting. Uthman hit with his mace and the cursed wretch's shield did not withstand the blow; it landed on his shoulder and the cursed wretch collapsed. But before Uthman could cross over, his own horse slipped and he fell so Sulayman found the chance to hit him with the sword. [A 194] It cut his shoulder and went four fingers deep. They rushed in a horse and pulled Uthman out.

Abu Asim came in and grabbed Sulayman by the cummerbund but the cursed's belt was worn-out and he fell from his hands and ran away. Uqarib the renegade came in and hit a blow with the lance. Abu Asim held his shield against it, but it cut through the shield and injured him in the thigh. And while he was trying to cross over, Abu Asim approached from behind and hit such a blow with his sword that it cut his head and shield in two pieces.

Ishaq of Kufa attacked and Musa of Khwarazm came in on the Muslim side. Asim pulled out and they tied up his wound. Musa came up and asked for his name. , "I am from Kufa and my name is Ishaq. My father's name is Abdullah Ziyad. It was my forefather who tricked Husayn, the son of Ali out of Mecca, brought him out and martyred him on the plane of Karbala" he answered. Musa of Khwarazm said, "You dog son of a dog, here take this" and shot an arrow. But this cursed wretch was swift and rolled under his horse's belly so the arrow missed him. Another arrow was thrown, this time by Ishaq of Kufa, and it hit Musa in the chest and came out of his back. He pronounced the confession of faith and surrendered his soul to God. Amir Umar and all the begs wailed.

Amir Umar wanted to go in the battlefield but Mamlan did not let him, saying, "You stand right there by the banner in the place of the caliph and pray for a miracle." He [A 195] entered the battlefield himself. He took out a bow from his quiver and took an arrow in his hand. He put it in , took aim and shot. The cursed wretch put his shield against it but it did not stop it. It's steel point pierced his chest and he surrendered his soul to hell. The caesar sighed loudly. One after the other Mamlan thrashed seventy infidels. The caesar ordered and they let loose ten huge battle elephants against him. Amir Umar ordered the young men from Khwarazm and they shot arrows and turned the elephants back. Many from the army of the caesar died under the paws of the elephants. The caesar was furious and ordered fifty thousand cavalry to attack. Mamlan gave a war-cry and spurred his horse and twelve thousand Khwarazmians attacked. But they met with their celestial fate in battle. Mamlan's horse slipped and he himself collapsed on the ground.

They surrounded him and took him captive. They defeated the army of Khwarazm and rolled it back over Amir Umar. Amir Umar was very sad on account of Mamlan.

The cursed Soqrat entered the battlefield and shouted, "You ignorant wretches, what else do you want us to do? Here, Mamlan was also captured, for whose sake are you fighting for now?" Ahmad said, "Let me go" and he spurred his horse and came up to Soqrat. The engaged in battle for a long time. In the end, Ahmad Turran grabbed Soqrat by his belt in order to carry him away, but the cursed wretch took out a knife, cut his belt [A 196] and fell from his hands and ran away.

Takfur Shah, the king (*mālik*) of Istanbul charged in attack and they started fighting. As soon as the caesar saw Ahmad he rushed to the field and ordered four hundred lasso-throwers, "You be ready and as soon as Ahmad starts fighting you race and throw your lassos.. With the good fortune of the Fire of Light he'll fall in my hands." That's exactly what they did and while Ahmad was at unawares four hundred swift horsemen rushed in, threw their lassos and trapped Ahmad. They brought him next to Mamlan and sadness overtook the Sunnis.

Tawabil entered the battlefield and fought with Soqrat. A few attempts missed their targets and then the cursed Soqrat became furious. He hit with the mace and Tawabil's shield was smashed. The mace landed on his chest and he collapsed. Soqrat wanted to hit him the sword and cut him in two pieces.

Meanwhile, on this side, a thundering war-cry was heard. It was as if the earth and the heavens had collapsed, mountains had been crushed and the earth had been shaken. Amir Umar said, "Oh dear, it's that young man from Chîn, he has arrived." The infidels' army was beyond itself. The caesar said, "What's going on?" and just as he was speaking Sayyid arrived like lightning, lance in hand. He hit Takfur Shah so hard his shield was smashed. The lance landed on his head and he and his horse became one with the ground. Then Rusin the Bulghar came in and hurled a lance at Sayyid. [A 197] He avoided it and it was now his turn. He hit Rusin with the lance so hard that it went through his shield and belly and out of his chest. Sayyid lifted him with the lance and smashed him on the ground. He was crushed into small pieces.

Daryab from Saqlan entered the battlefield. He too was one of the renegades. Sayyid seized him at once from his horse and tossed him in the air. Then he cut him in two pieces with the sword from below. Fear fell over the caesar who lost his breath and swallowed his tongue. Sayyid shouted and asked for a challenger, but no one had the guts to come in. No one else entered the battlefield, so Sayyid drew the sword of Zahhak and charged against the right wing. He left fifty to sixty people on the ground. Then he charged against the left flank and killed seventy to eighty people. Not a single person was

able to stand in front of him. He came back to the field and shouted, "You rebels, enemies of religion, come on, come to the battlefield!"

The caesar was furious and shouted, "What has happened to you? Is there no real man amongst you to kill this good-for-nothing fellow and restore the honor of the Messiah?" As he was speaking, dust was raised, so much that the light of day was eclipsed. Out of the dust appeared one hundred thousand men with Ismail of Samarkand, a hundred banners, and a hundred pairs of drums. The Sunnis came out to meet him. They embraced him and asked about the caliph. He said, "Here he is," and next came Khusraw, the Shah of Shirwan with fifty thousand and lined up for battle. Following him came Minuchihr from Gilan with thirty thousand and lined up for battle. Following him [A 198] came Patwaran from India, one of the sons of Landahu, and following him came the Sultan of Gurgan, Bahram. Why should we make the story long, great multitudes of Muslims arrived and lined up for battle.

On this side, the caesar was looking out when all of a sudden an incredible amount of dust was raised and the caliph's banner appeared. The banner of the Apostle of God, Ahmad Muhammad became visible. There was a white large elephant on whose back they had fastened a throne and a royal parasol from green atlas. Under the *baldachin* was seated the caliph Tawamiq b. Ma'd, the caliph of all lands. One thousand five hundred muftis and teachers marched on his right and left. Seven hundred reciters of the word of God were reciting the opening chapter of the Koran with their beautiful voices. Four hundred muezzins were chanting, "*God is Great*" and, "Benedictions and salutations to you, Apostle of God." Four thousand young men, such and such, were marching in front of the caliph a sea of iron, brandishing their naked swords. Four thousand special troops were marching on his right holding bows from their handles, opening their quivers, pointing and shooting arrows. Four thousand brave heroes were marching on his left side carrying maces. Another four thousand persons were marching behind with heavy iron lances in their hands. In the midst of this magnificent pomp was [A 199] the caliph with his veil on. Three hundred sixty battle elephants were walking behind him on both flanks. One thousand seven hundred gold saddled Bedouin stallions and Greek mares were droned ahead of him. It was with such magnificence that he appeared.

Amir Umar and the ghazis came out on foot and rubbed their faces on the ground. The caliph was most obliging to all of them. The caesar saw him and his blood froze and shivering shook his body. Sayyid also from the battle field turned his horses head and looked on. While the caliph was looking at the infidels' army from over his throne, his eyes fell upon Sayyid. He said, "Who's that young man standing in the field?" They said, "Commander of the Faithful, he's a young man from Chîn. He has shown such bravery

that no one could equal. He's the one that supported our army, otherwise the caesar would have scattered our ashes in the sky. What's more, everything about him, his stature, his handsomeness, his words and way of speaking, his manner of sitting and standing, his way of hitting, his grip, his war-cry, everything of his resembles Battal. But of course Battal was white and he is black. Even that horse he is riding resembles Ashqar, but she also was blonde and this one is black. He comes down from that mountain across and performs such brave deeds that not even a thousand heroes like Rustam of Dastan and Sam of Nariman could achieve. And then he just goes back to that mountain in the evening." [A 200]

When the caliph was informed about all this, he raised his hand and prayed for Sayyid. Someone rushed over from the Sunnis and said, "Oh young ghazi, the caliph offered a prayer for your sake." Sayyid jumped off his horse and rubbed his face on the ground in the direction of the caliph and then mounted again and displayed his martial skills for a while. He showed them seventy two different types of blows and everyone on both sides was amazed and fearful. Sayyid's friends said, "By God, all these skills that he demonstrated, all these moves that he did, they are all look exactly like the sort of thing Battal would do, but this fellow is black, it can not be." The caliph said, "God Almighty is powerful, he can disguise anyone he wants as Battal and send him over to assist the army of Islam."

Sayyid, facing in the direction of the caliph, asked for a challenger. A man called Gurgin Lawi, the Padishah of Qirwan, came against Sayyid and hurled his lance. Sayyid repelled it. He tried to cross over but Sayyid reached and grabbed him by the belt and seized him out of the horse's saddle. He turned him upside down and smashed him on the ground and Gurgin Lawi surrendered his soul to hell. Following him came the warden of the marches (*Kenāreng*) of Cashmere but Sayyid seized him too from his horse like an apple, tied him up and delivered him to the side of the Sunnis. Following him came Qarun from Sitan and Sayyid brought him down as well and tied him up and sent him to the caliph and they placed him at the foot of the banner. [A 201]

The cry, "*God is Great*" from the Sunnis reached the seventh heaven. That day he brought down seventeen famous warriors, each with a different type of skill, tied them up and sent them over to the caliph. Apart from them he decimated seventy to eighty reputable men, all ignorant renegades, each with a single blow. No one else entered the battlefield. Sayyid dismounted and fixed the stirrups, then hopped back on his horse again. With the sword of Zahhak tight in his hand he gave a war-cry and the mountains were shaken. Then he hurled himself on the army of the caesar. He broke their ranks and annihilated everyone who came his way; he made their blood flow like a torrent. When evening came, once again he

left the army and went away in the direction of the mountain. The caliph offered prayers in Sayyid's back.

On this side, great fear had fallen over the army of the caesar. The two armies came to rest and Amir Umar said, "Friends, why don't some of you go up and fetch that young man here, my heart just tells me that this fellow is Battal himself." Seven horsemen mounted and looked for him on mountain and plane but could not find him and came back.

On this side, Sayyid raced to the top of the mountain and performed the evening and night prayers. He hid his horse in the forest and put his armor there as well. Then he descended from the mountain and came to the army of the caesar. When he reached the camp of the caesar [A 202] he saw the caesar sitting on his throne, and the padishahs on golden and silver chairs. Gallows had been set up. Ahmad Turran and Mamlan of Khwarazm were brought in with their hands tied and were standing next to the gallows. The caesar had apparently wanted to kill them but they did not let him. They had told him, "If you kill them the Mohammedans will also kill the seventeen begs of ours whom they have as prisoners." Indeed the caesar had taken the floor and was saying, "Lords, I just wonder how that fellow came down from that mountain today and did all these things to us and shamed our Messiah. Who is he? I used to be glad thinking Battal was dead, but this fellow is five times as bad." Those sitting around said, "We do not know. All we know is that he comes down from that mountain and goes back to it." The caesar said, "I wonder how I am going to find out who he is?" Sayyid stepped forth and said, "My lord, these two fellows here do know. Let me take them, if you will so order, and torture them so they speak." The caesar said, "You've spoken well. Take them aside and make them talk."

Sayyid took these two warriors and brought them to a deserted place outside the camp. He untied their hands and said to Ahmad Turran, "Brave hero, take a look at my face." When Ahmad looked at Sayyid's face he recognized him, sighed loudly and fell down and fainted. Soon afterwards he opened his eyes and said [A 203], "Brave hero, was I dreaming, or did I see while awake?" Sayyid said, "Pull yourself together because I am Sayyid Battal Ghazi. I have not died, I am alive, and I am the one who comes down from that mountain and makes a display of real skill. Ahmad fell to Sayyid's feet and Sayyid embraced him and they greeted each other. Mamlan said, "Who's this young man, who did such wonderful things to us and set us free from our bonds?" Ahmad said, "This is our commander, our sultan Sayyid Battal" and Mamlan also fell to Sayyid's feet. Sayyid kissed and hugged Mamlan. He rushed out and brought two horses, gave them to these two and said, "Go and give greetings to my friends. God willing, tomorrow I will come to the battlefield again and present myself. But now you be off!" With these words he sent them off. They rode off merry and full of joy.

They came to the Sunnis and saw that all the notables and the padishahs had gathered around the caliph and were telling the story of Sayyid. Someone from the Sunnis saw Ahmad and came and informed the caliph, saying, "Ahmad Turran and Mamlan had fallen captives, but here they come now!" Ahmad and Mamlan entered into the caliph's presence, rubbed their faces on the ground and said, "Commander of the faithful, here's the good news: Sayyid ghazi is alive, he has not died. [A 204] That person who came down from the mountain and kept saying, "I am from Chîn," well that was Sayyid Ghazi. He liberated us from captivity and sent us off saying, "Tomorrow I will come to the battlefield and reveal myself; you convey now my greetings to the caliph'." When Amir Umar and the ghazis and the begs and the caliph heard this they were delighted and happy. Tawabil said, "Ahmad, in the name of God, is the news that you brought us true?" Ahmad swore on oath that, "Sayyid is the one who sent us here. He even gave us the horses. What's more, remember how all those padishahs and begs in the caesar's camp used to be decimated? They would go to sleep and they would find them beheaded. It was Sayyid that killed them all." When the caliph heard these words he was delighted and happy. That evening not a single person managed to sleep out of their joy.

On this side, after Sayyid sent these two off, he came down to the caesar's tent and saw that the world was clear of these strangers, so he came in from the back of the tent. He found the caesar sound asleep on his throne. He knocked him out and carried him over to the mountain and tied him to a tree. He put some almond oil and vinegar under his nose and his mind came back. He realized that they had tied him on a tree and someone was standing across with a whip in his hands. As soon as the caesar opened his eyes, Sayyid whipped him a few times on the nose and eyes. He said, "Open your eyes, you [A 205] cursed wretch." The caesar started screaming, "Hey, who are you, and why are you hitting me, the padishah of the seven climes, the Caesar of Rûm?"

The storytellers tell the story that when the caesar said, "Hey, why are you hitting me, and who are you anyway?" Sayyid answered, "I am Jesus, the soul of God." The caesar said, "I am your faithful servant, I put my life on the line for you night and day, why are you killing me?" "You faithless dog, what did you do for me? I've trusted you with so many of my men and instead you spoiled so many padishahs and did not capture not even one of my accusers" said Sayyid and slapped him. The caesar's screams reached the high heavens until in the end he said, "Holy Ghost, I thought I was struggling for your sake and wish. Show me a way now to get out of this mess and I will follow it." Sayyid said, "I was going to kill you, but as soon as you die that huge assembly is going to disband and so many people are going to trampled under the feet of the horses of all these Mohammedans.

Would you like me to forgive your crimes? Well, that horseman that rolls down from the mountain and says 'I am from Chîn,' he is not from Chîn. Do you know who he is?" He answered, "No, I don't," and Sayyid said, "That's Battal!" The caesar exclaimed, "But in the end Taryun burned Battal in fire at Harjana." Sayyid said, "No, he has not died, he's alive. All these padishahs [A 206] who died in your army, he killed all of them. Or that water-carrier with the black skin who was distributing water by day, and killing begs by night, that was Battal as well. Or that doctor who made your hair and beard fall, that was Battal too. But now Battal's death is in your hands. Tomorrow he'll come again and reveal himself and invite you to a challenge. Don't be scared, get in the battlefield and kill him. If he invites you and you don't show up you will have shamed yourself in front of me and the Fire of Light, in this world and the next. Only I know what I will do to you then." The caesar said, "I will do everything you ordered." When they finished with the farewells he knocked the caesar out again and brought back to his tent and left him in his sleeping dress.

After a while the caesar regained his consciousness and saw that he was on his throne but his body was all beaten up. He summoned his servants and showed them his body saying, "Look at what Jesus did to me" They said, "What happened to you?" and he said, "Quickly gather all the begs and viziers." All the begs from around gathered there and the caesar raised his head and said, "Listen to my story, notables and begs: Last night Jesus, the spirit of God came and took me up to the fourth heaven and reproached me a great deal," And so he told the story in every detail. , "Now I must [A 207] enter the battlefield tomorrow and kill Battal upon the order of Jesus." The begs who heard all this were amazed.

On this side, the Muslims spent the night awake because of their joy. At dawn the drums of war rolled on both sides and they lined up for battle. The right and the left wings of the army became ready for battle. The Muslims had their eyes fixed in the direction of the mountain. Just at that moment the leader of the ghazis, Sayyid Battal Ghazi, that hero from the Hijaz, came straight to the battlefield riding on Ashqar. He demonstrated his martial skills for a while and the two armies marveled. In the end he stood facing the Muslims and lifted his veil and revealed himself. He shouted, "People, know and be aware that I am Sayyid Battal Ghazi. Taryun burned me in fire but God Almighty did not let me get killed and did not burn me in the fire. I've killed so many thousands of padishahs, and I will still kill many more." He advanced a few more steps and greeted the Muslims, saying, "Friends, here's your helpless and worthless servant, he's come again."

When Amir Umar heard this he could not contain himself and came straight to Sayyid. Sayyid saw him and dismounted and walked up to him on foot. They exchanged greetings. Then came Tawabil. All in tears he fell to Sayyid's feet. Then the friends

arrived and they all fell to his feet and exchanged greetings. Sayyid' two sons came crying and [A 208] Sayyid took them in his arms and kissed them in the eyes. Then he sent them back to the foot of the banner. Amir Umar said, "My lord, come and kiss the caliph's hand," but Sayyid said, "I am not going empty handed and without a proper present." The friends were delighted and happy. They went back and changed their black clothes and put white ones on.

The caliph ordered and they rolled the drums of good tidings. Fear befell the infidels' army and the caesar said, "Hey what happened to you? Don't be scared, today is the day of Battal's death. He has to die in my own hands, at least that's how Jesus has ordered me."

On this side, when the friends returned Sayyid steered his horse in the direction of the infidels' army and shouted in a very loud voice, "Where is the caesar then? Let him come so we may fight." The caesar wanted to come in but they did not let him. They said, "Let the begs and the brae warriors go in, you stay where you are. Isn't this what you wanted us here for? We've given up our provinces and districts for this day so that we may risk our lives for you." The caesar said, "It just is not possible for anyone else other than me to cut Battal's head off."

Next, Tarun entered the battlefield and came up to Sayyid and charged in attack, saying, "Hey you wizard, have you come back to life again? Let me kill right this moment and make you the laughing stock of the world." Sayyid warded his lance off and when he came over to cross [A 209] he grabbed him from the cummerbund and snatched him out of the horse. He tore him up like an old cloth into two halves, and then he carried him over and threw him right in front of the caesar. Kabus of Taliqan entered after him and hurled his sword, but it broke into two. Sayyid hit him with his sword that came down to his chest and cut him in two pieces. Then it was one of the sons of Rustam called Tahamtan that came into the battlefield. After a few attacks missed their mark Sayyid invited him to religion but saw that it was impossible so he raced fast and hurled his mace. Tahamtan's shield did not withstand it: the mace landed on his head and his two eyes and brain splattered out.

One by one Sayyid killed a hundred and seventy two persons. The cry, "*God is Great*" from the Muslims reached the heavens. The caliph offered prayers. The caesar said, "Why are you people so damn thirsty for your own blood? Let me go in and have him killed at once for you." Kahu the Indian, the sultan of India came into the battlefield and said, "Battal the slaughterer, all these padishahs that you've killed, each have plenty of servants like you waiting at home, you know. But, yes, let me take their revenge from you." He hurled his mace and as it was coming down Sayyid put his two palms up against



it. God the Almighty protected him and he was able to hold the mace tightly and pull it out of Kahu's hands. He threw it back up in the air and as it was coming down again he praised Mustafa and swung his own mace so hard that he leveled Kahu and his elephant to the ground. Then he shouted, "Caesar where are you then? Come over and [A 210] let us sort it out with you."

The caesar came into the battlefield in majestic pomp, with twelve thousand servants and four hundred auxiliary horses and a multitude of begs riding next to him. He came up to Sayyid and said, "Battal, your death is in my hands. Last night Jesus informed me about it. Come now, you are a young man, come and join my religion and I will make you commander-in-chief." Sayyid said, "Do not speak much. If you defeat me, let me come to your religion, but if I throw you down may you come to mine." The caesar agreed. He took a lance in his hand and charged against Sayyid. While he was coming to cross over, Sayyid took his leg out of the stirrup and gave him such a kick that he collapsed hanging from the horse's chest. Sayyid jumped at his chest and grabbed him by the beard. He said, "Look at your wretched state? As for Jesus beating you with the whip, that was me. I say you accept the faith and become a Muslim now, and I will send you back to your district as a sultan. And let me cut off the head of anyone who does not obey you." The caesar said, "Do not say much, I am not doing any of what you've said" and Sayyid replied, "Since you are not becoming a Muslim, here's your punishment," and he severed his head from his body.

He mounted his horse with the caesar's head in his hand and rode straight to the caliph. The crowd split in two and everyone dismounted as Sayyid was approaching. The caliph advanced to [A 211] meet him. Sayyid rolled the caesar's head at the feet of the elephant and said, "May the head of all your enemies become like this." The caliph dismounted from his horse and exchanged greetings with Sayyid. He had not seen him up until then, so he kissed him in the eyes and offered prayers. They attached the caesar's head on a lance.

Empty place for miniature.

On this side, the infidels' army was in great disarray, they wanted to flee. Here and there the great begs screamed saying, "What has happened to you, people? Why are you dispersing? If the caesar died [A 211<sup>a</sup>] there's still plenty of our rulers/sultans and padishahs around. We did not come here merely for the sake of the caesar, did we? We came here for the sake of our religion." They tried to pluck the army's courage up this way. There was an important infidel called Qintar the Indian. He said, "Let me go in and seek

justice for the caesar." He entered the battlefield and said, "Battal, with your devilish tricks you've killed a padishah like this. Let me take my revenge from you." He reached for his mace and attacked but Sayyid warded him off. Sayyid hit him with the mace and his shield was smashed. The mace hit his head and sunk into the elephant, which collapsed on the ground. Sayyid dismounted and Qintar got up on his feet. They grabbed each other by the belt. Sayyid lifted him and threw him to the ground. He bundled him up and send him over to the foot of the banner. Two warriors charged in attack, Aqta from Hita and Mangi from Zanzibar. They approached from two sides and caught Sayyid in the middle. One of them hurled a mace and the other a sword. Sayyid realized that they wouldn't allow him a turn, so he spurred Ashqar, raced and grabbed Aqta by the belt with his right hand and Mangi with his left hand. He made a great effort and snatched these two dragon like warriors off their horses. But Mangi from Zanzibar was a trickster: he took out his knife and cut his belt and let himself loose from Sayyid's hand. Sayyid got furious and reached and caught Aqta from Hita [A 211<sup>b</sup>] and smashed him on the ground so hard that he was crushed into small pieces. There was a loud scream from the army of Rûm. At different places they shouted, "Hey, don't let him do that, show some zeal for religion!" That immense sea-like army rolled against Sayyid. He gave a thundering war-cry and charged in attack.

Meanwhile on this side, Ahmad Turran, Mamlan of Khwarazm, Ali b. Hashim, Juda, Musa, Sulayman, Tawabil and the army of Islam attacked at various places. Those two armies clashed and mingled. That day was Judgment day itself. A whole layer of earth became dust in the air under the horses' hooves, and the sun, like a copper cup, disappeared in the dust. Bodies were carried away by flowing blood, every where there was a hole in the ground it was filled with blood. There was a terrible battle for three days and three nights. The Muslims were exhausted because the infidels were much more numerous. They all turned their faces to the sky and asked for the intercession of Muhammad. Just at that moment a storm broke out. It raised dust and blew it straight into the eyes of the infidels. They were all blinded and could not open their eyes. They did not hold out any longer and took to fleeing and broke their ranks. For a day and a night the Muslims decimated them. They pursued them taking prisoners, and then they came back. They gathered all the booty goods in one place and set the fifth for the caliph aside. The rest they distributed to the ghazis.

Then they left and came to the monastery of Shamma. He came out to meet them [A 211<sup>c</sup>] and presented his respects to the caliph. Sayyid sung Shamma's praises to the caliph and the caliph on his part offered prayers for Shamma. Then they set up the caliph's throne and Tawamiq b. Ma'd, the caliph on the face of the earth sat on it. The begs and the

padishahs came and sat around him. Sayyid, the world hero sat on his chair. He gave the order and they went and fetched Qonstantin the son of the caesar, Qasure the son of Taryun, and Qalun and Qabus . They had lost their hair and beards in that cell and their faces were covered in mud. They got up on the gallows and sat there. Sayyid ordered, "Cut their necks at once." Well, there was a judge there, the judge of Baghdad who was a respectable person in the service of the caliph, only he was an infidel. He got up from his place and told Sayyid, "Trust me with these tonight and let me talk to them. Perhaps they might become Muslims. Tomorrow I shall return them back to you." Sayyid said, "That would be fine." He sent these five infidels to the room of Uqba the Judge and left them alone. They brought them food to eat and he told them, "I am a Christian also, I wear a rope girdle. Listen now and accept what I have to tell you. The caesar also knew my secret and we always conferred together. The day that the caesar died my liver burned with grief. Now, let us make you subject to tribute. You should all stick with Qonstantin and keep your [A 211<sup>d</sup>] ears and eyes open towards me, for I may be up to something under the auspices of the Fire of Light. I will not give up until I have taken revenge for the caesar. Also prick up your ears and eyes in case something happens to Battal, in which case join forces at once and march against Malatya and put its people to the sword without any mercy." That's how he advised these fellows and he led them to Sayyid saying, "Sir, I've offered them plenty of advice, but it was to no avail. Yet they have indeed agreed to be subject to *kharaj*. They will be faithful servants obedient to your orders. Levy the *kharaj* on them and set them free and they will not break your agreement." Sayyid heard these words and his heart softened. Uqba the Judge brought those begs and made them fall to Sayyid's feet and kiss the caliph's hand. They made Qonstantin the Caesar and levied the *kharaj* on him. There were many prisoners that they set free and assigned to the caesar. On his part, he agreed to set free all the Muslim prisoners in Rûm and not to consider the Muslims enemies anymore. Then they left and went back to their posts.

The caliph also left and came over to Malatya. They gave the begs and notables permission to leave and they returned to their posts. The caliph remained alone.

## CHAPTER THIRTEEN

The Story of Uqba, the Treacherous Judge,  
and of Humayun, the Daughter of the Caesar.

One day Amir Umar made a celebration and invited the caliph. They all came for it. The cursed Uqba the Judge offered a tidbit to Sayyid. He kindly accepted and thanked him.

Then he served and offered another tidbit to Tawabil and he ate it. There was a young man named Abdu'r-Rahman, [A 212] one of the sons of Abu Bakr. Uqba the Judge offered him one also and he too ate it. The cursed wretch had poisoned these three leaders. Two days later the caliph expressed his gratitude to Sayyid with many presents, offered prayers and took off.

The storytellers have it that poison is of seven kinds: one lasts a whole year long, another six months, another three months, another forty days, another ten days, another one week, and finally, one is instantaneous. The one Sayyid ate was of the forty days type.

One day Sayyid and the rest of the friends were sitting around when out of the blue Tawabil started trembling and lost his color. He trembled so much his face became completely pale and both his legs were swollen. He pronounced the confession of faith and surrendered his soul on the spot. The friends wailed and lamented bitterly. Sayyid shed many tears, performed his (farewell?) prayer and buried him.

Thereafter Abdu'r-Rahman started trembling and both his hands and legs got swollen. He also died with the confession of faith in his mouth. They buried him as well and the friends said, "Someone has been feeding poison or something to the Sunnis. Who could that be perhaps?" They were all amazed and wondered, "Who could have done this act of animosity?" A few days passed and one day Sayyid was also seized by fierce trembling as he was sitting. Sayyid said, "Alas, they've given me from that poison as well."

The storytellers tell the story that when [A 213] Sayyid saw his own condition he cried and said, "Alas, the Muslims are going to be annihilated under a horse's hoof." Sayyid's two legs started swelling right away and he fell and fainted. He lost his hair, beard and eyebrows. The friends let out a great wailing. Amir Umar sent a letter to the caliph immediately, reporting the situation and saying, "For God's sake please rush an antidote so that a hero like this does not die." The letter was rushed and reached the caliph. He read it carefully and immediately filled a bottle of the strongest antidote and handed it to the same servant, who got on his way again. But the cursed Uqba saw all of this and disguised two of his own servants and sent them out as well. They reached the other servant, killed him and brought the antidote back to Uqba.

Meanwhile the caliph was very sad, saying, "I wonder who did this." Uqba said, "My lord, this has nothing to do with poisoning," and the caliph said, "Well what is it then?" Uqba answered, "The other day Battal killed a padishah like the caesar without any scruples, thinking, 'I am doing something good and worthwhile'. But it is not such a casual matter to kill a padishah like that." When the notables heard this they protested, "Hey, what

are you saying? What's this talk of padishah? That fellow was a faithless dog" and they were all over Uqba. The cursed wretch realized that they joined their voices against him and he said no more. Nor did he drop a word about this ever again. [A 214]

After a short while he came home and wrote a letter to Qonstantin the Caesar, saying, "I have poisoned Battal and he has died, gather your army and march against Malatya and take revenge from its people. Kill them and show no mercy. I am also just looking for a chance to poison the caliph as well. Behave yourself like a real man." He sent the letter and when it reached the caesar he gathered his begs around him and reported the story to them. The begs said, "This is a ill-omened affair. Taryun burned him with his own hand in fire and he did not die, he was alive again. God forbid now that he come back to life again and darken the world in our eyes." The caesar said, "Well, what should we do then?" The senior men said, "First we need to send spies to go and check whether it has all really happened. Then we'll take the necessary measures." They sent out a spy. He went and came back and gave the following report, "Tawabil and Abdu'r-Rahman have died and Battal is lying sick in a terrible condition: he's all swollen and pale and loosing all his liquids. He must have died by now." As soon as the caesar heard this, he mounted with a hundred thousand men who were there ready, rolled the drums and set out in the direction of Malatya.

Meanwhile on this side, there was Sayyid all poisoned. The friends were saying, amidst their wailing, "Strange thing, why did the caliph never send that antidote? This dear hero here is, alas, being wasted? How and what shall we do?" Then one day Yahya b. [A 215] Muti, the Sunnis' spy, came in. He said, "What are you standing there for? The caesar has heard the news about Battal and is coming upon us with a hundred thousand men." The Muslims were all confused. Immediately twelve thousand Sunni Muslims got prepared and fortified the city. Muhammad b. Fallah, one of the ghazis, saw that the situation had become desperate like this, and he came out of the city and started crying with sobs next to a tree. He wailed, "I will stay right here and as soon as I hear the friends lament screaming 'Battal has died,' I will kill myself right here." He walked and saw an older woman approaching. She had a prayer rug on her shoulder, was wearing sandals on her feet, and was holding a stick in one hand and a bottle in the other. She came and greeted Muhammad and said, "Muhammad b. Fallah, do not worry, God Almighty has brought Sayyid salvation. Let's go up to him." Mohammed was delighted. They came over to the city. The friends got word of this and came rejoicing as well to present their respects to the old woman. They brought her to Sayyid. She sat by his head and took his hand and prayed. Just at that moment Sayyid opened his eyes. She emptied a drop out of a bottle she had brought. When it went down his throat, thanks to the power of God the

Almighty, Sayyid coughed and vomited. All that poison came out. Sayyid opened his eyes and collected himself. [A 216] He felt a little better and he got up and sat down. She made him drink some more out of that bottle. Then he passed water and the rest of the poison came out this way. Sayyid's whole body started feeling better, his liver was rejuvenated and there was no pain left. She rubbed whatever was left in the bottle on his face and eyes and at once, thanks to the power of God, his face and eyes became as they were before: his hair and beard grew back. His heart longed for something to eat and they brought food in. He ate it and kissed the old woman's hand and foot.

The friends all at once fell to the old woman's feet and said, "Lady of the other world, who came and did us such a favor, who are you?" , "I am the daughter of Astafa the hermit, my name is Rabia. For a long time I have been living by the tomb of the prophet in Medina. One day, it was morning time, a voice came from the tomb saying, "Rabia, rush this bottle to my son Battal and empty it down his throat so that he may get well and be rescued from that poison.' He handed me that bottle and I took it. That's how I made it here. As soon as his wish is fulfilled I am going back." Sayyid said, "Oh please, lady of the other world, stay a couple of days so we may have the chance to serve you." But just as he was saying this the old woman disappeared. They looked for her for a long time, but it was useless.

Just at that moment there was a great crowd inside the city that started clamoring. Sayyid asked, "What's the matter?" [A 217] and they said, "The caesar has arrived with a hundred thousand men." As soon as he heard that, he girded the sword of Zahhak, and only half dressed he grabbed a whip, mounted Ashqar and rode out to that army. When he reached it he climbed up on a hill and gave a thundering war-cry. The infidels thought that earth and heaven had collapsed together. He shouted another time, "So you've started a rebellion again, you cursed Qonstantin, just because you think I am dead? Let me send you along to join your father."

The infidels' army heard this and they clashed with each other saying, "Oh dear, woe is us, we've met our divine fate, haven't we?" Many people's guts were torn at the thought that Battal had come back to life once again. Sayyid charged against that army, and following him there arrived the friends and two thousand men who charged in attack. Sayyid reached and pulled down the banner of the infidels. Their army was broken. Thanks to God's power Abu Bakr who had recently become a Muslim appeared with fifty thousand men. So these fellows from the back and the others from the front, they decimated the infidels so badly that only Qonstantin with two hundred men were spared; the rest were put to the sword and their goods spoiled. Sayyid distributed the spoil goods to the dervishes and Abu Bakr came and kissed his hand saying, "By God I heard that an

affliction befell your blessed body and I came to see how you were. Praise be to God that I found you in good health." [A 218] Sayyid sent a few goods and a thousand camels to the residents of the Kaaba. Likewise, he sent plenty of goods everywhere there was a hermit or a worshipper. He himself kept just a horse and a sword. All the rest he distributed. The news reached the caliph, "A healing was sent to Sayyid by his excellency the Apostle -may peace be upon Him- and he became well and defeated with just half an armor the hundred thousand men army of the caesar." Those who heard this rejoiced and the cursed Uqba lost his breath.

On this side, Sayyid wrote a letter to Taryun saying, "Rush and send me your daughter Gul-Andam with her dowry, otherwise I will darken the world in your eyes." The letter reached Taryun. They read it and he was unhappy. He came over to his wife and explained the situation to her. The wife said, "Let me see and talk with Gul-Andam." They summoned Gul-Andam and she explained the story to her saying, "If we do not give you, he's an evil person who holds grudges and he'll destroy our realm." The maiden said, "Very well then, this is the proper thing, isn't it? Hand me over and nothing bad will happen to you for the sake of avenging me. You may consider me as having died. If this Battal is a fire, then I am ready to burn if only so that no harm may reach you." When Taryun heard this he saw that his daughter had heart so he prepared her attendants and ladies-in-waiting and sent Gul-Andam along with some important infidel begs to Sayyid. [A 219]

When the tidings reached Malatya they came out to meet her with great honors. They held wedding festivities and married her to Sayyid. She bore him a son and they named him Bashir.

Meanwhile on this side, the caliph offered great hospitality in gratitude for Sayyid's having become well. He gave ceremonial robes to the notables and goods and food to the dervishes. Uqba the Judge found the opportunity to poison the caliph and Mamlan of Khwarazm. A while passed after this and the caliph fell sick and died. His son Muslim became caliph in his place. They sent letters in the four directions and reported what had happened. They all read the Friday sermon in the name of the caliph Muslim.

One of the letters came to Malatya. They learned what had happened and began mourning. Sayyid asked, "What did the caliph die from?" The envoy answered, "They gave him a sweet potion to drink and then no matter how many drugs they tried, it was to no avail." Sayyid said, "There is someone amongst us who has been organizing all this sedition, but of course he's not known." He prayed and said, "God, you should disgrace him."

A while passed after this and one day Abdu'l-Wahhab stood up and said, "Friends, I have built a little place at the banks of the Qaraqib Brook and now the dear friends have to come and honor our little place with their blessed presence. Amir Umar said, "Let us also [A 220] send a present in his honor. Here's forty sheep, forty loads of wheat, forty *batmans* of honey, forty *batmans* of oil." Juda said, "From me too, here's this much honey and this much oil and that much wild rice." All the friends, every one according to his means, pledged something. Sayyid said, "I own nothing that stands on its legs nor anything that lies on the ground. Let me go out hunting and may whatever game I catch be Abdu'l-Wahhab's." He mounted his horse and rode off.

He caught nothing that day so he went on. After a few days he came to a meadow and saw a thick tree next to a spring. He dismounted and performed his ablutions and prayers. After he completed his prayer he lied down and fell asleep. Then a horse's whining came to his ear and he woke up in fright.

The storytellers say that the caesar Araqil had four daughters. Sayyid had taken one of them and another one had been betrothed to the son of Faghfur Shah. Her name was Humayun. She sent a man and said, "Battal has killed my father, and he also snatched a sister who is with him. Now if you must have me, you ought to come and get me, for I can find no sleep by night or by day out of fear of Battal." It was then that Faghfur's son came with four thousand men and took Humayun with plenty of goods. They were on their way, when all of a sudden the maiden looked and recognized Sayyid from afar. She started trembling and let out a big sigh saying, [A 221] "Here I am, I've run into the person I was so afraid of!" She informed Khusraw of Chîn and he said, "This is no cause for worry, do not be afraid." He gave the order and they surrounded Sayyid. Sayyid gave a war-cry and attacked. He brought Khusraw down and his army fled. He tied Khusraw up and then came over to the maiden. She said, "Sayyid, what about our agreement that you were no longer to lay hands on me? Why don't you let me go along my way?" Sayyid said, "We are wolves and you are sheep; does a wolf ever stop coveting a sheep? Does a man ever abandon his own mouthful?" The maiden said, "Come now and sell me to this fellow and I will give you whatever you wish." Sayyid said, "At least tell me who you are," and the maiden answered, "I am the daughter of the Caesar of Rûm, my name is Humayun. That young man whom you tied up is the son of the Faghfur." Sayyid said, "You are my game, I am not letting you go" and he took these two along with plenty of goods and livestock and rode off.

On the way he stopped by fruit trees and ate from its fruit. Their stupor knocked Sayyid out and he fell from his horse. The maiden saw that and undid Khusraw's bonds. He wanted to kill Sayyid but the maiden did not let him saying, "God forbid that one of his



road companions should arrive." They tied Sayyid to a tree instead, took his horse and clothes and rode off. Sayyid remained like that for a while. Then he came to his senses and saw that they had tied him around a tree. He realized that it [A 222] had been the fault of that sweet fruit, but for all that he tried to set himself free, it was to no avail. He saw that a herd of horses was approaching with two young boys herding them. They came up to Sayyid and said, "What sort of a person are you, why did they tie you up like this?" Sayyid said, "I came and saw a few people sitting around and drinking wine. As I was passing by they invited me, so I came and sat with them. I must have gotten drunk, for they took all I had, tied me at this tree and went away." They laughed amongst themselves and they untied him. One of them had a dagger in his belt. Sayyid noticed it and said, "That dagger there, is it made out of wooden or iron?" They laughed and said, "You are cuckoo, aren't you? That's why they tied you around the tree like that, isn't it?" Sayyid persisted, "Did you buy it? How much did you give for it? Let me have a look at it to see that they haven't fooled you." Again they laughed and took out the dagger and gave it to Sayyid. As soon as Sayyid got the sword he said, "Quickly now, become Muslims, else I've killed you." They started screaming and he cut one of them in two. The other one ran away but Sayyid reached him and killed him as well. He put on their clothes, mounted on a horse and started pursuing Khusraw. They had come to a spring and camped there. When Sayyid arrived they were eating. The maiden sighed loudly and said, "There he is again!" Khusraw got up and came up to Sayyid and hurled his sword. Sayyid warded it off, grabbed him from his horse and smashed him on the ground. He tied his hands, took the maiden [A 223] and turned back.

Meanwhile on this side, the friends had gathered in the house of Abdu'l-Wahhab. Sayyid did not come. They looked for him everywhere but could not find him. They sat around all sad about it. Then Sayyid appeared with all that rich booty. They were amazed when they saw it. He gave all of it to Abdu'l-Wahhab as a present. Forty famous ghazis were at the house of Abdu'l-Wahhab. The tray came in and they ate. After the meal they all fell in love with the maiden so they all pilled up on Sayyid, each pleading him to get her for himself. Sayyid realized that they would get at each other's throat and the affair would end in a fiasco, so he shouted once, "Hey, has gotten to you? I am not going to give her to any of you, I am sending her as a present to the caliph." And right away he sent her to the caliph with all her slave girls. They say that when the maiden arrived at the caliph he took a great liking to her.

Meanwhile on that side, when the caesar heard the news about his sister he fell in despair. He wrote a letter to Sayyid saying, "Send me back my sister and my brother-in-law immediately, otherwise I will gather an army and attack you. I won't spare either you

or your caliph, I will put you all to the sword." Sayyid heard this news, laughed and wrote an answer, "You infidel wretch, if you are a man, let's see you act upon it. Whatever your father got from me, well, you'll just get more of it!" And he added [A 224] , "I have sent the maiden to the caliph, so why don't you try your fortune?"

When this letter reached the Caesar Qonstantin he gathered his begs and they held council. They said, "By God, your father attempted this many, many times, and you yourself have also tried it and you both found out it was to no avail. Now we'll go back and achieve nothing but a disgrace, we'll disgrace the Messiah's honor." While these were talking about this, news arrived from Uqba the Judge, saying, "Your sister is here with the caliph, and I am trying night and day to abduct her and send her back to you. Don't you worry about a thing! I am going to spread such a sedition amongst them here that they will all be at each other's throat." When the caesar heard this he was delighted and immediately wrote the following answer, "Today you are my father, I am putting all my hopes with you. If only you could extinguish the burning of my liver. But whatever you do, please do it fast because we've fallen in great disgrace and cannot look at anyone in the face." He sent the letter and it reached Uqba. There he was, scheming in deep thought night and day, "How am I going to abduct her, I wonder." The caliph Muslim was enjoying himself with her day and night. He was never without her, and no one could lay eyes on him.

One day a person came and said, "At such and such a place I saw a lot of game." Well as it turned out, the caliph had a soft spot for hunting, so when he heard this he longed for a hunt. [A 225] Uqba the Judge was his steward so he entrusted Humayun to him and went hunting. There was a lot of game, he enjoyed himself for three days and did not return. The cursed Uqba found a chance and prepared the maiden for the trip. He sent her along with a few pages and one or two attendants. They came and informed the caesar and they came out to meet them and brought them to Istanbul.

Meanwhile on this side, come and see what Uqba is up to! When the maiden left he tore his own collar and started screaming and shouting, "Muslims, come and look at what Battal the slaughterer did. He was always in love with the maiden and as soon as he sent her to the caliph he regretted it, so now he has sent Abdu'l-Wahhab to abduct her." He screamed and the people of Baghdad all fell for him. Everyone said something else about Battal without knowing anything about this at all. The cursed Uqba was saying , "Good grief, what shall I tell the caliph?" and was beating his breast.

Suddenly the caliph appeared and the cursed wretch came to meet him screaming, "Caliph of the surface of the earth, the maiden has disappeared. They've abducted her. Battal sent Abdu'l-Wahhab and he abducted her." Glazing fire scorched the caliph's heart; the pain reached his head and his eyes became bloodshot. He wrote a letter to Amir Umar

immediately, saying , "As soon as this letter arrives, arrest Abdu'l-Wahhab, tie his hands behind his back and send him over to me immediately." They gave the letter to a messenger and he carried it to Amir Umar. They read it and Amir Umar's skin turned red. He told Sayyid the story, and he told it to Abdu'l-Wahhab also. Abdu'l-Wahhab said, [A 226] "The order is the caliph's. Whatever he orders, I am ready to obey and follow." Sayyid said, "Let me come along" and without delay they put on their armor and set out. Then one day they arrived in Baghdad and came straight to the caliph's palace. Uqba was informed that Battal and Abdu'l-Wahhab had just arrived. The cursed wretch came to the caliph and said, "My lord, here come the traitors who took aim at the house of their padishah. Neither should you allow them to speak nor should you give them the honor of looking at their faces. Give the order out there now that they should tie Abdu'l-Wahhab and bring him in, but do not allow Battal to enter." The guards went outside and told Sayyid, "The caliph has ordered Abdu'l-Wahhab's hands tied and him sent in, and, of course you are denied entry." Sayyid got furious and his eyes became bloodshot; he took Abdu'l-Wahhab by the hand and went in. He found the caliph seated. He rubbed his face on the ground and presented his greetings, but they were not reciprocated by the caliph who did not look at his face. Sayyid said, "Caliph of the face of the earth, you are sitting in the prophet's place, do not be unjust. Let me know what my sin is and then do whatever you'll do. The caliph said, "Is it permissible for you to betray my family, first to send me the caesar's daughter and then to come and snatch her and I play such games with me?" [A 227] Sayyid said, "God forbid that I should do such a unpraiseworthy thing. We know nothing of this matter." Abdu'l-Wahhab said, "I've seen the face of the prophet and he told me about the signs of this fellow. 'He's my son', that's what he has been telling me. Be magnanimous, do not spoil his mood just on the word of slanderers. All what you said is pure slander. And I am an old man, living from today to tomorrow. I've never been treacherous to anyone in my life, nor will I ever be." Uqba said, "You fell in love with that maiden and came and snatched her." Abdu'l-Wahhab swore, "I have no knowledge of this matter."

Uqba said, "It will not do to go on asking questions like that. Order them to tie Abdu'l-Wahhab's hands and break his neck, only then will this matter be clear." The caliph gave the order and they tied his hands. The guard drew his sword and stepped forward. Sayyid could not take it any longer, he sprung and removed the sword from the guard's hand and said, "My lord, first prove his guilt and then kill him!" Uqba screamed, "Here, did you see that? He drew a sword against the caliph right in his face. It is certainly lawful to spill his blood after that." Sayyid answered, "I did not draw a sword against anyone. I just took the sword away from an oppressor. Now you sit down and let me search for the maiden and find out." Uqba said, [A 228] "You are a clever trickster, and you know a lot

deceits. It was you who sent Abdu'l-Wahhab and snatched the maiden, and you've trapped me into this conundrum." Sayyid said, "You do know what happened to that maiden, don't you? Well, I will put my trust with God and look for her. Just give me forty days. If forty days pass and I come back without having found the maiden, you may consider me destined for execution." All the notables thought that was an appropriate arrangement, and they had Abdu'l-Wahhab put in prison.

Sayyid left and came back to Malatya. He reported every detail to his companions, and they all became sad. Sayyid said, "Well then, wish me good luck so that I may clear up this matter with the grace of God." He changed his clothes, bid his friends farewell and set out in the direction of Rûm. After one or two days, just before noon, he saw a person going along with a broom in one hand and a grain sieve in the other. As he was going, he turned off the road. Sayyid rushed in his direction, reached him and said, "You are nothing but a Mohammedan and a spy, isn't it?" That person answered, "God forbid, I am not what you just said, I am just a villager from around here. I am on my way to get some grain." Sayyid said, "None of this nonsense, tell me the truth" and took out his whip and hit him on the head. He was about to kill him until he said, "Young man, don't kill me, I am going to tell you the truth." Sayyid said, "Tell me at once" and that person said, "I am a spy of the caesar and I am delivering a letter to Uqba." [A 229] Sayyid said, "You are lying" and he answered, "Here's my letter -if you need it." He had put it in the broom, so he took it out and gave it to Sayyid. Sayyid read it, "You were so kind and generous to have sent my sister back. She arrived †safely†. I have built a house in the middle of the sea and placed her inside. Not even a thousand Battals would be able to reach her there. So you should know." He finished reading it and said, "What else do you know?" He answered, "I know nothing more." Sayyid drew his sword and said, "I am Battal, so accept the faith immediately and become a Muslim." This fellow started screaming, so he hit and cut him in two pieces.

Thereafter, one day in the morning he saw a person carrying a net. Sayyid steered his horse towards him and shouted, "Hey ghazi, hold it, where are you going?" He said, "I am not an Arab." Sayyid said, "No, you look like a Mohammedan, you could be a spy." He swore on oath, "I am not the person you think I am" but Sayyid said, "Tell me the truth, else I've hit and cut you in two pieces." Then he said, "My name is Shamil and I am delivering a letter from Uqba the Judge to the caesar." Sayyid said, "Just show me Uqba's letter and I will show you Battal's head." [A 230] He took out the letter and showed it to Sayyid. He read what was written, "Watch out and beware, Battal has set out in your direction looking for the maiden. According to the agreement he made here, if he does not bring the maiden within forty days, he has pawned his head. But this is no cause for

relaxation, Battal is a good for nothing trickster of a man, so watch out and be ready." Six verses from the Bible were written with the note, "Tie these around the maiden's neck so that she's protected from Sayyid's evil." When he read the letter he told that person, "Come on, off you go now," and he said, "Where should I go without the letter? Besides, show me Battal's face." Battal said, "His head is right here." The other person exclaimed, "But that's your very own head." Battal said, "Well then, I am Battal, so accept the faith immediately and become a Muslim." The fellow started cursing so Battal hit and cut him in two pieces. Then he secured the letter in his belt, disguised himself in that fellow's appearance and rode off. He reached the Caesar Qonstantin and handed him the letter. He read it and laughed saying, "Where does Battal think he's going to find the maiden? If he comes this way he is going to die." He instructed one of the attendants, "Take this man to the maiden's quarters so he sees what an unapproachable place I've built, and also let him pass this Bible around her neck himself." Sayyid went along with that attendant. They boarded a boat and Sayyid saw a pavilion in the middle of the water [A 231] standing on four columns. The attendant came and shouted banging on the iron door so they opened it. They had taken a ladder made of leather and they rolled it out and climbed up. They found the maiden sitting on a throne with a priceless crown on her head; she looked like the glowing moon. Ten slave girls were standing with their hands crossed facing her. Sayyid gave her the letter. She took it and read it, and then she kissed the Bible and brought it to her head. She asked about Uqba and Sayyid said, "He's worried about you." The maiden ordered a thousand gold pieces for Sayyid. Sayyid noticed that there was no-one else so he strangled the attendant. He drew out his sword and killed the ten slave girls, except for the nurse who accepted the faith and became a Muslim. He tied the maiden up and gathered whatever gold and silver valuables there were in the two coffer. Then, when it became dark, he stuffed a kerchief in the maiden's mouth and they got on a boat and went ashore. Sayyid brought a couple of horses, and they gave one to the nurse, they packed the embroideries on another and the maiden rode another one and they rode off.

Without taking any other road, they came to Malatya in twelve days. The friends saw them and were happy. Sayyid told them the story in every detail, how he had found the letters of Uqba, and how he had snatched the maiden. Amir Umar was happy and the friends offered prayers of thanks and marveled at Sayyid's achievements. Sayyid said, "It would be strange if it wasn't him who poisoned the caliph and the friends. All this sedition is the work of this cursed wretch. Well, you just watch what [A 232] I will do to his skin."

Meanwhile, thirty-eight days had gone by since Sayyid had left and the cursed Uqba came to the caliph and said, "Well, thirty seven days have passed and Battal has not come. It's clear he has run away and will not come. So now you know it was them who

did this thing, so give the order to torture Abdu'l-Wahhab so that he confesses and then we can hang him from his neck." The caliph said, "It's your call" and ordered Uqba and they brought Abdu'l-Wahhab. They tortured him for three days so much that his body was full of cuts from the wounds. Then he ordered and they put up the gallows in the middle of the square. They brought Abdu'l-Wahhab to the foot of the gallows, hands and neck all tied up, his white beard all soiled with blood and dust. Abdu'l-Wahhab said, "People of Baghdad, Uqba has set me up. Sayyid Battal promised that he would come in forty days and they will be over today. Let this fellow wait and if Battal does not come, may he do whatever he pleases tomorrow." All the crowd thought that was the proper thing to do and Uqba said, "That's out of the question, hang him immediately."

While they were in the middle of this argument, Sayyid saw his excellency the prophet in his dream. Sayyid rushed and fell to the apostle's feet. The apostle said, "My dear, get up immediately and rush to Baghdad [A 233] so that the infidel Uqba does not spoil Abdu'l-Wahhab, my standard-bearer." Sayyid woke up, grabbed the maiden and her nurse and hit the road. It was prayer time when he reached Baghdad. He saw that all the people were crowded in one place, and there was a gallows set up. Abdu'l-Wahhab was there with his hands tied and all drowned in red blood, his hair and beard soiled with dust. When Sayyid saw what had happened, he sighed and said, "Have you seen now what sort of tortures this cursed wretch has inflicted upon the blessed old man?" He gave a thundering cry down from the top of the hill, and fear settled on the people of Baghdad who saw that Sayyid was right there, with the maiden and her nurse. Uqba saw Sayyid and then saw the girl and rushed to the caliph saying, "Have you seen what sort of things Battal has done? Why, he's brought the maiden, so what better proof is there that it was Abdu'l-Wahhab who snatched her? The only punishment for him as well is hanging. What rogues to have taken aim at the family of a padishah like you!"

Meanwhile Sayyid came down to the gallows, dismounted and freed Abdu'l-Wahhab's hands and neck. Abdu'l-Wahhab fell to Sayyid's feet in tears and said, "Look at what that cursed wretch did to me. It would be strange if it wasn't him who did it all." Sayyid said, "I've found out that it was him who did it, he is a cursed hypocrite who fastens a *zunnar* around his waist. Just you watch [A 234] how I am going to destroy him." He ordered at once that they look after Abdu'l-Wahhab's wounds and he himself went over straight to the caliph.

The storytellers tell the story of how Sayyid came to the caliph and rubbed his face on the ground, presented his greetings and said, "Caliph of the face of the earth, why are you torturing that dear old man who has seen the face of Mohammed merely on the word

of an infidel, before the deadline was even up? How are you going to account for this to God the Almighty? Don't you think he's going to ask from you? I risk my head night and day for the sake of religion sacrificing my life and now you obey what an infidel tells you and let everyone commit such acts of vileness? Well, here I am and I've brought the maiden back from Istanbul. That's how I settle things for you. How can it be allowed that you treat my friend like this?" The caliph was ashamed and lowered his head. Sayyid said, "It was this dog that did it all. He was the one who got hold of the girl, and it was also he who poisoned your father."

As soon as Uqba heard this he started screaming and wailing, saying, "Muslims, take a look at al the sedition this fellow is causing, he's taken aim at the family of such a padishah, and now he's come uttering words like these. He snatched that maiden, [A 235] saw that Abdu'l-Wahhab was in danger for it and brought her back. At least, by God, confess your own sin and let us all walk over to the caliph and fall to his feet and ask for pardon of your sins so that he doesn't say a word about it. Until he shows such generosity behave humbly!" Sayyid said, "Dog, are you not ashamed that you are secretly keeping your religion and living your life in such hypocrisy and treachery? God the Almighty is an unsparing padishah and he willed to ridicule you and reveal your ugly evil deeds so he threw you in my hands. Just watch now what I am going to do to your skin! They will be talking about it until the Day of Judgment." Uqba started screaming and Sayyid stood up from his place and said, "People of Baghdad, be aware and informed that this very person here is an infidel, he's a man of the *zunnar*. He's the one raising all this sedition, and now he wants to raise discord amongst us." Uqba got up and held his veil over his face and cried with sobs and said, "Muslims, how can it be allowed that this person here can say such things about me? I can recite the Koran seven times and go on a pilgrimage to Mecca on foot seven times between two full prayers and he calls me an infidel and claims I sent the maiden to Istanbul. What relation of mine is the caesar so that I might be able to do such a thing? Caliph of the face of the earth, defend my rights against this man, otherwise tomorrow [A 236] on the Day of Judgment I will be a heavy burden."

All those sitting and standing around heard these words and turned towards Sayyid saying, "Brave warrior, it is nor proper to speak like this. You sent the maiden away and then you brought her back: you must at least ask for forgiveness. How could you say such things to a scholar the likes of whom have not come to this world, a man who has composed two thousand sermons in the path of religion and has plenty of disciples. It simply will not do to slander people like him." Sayyid said, "Anyone who performs a prayer after him, it does not count, he must repeat it. Moreover, any wedding he has performed is null. Every person who speaks well to me about him, I am his enemy." He

reached with his hand and took out those letters. He handed Uqba's letter to the caliph saying, "You recognize Uqba's own handwriting, don't you?" The caliph read the letter and his face turned red with anger. This is what the letter said, "My dear Caesar, watch out. Give the maiden away in marriage at once for Battal is coming after her. He is a good for nothing man and God forbid that he should get hold of the maiden" When the caliph read this letter he told Uqba, "Master, what is this all about? Isn't this your handwriting? I thought that you were a Muslim, but you really are a hypocrite, aren't you?" Uqba shouted back, "Commander of the Faithful, Battal is a trickster of a person. He can imitate the handwriting [A 237] of everyone he wants. Don't you trust that piece of writing." Sayyid took out the letter of the caesar and gave them to the caliph to read. It said, "As soon as you sent me the maiden. I built a place for her beyond anyone's reach." Then the caesar made several apologies of the sort, "No-one has ever shown me the kindness you have, may Jesus return the favor and set the whole thing straight for you." When the caliph read this, he went out of his mind and said, "I thought you were a Muslim but you are just a faithless dog."

Then the caliph announced the situation to the crowd and the begs and viziers were all amazed. Uqba said, "God forbid that what he said be true," but the caliph ordered them to bring the maiden. They brought her in. She sat behind a drop cloth and the caliph asked, "Tell us the truth now, who sent you to Istanbul?" The maiden replied, "Battal was the one who snatched me. Uqba is not to blame in this matter, the whole thing is just slander against him." Uqba said, "Muslims, you see, and they almost destroyed me just like that without any reason." The crowd said, "Sayyid, such actions are not proper for you at all, you know."

Sayyid said, "Bring me a Bible at once." Then he read from the Bible five verses from the Chapter of Mary and said to the maiden, "Here, may these verses get hold of you if you are not telling the truth." He went on, "Tell us then, where did I capture you?" When the maiden heard this she said [A 238], "People, let us speak the truth, Battal and Abdu'l-Wahhab are innocent in this case, it was Uqba who sent me to Istanbul. Battal came and killed my ten slave girls but my nurse became a Muslim and rescued herself. That's all I know." Uqba screamed and said, "Battal scared her and forced her to change her words." Sayyid said, "Commander of the faithful, give me a warrant to have this man's house searched." The religious men said, "That should be allowed" and the caliph issued the warrant.

A few wise men got up and came to Uqba's house with Sayyid. However hard they looked, they could not find any sign of disbelief. On the contrary they found plenty of Korans with their reading stands and other signs of the faith. Sayyid stood helpless and



said, "Dear God, it had been clear to you all throughout that this man is an infidel. Please do not ridicule me now in the midst of all this, for the sake of the prophets and the saints." While Sayyid was saying that, they were about to go through a door. Then Sayyid's eye fell upon another door. He saw that it was locked so he had it opened immediately and they went inside. It was full of straw but a heavy smell of flowers was coming from somewhere. Sayyid ordered and they dispersed the straw and wiped the place clean and saw that it was covered with white marble and, yes, there was a heavy smell of Christmas roses. They lit a candle and Sayyid examined the seams of those marbles carefully and [A 239] noticed that one marble block was loose. He took a look and noticed a pit with a ladder going down. He followed it, naked sword in hand. He realized it was a monastery: there were candle lamps hanging around and two priests with bells in their hands turning around. Sayyid tied them up. Those religious scholars saw them and were bewildered.

They rushed the news to the caliph. Sayyid came and brought the two monks and prayed in front of the caliph. Uqba saw that and started trembling. Right there on the spot the caliph ordered and they tied his hands. They also decapitated the two monks. The caliph got up from his place and came and kissed Sayyid's neck and ears, presented his apologies and sat by his side. Sayyid said, "Now give me this cursed wretch so that I may finally punish him." The caliph said, "It's your call, do whatever you'd like." Sayyid got up and cut Uqba's nose and ear off with his own hand and then he ordered and they undressed him, shaved his beard and smeared his face with dirt. Then they mounted him on a donkey and paraded him around the city.

The caliph gave Sayyid Uqba's goods and palaces, and Sayyid distributed all of them to the poor and the dervishes. Then the caliph presented Sayyid and Abdu'l-Wahhab with very expensive ceremonial robes. They paraded Uqba for three days around the city and the spectators spitted in his face and cursed him. After these three days Sayyid asked to be excused from the caliph and bidding him farewell [A 240] took Uqba along and came to Malatya.

Amir Umar and the friends came out to meet them and exchanged greetings. They lead him into the city and Sayyid told them the stories of Uqba. Those hearing remained in awe and cursed Uqba at his face. They paraded him around the city again. Sayyid said, "Come and accept the faith and become a Muslim" and Uqba said, "I cannot be a Muslim myself, but why don't you let me write to the caesar so that he purchases me?" Sayyid said, "Write to him then." Uqba wrote the following, "I have shamed myself for the sake of the Messiah and for your own sake, so now buy me away from the hands of this man. Remember, I am your friend, I've made many sacrifices for you, so please buy me as a

prisoner otherwise he'll kill me with great fury." They found an infidel, handed him the letter and sent him off.

When the letter reached the caesar he read it and started crying. He reported to his begs and said, "Each one of you give something so we may take our friend away from Battal's hands." The caesar himself gave ten thousand gold pieces, ten good swords, ten fine Bedouin steeds and two hundred servants. He assigned his vizier to the dispatch and sent him off. When they arrived in Malatya they came with five monks. Sayyid sent them to Amir Umar and said, "Let him take the goods and let go of that cursed wretch. And if they ask for me, please say that I have fallen ill, for I am not letting him go alive. Come on now, get going." Amir Umar [A 241] took the goods and handed them Uqba. They took him and rode away.

Sayyid rode after them. When he reached them he saw that they were resting under a tree. Moreover, there was someone else coming from afar. Sayyid blocked his way and said, "Who are you?" He answered, "I am a man of Uqba, I've taken a letter to the caesar saying, "My lord, under your good auspices I've even managed to liberate myself from the hands of Battal" and the caesar wrote back saying, "You are my father. If down there you are the judge of Baghdad, here all of Rûm is yours." Sayyid grabbed that piece of writing and thrashed that person. Then he disguised himself like him and came up to Uqba who read the caesar's letter and rejoiced. That night Sayyid thrashed the vizier of the caesar and the five monks and thrust a rope around Uqba's neck and logged him along. However much Uqba repeated, "You have sold me, why are you still keeping me?" he realized it was to no avail. Sayyid said, "I still have an lot of business to settle with you. Do you know what trouble you've caused me?"

He took him to the monastery of Shammās and knocked on the door. Shammās said, "Who is it?" and he said, "It is Battal" Shammās said, "Warrior, go away. I've written you off. I heard you sold Uqba away." Sayyid said, "Well, just open that gate." Shammās opened the gate and saw Uqba with his hands tied and a rope around his neck, his nose and ear cut off. He spat on his face right away and slapped him on the back [A 242] of his neck a few times and said, "Warrior, I was greatly saddened by you because of this cursed wretch here. I heard that you had sold him off." Sayyid said, "Hey, is this how I'd ever let him go? I have several punishments in mind for him." Shammās said, "It would be a shame to leave him alive" and the two of them kept talking until the morning.

As soon as morning came Sayyid bid Shammās farewell and brought Uqba to the city. He tortured him until he finally said, "Let me write a letter again so that the caesar purchases me" and Sayyid accepted. He wrote a letter and sent it. It reached the caesar and he read it. This what Uqba had written, "For the sake of the Fire of Light, purchase me this

time also." The caesar assembled his begs and announced Uqba's news. These fellows said, "Lord, let us say something, if you will." He said, "Speak" and they said, "Even if you levy the treasure of the world and give it to Battal, you still will not get him out of Battal's hands. There's no hope until Battal kills him." He said, "Well, what shall we do?" They said, "Write to him the following answer: 'Kill him if you must, or let him go free if you want. Whatever he did, he did it to you, and that does not concern me.' Otherwise, if he comes here and starts another sedition, well, you know what sort of an adversary Battal is, our provinces and begs are going to be destroyed again in his hands." So the caesar wrote and sent a letter to Battal saying, "Do whatever pleases your mind."

As soon as the letter [A 243] arrived Battal read it. Come now and let us see what he will do to him.

When the caesar's answer arrived Sayyid ordered and they crucified Uqba and skinned him alive. He surrendered his soul to Hell screaming and howling. They stuffed his skin with hay and hung him from the city gate. He stayed there for forty one years. The people of Rûm heard the story of Uqba and they all went into mourning. The caliph was also informed and was delighted.

Six months passed from this incident and presents and gifts used to flow in from the caesar to Sayyid and the caliph. Sayyid's awe and dread reached the seventy two nations.

#### CHAPTER FOURTEEN

#### Battal Rescues the Daughter of Mihrasp from the Qari Div and Brings the White Elephant of India.

Sayyid had three sons, Ali, Nazir and Bashir. His elder son, Ali had become a handsome young man and was reading with a master. One day he came seeking for a present but did not find a single thing. Sayyid was wearing his mantle robe and a turban, he took them off and handed them to his children saying, "Take them to your master and present my apologies. God willing I will be coming from a ghaza and will bring him something." Gul-Andam said, "Brave warrior, how can it be allowed that a person like you without equal, you couldn't even find a little something today to give to your dear children as a gift and you had to take off and give them your own caftan? It's this world we live in you know, and there's death and there's sickness and you haven't put a single thing aside in case we need it." [A 244] Sayyid said, "My sweet lady, maybe you haven't heard: they

used to bring loads of gold and silver tribute from the land of disbelief to my Apostle and He distributed it all to the dervishes and the poor and destitute. By night He hadn't kept not even one coin for Himself beyond the robe on his shoulders. Ali and Hamza also used to act like this. None of them took a liking to this world, everything they did was always for God's sake, never their own. Now, as I am descended from their family I am not going to be the one to commit sin. Whatever I do, I too do it for the sake of God. It's not for me to amass material wealth."

Gul-Andam said, "Well then, how come that Amir Umar has amassed such treasures and changes clothes twice a day? Isn't he also descended from your line?" Sayyid said, "Come on, do not be sad now, I can ask for his daughter." Gul-Andam chided him, "What do you have to be able to ask for his daughter's hand? You haven't got a penny to your name and his daughter needs a wealthy dowry." Sayyid said, "Don't you worry, just let me ask for his daughter's hand." Gul-Andam said, "If you think he'll give her, go ahead and ask!" Sayyid said, "He's just appeared, hold on" and he got up and came over to Amir Umar and he started talking and discussing with him. In the course of the chat he said, "Amir Umar [A 245] I've heard that your wealth is limitless, but isn't it so that the people of God do not care for this world and do not amass wealth?" Amir Umar said, "What if I have some wealth? It must be there, I have a daughter and tomorrow a good suitor might come my way and I will give her to him. By the way, if you know of anyone, let me know and I will give her to him along with all my wealth." Sayyid said, "So you need a good son-in-law, is that it?" He said, "That's right," and Sayyid said, "Here, give her to me then." Amir Umar said, "But you've got Taryun's daughter" and Sayyid said, "So what? My apostle -peace be upon Him- had nine of them, so what if I got two?" Amir Umar said, "Let me go home and think about it" and Sayyid said, "That's fine" and walked away.

Amir Umar came home and told his wife the whole story. She screamed, "What has he got to give in order to take this girl? His wealth does not amount to a single coin! What's more, this fellow gets married everywhere he wanders." The girl was there present as well and said, "What of it? He needs a woman for every part of his body." Her mother got furious and slapped her and her mouth and nose drowned in blood. Then the mother said, "I see, the two of you have made a deal, that's it" Amir Umar tried to separate them saying, "Well as you see the girl has a soft spot for him as well. What shall we do? If I do not give her they'll meet each other in secret." The wife said, "Then at least ask for a lot of wealth. Battal [A 246] has absolutely nothing to give, so we'll be both be rescued out of this." Amir Umar said, "What should I ask for?" and the wife replied, "Let him bring that white elephant from India with a red gold *baldachin* on top and golden anklet bangles. Let

there also be a hundred curly haired camels, a hundred white and a hundred black camels, a hundred Arabian steeds, a hundred Greek ones, a hundred Tatar and a hundred Indian ones, each with a jewel-studded saddle, half of them with beautiful boys and half with lovely virgins on top. Here then, ask for all that, that's an absurd enough demand he's not going to be able to carry out and then we'll withdraw the offer."

Amir Umar came to Sayyid and demanded all the above from him. Sayyid did not refuse anything only said, "It'll be a great pleasure giving you that, only give me a year for the task." So they agreed and Sayyid came home and reported the situation to his wife. She said, "Didn't I tell you, he's not going to give you his daughter?" The friends heard about it and came to Amir Umar, they were all sad and tried to advise Sayyid, "Brave warrior, where are you going to get hold of all that? Come on, relax about this." Sayyid said, "Only he who does not walk away from his word is a real man. I gave my word and accepted the responsibility. I must make the trip to [A 247] India at all costs. I must find out what the Almighty God will bring upon me."

He stayed up with his friends until the middle of the night and then he bid his dear little children, his wife and his friends farewell. Some of them said, "Take some of as expedition companions at least, don't go by yourself," but it was to no avail. So there he was, he mounted his horse and rode off. He crossed mountains, hunted and ate game on the way, until, after a trip of thirty three days he reached the sea shore. He saw a meadow in front of a spring and dismounted. He had some game still so he lit a fire and cooked some of it and ate it. He performed his ablutions and the early evening prayer. He held his face toward the sky and said, "God, bestow your favor upon me and give me power and strength and make the things they want from us come easily to me" and rubbed his hands over his face. He felt very sleepy and slept for a while.

Suddenly a horse neighed and he got up scared and turned around. He saw that the prophet Khidr -may peace be upon Him- had arrived. Khidr greeted Sayyid and Sayyid fell to his feet and kissed his hand. Khidr said, "Mount your horse at once." He mounted and whirled his whip. Khidr said, "Close your eyes," and he did. When he opened them again he found himself at the other side of the sea.

He saw a field with saffron plants and aromatic roots and carnations and hyacinths and mint. He looked up [A 248] and down but could not find Khidr. Then a voice was heard, "Battal, here's India for you. Put your trust with God, for there's a lot for you to do here." Sayyid rubbed his face on the ground and offered a prayer of thanks. Then he mounted his horse and went hunting for a couple of days until he came up to a field where he saw a garden with four walls. There was a pavilion built in the middle of this magnificent garden. Sayyid came up to it and opened the garden gate with the butt of his

lance. He went inside and rode around the garden but found no living creature. He dismounted and saw that there were plenty of fruit, so he ate some. Then he came up to the pavilion and went upstairs and saw that there was no-one there. Sayyid was astonished and said, "Such a wonderful place and I haven't found a soul to ask about it." He came back down but did not find his horse and however much he looked for it was to no avail. He went out again and followed the road. He pressed on and by the time he reached the city it was time for the evening prayer. It was a huge city full of people, its crowds stretching out for miles and miles. It was evening prayer time when he arrived, so he performed his prayer in a corner somewhere and lied down to sleep.

In the morning he got up, performed his ablutions and the morning prayer and then he saw a person coming. He asked him, "What city is this?" and he said, "They call this place Tantaniya." He came up to the gate and stopped and saw that it was closed. He stood there for a moment and the gate opened and people went about busy with their [A 249] business. After a while Sayyid saw that the city's padishah, Mihrasp appeared with four hundred servants, only he was an idolater. When the padishah appeared he looked around and saw Sayyid standing there and looking stunning, and took a liking to him. He made a gesture to one of his servants, "Take that person to the waiting room and I will be on my way." The servant-boy came up to Sayyid and said, "Come along, the padishah has invited you to his own quarters." Sayyid said, "What canonical school does the padishah follow?" and the servant-boy answered, "He's an idolater. He has a idol of red gold weighing forty *batmans*, hollow inside and studded with jewels. No other padishah has a God like this." Sayyid protested, "Hey, what sort of nonsense are you talking? How could this vile dog be a God? The only thing to do is to break it to pieces with a hatchet. How could such a thing be worthy of God? God is without equal, the Creator of all creatures and the origin of all existing things, the one who created the earth and the heavens, the moon and the sun and the planets, his description can never acquire a comprehensible form. Your padishah is a dog himself, I am not coming near the gate of an infidel." The servant-boy started speaking vain words to Sayyid, so Sayyid stepped forward and cut both his ears saying, "Go and tell that idol that you call God to fix your ears." When the servant-boy realized what had happened [A 250] he started screaming and the people charged and fell upon Sayyid. Sayyid thrashed eighteen of them in a minute, but the servant-boy rushed to the padishah and reported the developments.

The padishah became very upset, and came over at the scene. He saw that whoever dared to punch Sayyid did not stand for much longer: he had killed a great many people and had injured and exhausted even more. He shouted, "Come on, throw arrows at him" and they showered him with arrows. Sayyid was injured and lost a lot of blood. Evening came

and it became dark and one could no longer tell enemy from friend, so Sayyid got himself out of the battle scene and walked to a deserted place and collapsed at the foot of a wall.

Meanwhile on this side, they lit torches but however much they looked for Sayyid, they could not find him. The padishah was amazed and came back to his palace. He had a vizier called Bahnam and he told him, "Vizier, who was that? Was he a demon or a winged fairy? I've never seen someone like that in my life. I wonder where he might have gone now- if only I could go and see what he looks like. What if you were to perform some geomancy and find him tonight?"

That evening the vizier saw the prophet in his dream: he came in front of Him and accepted the faith and became a Muslim. Then the prophet said, "Bahnam, keep this in mind: the person who came and fought during the day is My dear beloved [A 251] and he is lying injured at such and such a ruin. Go and get him with your son and bring him within the city walls and look after him if you don't want to be deprived of my intercession." The vizier woke up and the inside of his house was filled with the scent of musk and amber and he himself was beaming with light. It was at that moment that the boy named Manas stepped in and said, "Father, I saw the prophet in my dream last night and he said 'That brave young man that was waging battle yesterday, he's my son'" The son had exactly the same vision as his father and he reported it. The vizier also reported what he had seen himself seen, and the two of them got up and came to the city's gate. As soon as they tried to break the lock open with a hatchet the key appeared in their hands. They opened the gate and went out.

They came to the place where Sayyid was lying and saw that he had used a stone as a pillow and was sound asleep, whining. They came forth and presented their greetings and said, "How are you, son of the Apostle of God?" Sayyid got up and said, "Who are you and how did you know that I am the Apostle's son?" so they told Sayyid the story of how they had seen the prophet in their dreams. Then they lead him in the city and took care of his wounds, bundled them up and sprinkled flower oil over them. Sayyid had something to eat and then lied down and slept.

In the morning he woke up and saw that his body was healed and healthy. Delighted and without pain anywhere he was grateful and got up [A 252] and performed his ablutions and prayer. The vizier came and saw Sayyid healed and his faith was strengthened. He said, "Lord, with your permission, let me go to the padishah, he might just also rescue himself from the darkness and God the Almighty might show him the right path."

So he came over to the Shah and Mihrasp said, "Vizier, did you do any geomancy last night? Did you learn what the condition of that person is?" The vizier said, "My lord, I

did perform some geomancy indeed and saw that this fellow's fortune is extremely impressive: I saw a magnificent man of noble birth. It would be very strange indeed if he isn't an offspring of the prophet." Mihrasp said, "What's the religion of Mohammed like?" The vizier answered, "Shah, they worship the God who created heaven and earth" and the shah was puzzled, "Didn't my icon create the heavens and the earth?" The vizier answered, "Shah, anyone can make this icon, God is the one who created all the objects, he has no beginning and no end. This idol may be smashed by anyone, but the Lord is he who can reach everyone but no-one can touch him with his hands. Mohammed is his servant and also his Apostle. The magnificent Koran was spread by him." The shah said, "Vizier, what strange words you've spoken. If only I could find that man and ask him right there and saw for myself what sort of things he would say."

The vizier sent his son who fetched Sayyid to Mihrasp. The vizier rose from his place and introduced Sayyid. Sayyid presented his greetings, they prepared a place for him [A 253] and he sat down. He raised his head and said, "Shah, if you knew one of your servants and touched him with your hands ever since he was young, and if you spent a lot of wealth for him, and then that servant turned away from you at the end and entered into a padishah's service and never remembered you, what would you do to him if you ever got hold of him?" , "I would spill his blood" replied the Shah and Sayyid said, "Then why did you abandon God the Blessed and the Almighty -may His glory be exalted- who created you out of earth and bestowed kingship upon you and gave you health to enjoy and plenty of privileges? You turned your face away from him and do not ever remember him in prayer. Instead, there is an object you could yourself fabricate and break with your own hands; if a person were to throw a stone at it, it would not be able to ward it off, or if someone were to dump it on a rubbish heap it would stay there and rot and decay. How could such an object be worthy of deity so that you might worship it?" When Mihrasp heard these words from Sayyid he was amazed and said, "Young man, what strange words you've spoken! Well, let us bring that idol and let us see what sort of things it will say."

He ordered his servants and they fetched the idol. An idol dressed in wonderful clothes, made of red gold and smeared with perfumes and with a veil of red atlas over its face. When they brought it in all the begs and Mihrasp walked up to it and rubbed their faces on the earth. When they lifted the veil from its face Sayyid noticed that its eyes were made from jewels, its lips from rubies, its teeth from pearls; [A 254] it was hollow and stuffed with musk and amber. Mihrasp started saying, "Worshipped idol, I have been worshipping you and prostrating in front of you for so many years and now this person here came and wants to stop me. He says 'This worship of yours is disbelief.' So what do you say, what should our answer be?" As soon as Mihrasp reported this the idol moved



and trembled and let a cry, "Battal the slaughterer, you good-for-nothing trickster, first you ruined the province of Rûm, now you came here asking to have me destroyed as well." When Sayyid heard words like this he recited the throne chapter of the Koran and hit the idol. With God's power the idol lost its voice and started trembling. Then suddenly there was a scream and its face dropped and was smashed. From every little piece there came the words, "There is no God but God and Mohammed is His Apostle." When Mihrasp saw what happened, he told the vizier, "What did this person say and my idol became like this?" The vizier said, "He recited the name of God and the idol was voided." Mihrasp said, "Then it is evident that this person's religion is the true one." The servant-boy was there and he fell to Sayyid's feet and said, "Whatever it was that you read to the idol, recite it in my ear as well." Sayyid placed his mouth on his ear and recited the opening chapter of the Koran. With the help of God [A 255] his ear was fixed and Mihrasp's faith was strengthened. The people and the begs were amazed. Sayyid said, "What more do you want? Accept the faith and become Muslims at once." Mihrasp said, "I do have one more problem." Sayyid said, "What is it?" He said, "I had a daughter and a demon captured her and made her his prisoner. If you liberate my daughter and bring her to me I will become Muslim with my whole province and realm and I will be your servant until I die." Sayyid said, "Where is that demon? Assign a guide to show me the way." The vizier Bahnam said, "I can take you there but there are two *zangis* on the way, they call one of them Anjaf and the other Azraf, and, also, that demon is quite scary." Sayyid said, "Come with me and you have nothing to fear."

The vizier and Sayyid both set out and on the fourth day they reached a certain place and Bahnam said, "Lord, this is the place of that ZAngi I mentioned." Sayyid said, "May God lead us right." Right that moment there came a loud voice, "Hey what sort of people hungry for their own blood are you? Not even birds cross over here out of their scare." Sayyid took a look and saw a black creature forty cubits tall who had pierced through a stone and fixed it on a tree and had made a huge truncheon out of it. Sayyid gave his horse to the vizier and walked up against Anjaf. While he was standing there he took his truncheon and hurled it at Sayyid. Sayyid jumped high [A 256] and landed behind him. The truncheon landed on the ground and made a hole as if by a watermill. The vizier sighed, "Alas, this gentle soul has been smashed under this terrible truncheon" and gave up hope for his own life. Sayyid gave a war-cry from behind and before Anjaf turned he punched him so hard under the lobe of the ear that he collapsed on his head seven steps further. Before he managed to get up Sayyid jumped on his chest and grabbed his beard in his hand and put the dagger at his throat. Anjaf opened his eyes and said, "Who are you and what's your name? How did you manage to bring down a dragon like myself with just

one punch?" Sayyid introduced himself and said, "Become a Muslim." Anjaf asked for mercy and protection and became a Muslim and a servant to Sayyid. Then he said, "Brave warrior, what are you doing here?" Sayyid told him Mihrasp's story and Anjaf said, "Lord, the Qari Div is quite evil, unless of course God provides His grace."

They spent the night there and the following day Anjaf said, "I have a brother down the road, let's hope he'll join us." He showed Sayyid the way and they took off. They went for another three days and on the fourth day they reached Azraf. His fate was exactly the same as Anjaf, and he also pierced his ear and passed the ring of serfdom through it. He became Sayyid's servant and a Muslim. He brought some game meat and offered his hospitality to Sayyid. Sayyid on his part [A 257] told him his own situation and Azraf said, "Lord, the Qari Div is an evil cursed wretch." Then he showed him the way and they took off. All along the vizier was reciting prayers thanking and praising Sayyid.

They went for seven days and on the eighth day they came to a fortress and Sayyid saw that it was like a white egg. Till the evening they reached it and saw that it was made of white marble, its turret reaching high in the sky. When he came close he saw that a maiden who looked like the shining moon was standing in front of the tower. When she saw Sayyid she said, "He spoke the truth, Apostle of God; Welcome to you Sayyid Battal Ghazi, and to you Bahnam," and rushed downstairs. She opened the gate and fell to Sayyid's feet imploring, "Brave warrior, you must cut this wretch's head off and rescue all the prisoners that he's keeping." Sayyid wondered, "How did you recognize me, lady?" The maiden answered, "I am the daughter of the Padishah of Qirwan, and I have been a prisoner here for seven years. Despair filled my heart and I shed a lot of tears. But then I saw the lord of lords, the Apostle of God, and he told me 'Do not cry, for tomorrow my son Sayyid Ghazi is coming here. Show him where the Qari Div lives for he must kill her'." Sayyid heard these news and was amazed.

The maiden led the way and they entered the city and came to the palace. They went up forty steps and went through seven backdrops before they got there. [A 258] Sayyid noticed that there were four masterly built raised platforms and a throne of Solomon erected on them with alcoves on either side full of gold and silver. Sayyid said, "Where is he now?" and the maiden answered, "There's an opening right here under the throne, and the wretched dog always comes and goes down in this well, but I do not know what he does there." Sayyid got under the throne and saw that it was a cave and there was a hanging ladder, forty feet long. He held the ladder and went down. He rested for a moment and saw nothing but darkness. When his eyes got used to it he noticed a gallery opening up. He walked straight to it until he got to a gate. He opened the gate and looked and saw an open sea stretching out beyond what the eye could see. Sayyid fell in despair and stood

there helpless. He said to himself, "If I go back now they'll say 'He got scared of the demon and could not make it.'"

He prayed for help for a while and suddenly there was great turbulence in the sea and a fish as big as a whole mountain appeared. It came out to the shore and greeted Sayyid in the eloquent language and said, "Sayyid, I am that fish in whose stomach Jonah spent forty days. My inside is full of praises and celebrations of God and through his blessed influence I became the leader of all the fish. One day a voice reached me saying 'Ferry Sayyid Battal Ghazi across the water, he has to kill the Qari Div.' Come on now, hop on my back and let me ferry you across to the other side." [A 259] Sayyid was delighted, hopped on the fish's back and they took off.

They came to an island. There the fish got back into the sea and Sayyid set out on inland. He saw a pavilion far away and came up to it and saw there was a gate. He opened that gate and followed the stairs upstairs where he found a palace. Eighteen maidens sitting around, everyone's face pale with fear of the demon. When the maidens saw Sayyid they came up to him and said, "Who are you and what are you doing here?" Sayyid said, "I came to kill the Qari Div and rescue you from her tyranny." They said, "The Qari Div is not the way you've imagined her: as soon as you see her face you loose your breath." While these ones were chatting like this there was a great noise and there came the sound of the demon's footsteps.

The storytellers say that when these maidens heard the footsteps of the demon they fell on the ground face downwards. Sayyid saw that the Qari Div had appeared: she had the head of a pig, the ears of an elephant, the paws of a lion, the legs of a bull and the tail of a dragon. She was holding two lions in her hands and when she arrived she crushed them in her hands and smashed them into pieces. She shouted once with a scary voice, "So Battal, you've come hoping to kill me? Watch now [A 260] what I am going to do to you." She had pierced a rock big as a mountain and slipped it on a pine tree, so she reached and grabbed it and hurled it at Sayyid. Sayyid sprung to the side and that huge mace landed on the earth and sank deep in it. The demon screamed, "Battal, this is what you deserve now." Sayyid gave a thunderous cry from behind her and before the demon could turn and say, "Hey aren't you dead yet?" Sayyid hit her with the sword of Zahhak under her arm and cut her into two like a fresh cucumber. There came a voice, "If you are a man, let's have another blow!" and Sayyid said, "You cursed wretch, this was more than enough for you."

After a moment the maidens regained their consciousness and as soon as they saw that the Qari Div was lying in two pieces they fell to Sayyid's feet. Sayyid flayed the demon's scalp, converted the maidens to Islam and lead them to the waterfront. Then that fish appeared again, and with a show of force ferried Sayyid and the maidens back to the

previous place. Said the fish, "Sayyid, I have something to ask of you. When you visit the tomb of the Apostle, give him my regards so that he doesn't forget me on Judgment Day." Sayyid accepted and the fish disappeared. Sayyid followed that pitch dark path again and came out through the ladder.

Bahnam had sat down in despair, wondering what might have happened to Sayyid. [A 261] Then Sayyid appeared with the eighteen maidens and the scalp of the demon and the vizier was delighted. He fell to Sayyid's feet and said, "Brave warrior, nobody has been able to do anything like what you've accomplished. You've been a divine mercy for this province. This clime has been rescued from the evil of this cursed wretch. Your name will be in everyone's mouth until Judgment Day, they will hear it in all climes and rejoice." Sayyid said, "What shall we do, we need horses." While Sayyid was pacing up and down he noticed a door. He opened it and entered into a green meadow where four hundred horses were galloping, Ashqar among them. Sayyid was delighted and Ashqar came up to him and neighed gently to him. Sayyid kissed him in the eyes and the vizier was amazed. They came and took whatever they could from those goods, the eighteen maidens mounted and they took them to Azraf. Azraf also fell to Sayyid's feet and rejoiced. He saw the demon's scalp on the lance and was amazed. His eyes fell upon the daughter of the Shah of Cashmere and he asked Sayyid for her hand. The maiden also took a liking to him.

Then they came to Anjaf, and he also fell in love with the daughter of the Shah of Qirwan, and Sayyid betrothed her to him. Then he sent the vizier ahead saying, "Go and deliver our news to Mihrasp." The vizier came to Tantaniya and informed [A 262] Mihrasp and they rejoiced. That evening rich and poor came out to meet Sayyid. Mihrasp came up to him and fell to his feet and said, "May God return you the favor of the goodness you did to us." They brought him to the city and hung the demon's head from the tower. They sent for those padishahs whose daughters had fallen prisoner and they came to collect their daughters and look at the demon's head. The begs of eighteen cities gathered and became Muslims before Sayyid. Their provinces and districts all became Muslim. They betrothed those two maidens to two brave warriors and they were delighted.

The vizier came to Sayyid and said, "God's Lion, everyone's wish has been granted, but I myself have one more request, please grant it." Sayyid said, "What is your request?" and he said, "My son Ma'as and the daughter of Mihrasp are in love. Couldn't you ask this favor from Mihrasp so that they get what they are entitled to. Sayyid passed on the news to Mihrasp and he ordered right on the spot and they assigned a dowry for Ma'as. Then after seven days of festivities, they gave the maiden to Ma'as in marriage.

Then Sayyid said, "I came to this clime on account of the white elephant, so tell me now where he is and give me a guide." Mihrasp said, "He's with the Sultan of Haylan, and

you can get there in seven days. He's an idolater and a bitter enemy of mine." Sayyid said, "I am going to him right now." [A 263] Mihrasp said, "Let me come along and get an army together." Sayyid said, "Don't bother, I love marching on my own, you just wish me the grace of God, and keep your ears and eyes open for me." He saddled his horse, bid them farewell and off he went.

He went for seven days and on the eighth day he got to a hill and looked down. He saw two armies facing each other. One army had two hundred thousand men and the other eighty thousand. This small army were all Muslims and the cry, "*God is Great*" echoed for many miles. Sayyid saw a person standing by, so he stepped forward and greeted him and said, "What's this army?" The other person answered, "One of them is the Sultan of Egypt -there is an Egypt over here as well- and he is called Padishah Qaysar. Then there is Haylan, an idolater who has tried to oust Qaysar out of his district. But Qaysar has gathered his army, so here they are ready to fight."

An infidel got in the battlefield from Haylan and martyred seventeen Muslims. A brave young man called Khalid entered the battlefield and thrashed that cursed wretch. Then Qalun the Indian entered the battlefield and killed Khalid. He cut his stomach open and took out his liver and ate it in front of the believers. Sayyid could not bear this any longer and he entered the battlefield. He gave such a terrifying war-cry, it was as if the seven heavens had collapsed into each other. Fear settled over the two armies, "What sort of thunderbolt was that?" they said. He came up to Qalun [A 264] and said, "Hey you cursed wretch, does one ever eat a man's heart?" The cursed wretch advanced to attack and Sayyid opposed him with the lance of Janduwal. He hit him and flames came out of it and burned Qalun along with his elephant. One after the other he burned sixty people. No-one else entered the battlefield. When Sayyid saw that nobody else was coming to challenge him, he charged against the enemy army. He smashed that army against one another and the blood flowed like a flood. Evening came along and that army withdrew, so Sayyid took the mountain road and rode away. The two armies were bewildered and wondered, "Who could that person be who came and did such great things?"

Sayyid came up to the mountain and put Ashqar away somewhere and he came over to the Qaysar. He saw that the begs were sitting all around him and were talking about Sayyid, "Was that person a demon or was he a winged fairy? He came today and offered such good help to the Muslims." Qaysar said, "If he ever comes our way, I'm offering him my throne and crown. Why, I'm sure, this guy is either an angel or a winged fairy. Help has come to us from God."

Then Sayyid came to the tent of Haylan and saw something very strange: Haylan was a tall black person, his head on a level with the tent's roof. He was sitting there

prostrating in front of an idol. He was crying saying, "My worshipped idol, I've been worshipping you for so long and today a person [A 265] came and burned so many of my begs. I do not know whether he is a demon or a winged fairy, but if he comes again to the battlefield tomorrow how shall I answer him?" Right then Sayyid said, "You must show some skill right now!" and got the lance of Janduwal in his hands. It's inside was hollow and as soon as it touched Haylan, he went up in flames. He screamed and took off his clothes. He dropped them on top of the idol and it too caught fire and burned. Sayyid slipped outside and set every tent he came upon ablaze. He gave a war-cry three times in a row and the army turned against itself: they put their swords to use till the morning and killed each other. In the light of day they saw that there was no enemy amongst them: fathers had killed their sons and brothers their own brothers. Haylan was in despair and furious.

They saddled that huge white elephant and decorated him with all the accoutrements of war and he marched against Qaysar. Qaysar had been informed of their slaughter and was pleased and happy, only they did not know what sort of a victory it was and what the trouble had been. Haylan aimed for the battlefield and Sayyid immediately rolled down from the mountain and came up against him. Someone from the army of caesar came up to Sayyid and said, "Brave warrior, I have been a Sunni Muslim for four hundred years. Back at the time when the Commander of the faithful Ali -may God grace his face- came to this area, he fought on the back of this elephant here for forty nine days with the father of the caesar, Anqa the Indian. [A 266] Anqa became a Muslim under the hand of the lion of God himself. It was Ali who offered this elephant to Anqa the Indian. Now Haylan had a fore-father called Mangush the Indian who was an idolater, and he killed Anqa and took the elephant. It has come down as inheritance to Haylan from his grandfathers." When Sayyid heard these words from that Indian elder he turned towards the elephant and said, "World-touring elephant, I am the son of that person who fought ghazas on your back for forty nine days. If you are a true lover and beloved be a friend and obey me." Right that moment, the elephant, thanks to the power the power of God, got irritated and shook so violently it threw Haylan down on the ground. Then it reached and picked him up with its trunk and whisked him in the air. [A 267]

Empty place for miniature.

He crashed on the ground and was smashed into smithereens. The elephant rushed and stepped over him and he disappeared under its paws. Then the elephant came and rubbed his face on the ground in front of Sayyid. Sayyid dismounted and jumped on the elephants

back. Then he gave a war-cry loud as a thunder and charged in attack. When Haylan's son saw the condition of his father the army broke its ranks and took to fleeing.

On the other side the caesar also charged in attack and his army killed sixty thousand infidels. In the midst of battle, Sayyid captured Haylan's son and brought him back. The caesar and his begs came up to Sayyid and kissed his hands and feet. They saw Haylan's son Hindi and were pleased. They said, "Lord, who are you, how are you called?" and Sayyid explained his situation to Qaysar. They made Haylan's son a Muslim and betrothed him Qaysar's daughter. Hindi gave that white elephant to Sayyid and the caesar also offered a thousand loads of gold and silver, a hundred slaves and a hundred slave-girls, as well as plenty of gold and silver and horses and other objects.

Sayyid brought them with him to Mihrasp. Mihrasp came out to meet him and offered many praises. He entertained him with festivities for seven days and he also presented him with much wealth and sent him off after preparing the ships.

The went for seven days in the sea and on the eighth day they reached a shore and disembarked. Sayyid said, "What is this place, I wonder?" They got out of the boat and settled on the waterfront to rest. Then they found a person who was leading a couple of oxen [A 268] and they asked him. "This is Antioch, and that over there is the road to Malatya" he told them. And so they took that road and came to Malatya. Sayyid came first and saw that the city had been destroyed and leveled to the ground. There were no two stones left together and nobody to be seen. Sayyid walked through the gardens bewildered and he found someone called Abu'l-Fath Ahangar and he asked him about what had happened. He said, "As soon as you went to India the caesar got word of it and he marched with two hundred thousand infidels. The friends turned away from Amir Umar and they dispersed saying 'You've wasted such a leader on account of such a trivial/worldly affair.' As for Amir Umar, he also did not stay, he sought refuge in the castle of Turman. The caesar made the city like this, he killed everyone he found, destroyed it and left."

Sayyid gave the order and they pitched their tents in front of the city and camped. He sent a message to Amir Umar and he came and fell to Sayyid's feet. The friends also left what they were doing and came out and exchanged greetings with Sayyid. They saw the white elephant and all that money and were amazed. They rubbed their faces on the ground and prayed for Sayyid. Amir Umar started crying and said, "Sayyid, the maiden that I betrothed to you has been taken prisoner." Sayyid was disappointed and said, "I am going to Rûm. Meanwhile, get going and rebuild the city with the wealth that I have brought. [A 269] Make her even more beautiful than before!" He changed his clothes,

mounted his horse and set out in the direction of Rûm. He asked about in seventy two castles and sixteen cities but found no news of her.

Then he came to the city of Lataqiya and saw a big commotion. He put his horse somewhere and came by himself to the city. He asked someone, "What's all this fuss about?" and the other person said, "When the caesar went and ruined Malatya, he took a wife of Battal prisoner there and he betrothed her to the son of his vizier, Bahnam. Well now they are having the wedding and this evening he is to take the bride." Sayyid saw for himself that the groom had taken the bride in the midst of great celebrations and was drawing near -in other words they were going around the castle to get her to her bridal chambers. So they passed in front of Sayyid and the maiden's eyes fell upon Sayyid. He grinded his teeth and said to himself, "Be patient and do not rush!" The maiden passed and left, the groom always behind her. Sayyid took a step forward and recited a praise in the manner of Rûm and it pleased Bahnam so that he said, "Take this young man and bring him inside the castle." Then he asked Sayyid, "What's your name?" and he answered, "My name is Abdu'l-Masih."

They brought the bride to her chambers and then the servants started celebrating. One of them said, "Cheers to Battal's blindness" Another one said, "Don't talk nonsense, why are you saying such vain things?" and yet another said, "Why, are you Battal or someone from his family?" [A 270] The other person said, "How could I be Battal? I am Walid, the son of Uqba the Judge, yet I keep reading in the books that whenever Battal's name is mentioned, it means he's present there." Sayyid heard these words and as soon as Walid finished what he had to say and got up and left, he went after him. Walid looked back and recognized Sayyid. He fell to his feet and said, "Brave warrior, I am a Muslim, I am your servant, take me and lead me to the realm of Islam." Sayyid said, "Show me some candidness so that I may see that you are faithful and believe you." Walid said, "How do you mean?" Sayyid said, "I would like to get hold of the maiden and also do away with the son of the vizier." Walid said, "Leave this to me! Come along with me now!" and he lead Sayyid to the palace. He left Sayyid out on the street and went inside on his own. He saw that the vizier's son was asleep and he cut his head off and brought it to Sayyid who exclaimed, "But where's the maiden?" Walid said, "She was not there. She may have gone out in the garden."

While these two were talking the maiden recognized Sayyid's voice and came over and fell at his feet. They exchanged greetings with Sayyid and collected whatever they could find that was valuable, gold and silver. Then they found three horses, the maiden mounted one of them, Walid the other and they loaded the goods on the third. They turned towards Malatya and they reached the city on the eleventh day. The friends came out to



meet them and they greeted [A 271] Sayyid and then Walid. They celebrated for seven days and keeping their promise they betrothed Amir Umar's daughter to Sayyid and his wish was fulfilled. After a few days he also sent that white elephant along with plenty of goods to the caliph as a present. The caliph was glad and he again sent robes of honor and praise letters to Sayyid.

Well, so it was that Malatya was built even more beautiful and all the Muslims that there were they all prayed for Sayyid, and things remained like that for a while.

CHAPTER FIFTEEN  
Battal in the Well of Hell  
and the Story of Katayun,  
the Daughter of the Caesar.

The story tellers tell the story that one day Walid came into Sayyid's house and saw Sayyid's wife Fatima combing her hair and fell in love with her, that abject cursed dog. Several days passed after this and then one day, while they were walking together with Sayyid to the garden Walid made to go. Sayyid said, "Where are you off to?" Walid said, "I forgot your key at home." Sayyid said, "Rush and bring it at once." So he came over to the house and he said to Fatima, "Sayyid is asking for you-'let her mount and come at once' he said." The woman believed him and they rode to the outskirts of the city. Then at some deserted spot he pulled his horse's reins tight and said, "Do you know why I brought you out here?" She said, "No" and he said, "I fell in love with you and I am enamored with you. Now you must fulfill my desire." [A 272] She said, "You useless dog son, have you gone mad? What is this nonsense you are talking?" But the cursed wretch went on, "Look, there's no choice: either you become one with me, or else I kill you." He got excited and the woman gave a kick to her horse and pulled herself out of Walid's hands. She turned her horse away and left at once. Walid started after her. As she was fleeing away she went flying over a river inlet with her horse. She collapsed on her way down and was smashed to pieces. When the cursed wretch saw her he sighed loudly, "Now, even if I were to fly as a bird I would not escape from Battal," and headed straight for Rûm.

Meanwhile Sayyid waited until the early evening prayer, then he saw that there was no sign of anyone coming and fear came to his heart. He came over to his house and did not find his wife. , "Where is she?" he said and they said, "Well didn't you summon her to the garden? Walid came to fetch her." Sayyid sighed loudly and said, "That cursed wretch has returned to his original faith." He followed his traces and he came to the place where

she was lying next to her horse. The town was informed and Amir Umar with the ladies came and put her in a coffin. They brought her to the city and buried her. Sayyid changed his clothes right after and set out towards Rûm.

It was heavy winter and it was snowing. He came up to a village and a young man came out to meet him. He fell at Sayyid's feet saying, "Shah, aren't you Battal Ghazi?" Sayyid said, "How did you recognize me?" and he said, "I saw Mohammed Mustafa in my dream [A 273] and he told me about you. My name is Qays, I am a merchant from Baghdad and I fell in love with the daughter of a priest. I stayed six months by her side until one day Tanos the priest came to me and said 'What have you been doing here for six months? You don't have anything to do around here, so get out.' So I presented my situation to him and he told me 'Come and enter my religion and I shall betroth my daughter to you.' I was burning with love for this girl so I confessed -only in words- and he gave me his daughter. Then, after my great insistence, she also became Muslim and I had two children by her. The Apostle also said 'Sayyid is coming looking for the son of Uqba.' Indeed Walid stayed one night with us and then left." Then he took Sayyid and brought him to his house and gave him to eat. Sayyid spend that night there.

The following morning he left his clothes and horse over there, put on his monk clothes and off he went. He came to that monastery -it was already dark and it was snowing hard. A monk saw him from the monastery's roof and said to Walid, "Good grief, the Messiah has sent us a guest." When Walid took a look he recognized Sayyid and screamed saying, "This is Battal." Sayyid came near and said to the other monk, "What are you standing there for? Open this gate, I am already dead cold." The monk said, "Battal, there's no entrance for you here." Sayyid said, "Hey, do I look like Battal? [A 274] I am a poor old monk looking for help." The other monk said, "Get away from here or there'll be trouble: I will drop a stone on your head." Sayyid saw that the monk was not about to soften up so he recited several verses from the Bible. The monk heard him and was amazed. He said, "Walid, what grave sins you've made me commit: this fellow is the Messiah himself!" However much Walid insisted shouting, "Don't open the door," the monk did not listen to him and rolled downstairs, opened the gate and threw himself at Sayyid's feet begging for pardon.

They came inside and lit a fire and gave Sayyid food to eat. They ate and then he said, "Forgive us, but Battal has scared us so much that we think everyone is Battal." After a while Sayyid loosened his belt and the monk saw that he was wearing a Muslim belt underneath. He sighed and murmured to himself, "Good God, if I get out of this, I probable won't die soon!"

Conclusion of the twenty-second session.

Uqba's son hid himself somewhere in a corner of the monastery. When Sayyid asked for some water, the monk said, "Well, the funny thing is our water is right outside the monastery and I am afraid to go out you see..." Sayyid said, "Let me get outside and perform my ablutions and prayer and have a good little drink as well." He went outside and the monk [A 275] fastened the gate behind him. Sayyid came and performed his ablutions and prayer, drank from the water but when he came to go back inside he found the gate closed. All his clothes were inside, he was just wearing a shirt and his cap. He banged on the gate and the monk came to the roof of the monastery and said, "You slaughterer Battal, you came here with your tricks to do some evil, but yes, it was the Messiah himself who came to my rescue and protected me from you evil." Sayyid said, "Hey, I am not who you think I am" but it was to no avail. Walid came along and started hurling stones and talked a lot of nonsense. It was cold and snowing and raining and Sayyid was barefooted. He said, "God my lord, where's your divine grace now?" and started carrying large stones, moving them around from here to there. He did this without stopping until dawn. He was exhausted. As for the monastery, it was like a fortress with a huge iron gate closed locked.

When dawn broke Sayyid came and collapsed at the bottom of the monastery's walls and lied down. The monk looked from the top and saw that Sayyid was lying down and he said, "Hey look, Battal has died" He informed Walid, and he came, had a look and said, "It's all faked, he's such a trickster." The monk said, "Hey are you mad? He died from the cold." There was a stone next to them and the two of them picked it up and hurled it down on Sayyid. Sayyid saw the stone rushing down and recited the prayer of the prophet Khidr. [A 276] The stone fell and landed on his stomach and he sprang and rolled down. Sayyid did not move at all, God the Almighty had protected him. Walid said, "Here, did you see that? Now he's dead. Quickly let's go and cut his head and send to the caesar as a gift." They came down and opened the gate, but Sayyid got up and grabbed the monk by the beard. The cursed Walid ran away. Sayyid tied the monk up and came inside where he saw a fire burning so he came and warmed himself. He put on his clothes and looked for Walid in the monastery but did not find him. Then he got to the roof of the monastery and saw Walid from afar, running away. He shouted, "You base wretched dog, where do you think you could escape from my hands?" Then he rolled down and invited the monk to the faith but it was to no avail so he cut his head off.

He gathered all he could from the monastery and came out to Qays and told him the whole story of the monk and Qays was amazed. He gave those goods to Qays and then he mounted and set out after Walid. He got to a fountain and saw a person sleeping. It was no other than Uqba's son and he grabbed him by the throat. Walid opened his eyes and

saw Sayyid and screamed, "For God's sake, I made a mistake and look at the fortune that's awaiting me." Sayyid seized him at once and tied him up around a tree. , "I must bring you to the city alive so that I can torture you too the way I tortured your father" he said [A 277] and got up to perform his prayer.

While he was praying two lions came out and attacked his horse that fled into a valley. Sayyid concluded his evening prayer and then he entered that valley looking for his horse. Suddenly someone on horseback appeared holding a lion by its breast as if it were a cat, gave Sayyid an angry look, passed in front of him and went away.

Meanwhile a caravan passed by. They saw Walid and said, "Who are you?" Walid said, "I am a merchant and a bunch of robbers got hold of me and took all my goods and left me like that." The merchants' inside burned with sympathy and they untied the dirty wretch. They let him free and he ran away.

As for Sayyid, he looked for his horse but did not find it and came back and saw that the dirty wretch had run away. He sighed and hit the road again. On the way he saw a thousand people going somewhere. He asked one of them, "Where are these people going?" and he answered, "They are men of the Shah Bidrun. There's a beg called Khusraw who has a daughter called Adan-Banu the lion killer. This woman claims that, "Only he who brings me down is worthy of me", and it is to her that Bidrun is going. Indeed he saw a dream last night that Battal is coming and will make him a Muslim and give Adan to him. Sayyid was bewildered so he followed them. They came to a castle and he walked up to it and saw again someone on horseback holding a lion. The rider came near and Sayyid saw it was the same person as the day before. Sayyid said, "Come on young man, [A 278] let me see what sort of a fighter you are." The other person let the lion loose and drew his sword and charged. Sayyid warded him off with his hand but the other got furious and spurred his horse against him. Then Sayyid punched the horse so hard that it collapsed. But that person jumped down, tucked his dress on his belt and marched forth and grabbed Sayyid by the cummerbund in order to throw him down, only was unable to move him. Sayyid used all his power and threw that person on the ground and his face was exposed. Sayyid looked and saw that it was a lovely maiden without equal in the world. Sayyid pulled himself back and the maiden got up and put her head on Sayyid's foot. Sayyid realized that it was Adan-Banu. She said, "Please accept me. I am the daughter of Hamiran and have killed plenty of people in my life." Sayyid answered, "I cannot accept you. In fact Bidrun has seen me in his dream and I am supposed to give you to him."

While these two were talking like this Sayyid saw that his horse had appeared. He became busy with it, but meanwhile the maiden grabbed her own horse and rode away.

Sayyid held his horse and mounted. Then he came into the city and saw that there were three different armies encamped. The following morning the drums rolled and Hamiran with fifty thousand mounted and turning his back to the city prepared the battlefield. Then there came Adan-Banu from the city along with a hundred Amazons, all dressed in gold and entered the battlefield. She played polo with her Amazons and rushed about with their horses. Then the Amazons withdrew and she [A 279] remained alone.

Hamiran sent his attendants and said, "My darling here you are, it is well known that there is no warrior like you. Come on now show some magnanimity and choose one of these begs and rescue me from all this terrible fuss." The maiden said, "Not a chance! It must absolutely be someone who will defeat me." She made a display of her skills and asked for a challenger. The son of the king of the Franks (*mālik*), Toma, entered the battlefield and charged. She threw him down with a blow of the lance and then got down and cut his head off. Following him there entered the king Janik and she also killed him. Bidrun saw her and made for the battlefield. He came forth and presented his greetings. He said, "I am the son of your paternal uncle and I have a lot of wealth." The maiden said, "I do not need any wealth, what I need is a man to defeat me. If you are a man let me see your skill, but be aware that I will do to you exactly what I have done to all the rest." They attacked one another and she lifted Bidrun from the saddle and threw him on the ground. Sayyid saw that and gave such a war-cry that the army tumbled over. He rushed in and hit her so hard with the back of his foot that she collapsed on the ground seven steps farther away. The maiden realized that it was the fellow from the day before. Bidrun came up to Sayyid and rubbed his face on the ground and said, "Who are you, and what sort of a person are you?" Sayyid said, "I am that person who appeared in your dream, I am Sayyid Battal Ghazi. So come on, accept my religion [A 280] and I will make you fulfill your desire." The moment Bidrun heard these words he abandoned disbelief and accepted the faith and became a Muslim. They took the maiden and came to Bidrun's tent and sat down. Sayyid told the maiden, "I have given you to Bidrun, so please do not refuse and accept my word" and the maiden replied, "Whatever you say I will listen and obey." Sayyid said, "Go now to your father and explain the situation to him."

Adan-Banu came to her father and told him the whole story and he, like it or not, put on his armor and brought his daughter over to Sayyid's tent. He rubbed his face on the ground and exchanged greetings with Sayyid. Sayyid sat down and presented an exegesis of the religion and finished by saying, "What I do, I do it for the sake of religion." Hamiran said, "You speak the truth, brave warrior, but I am afraid of the caesar and that's why I don't accept your religion. I am, however, your obedient servant." Sayyid said,

"Now give your daughter to Bidrun" and he said, "Consider it done." They held a wedding and betrothed the maiden to Bidrun.

Sayyid sat at the door of the bridal chambers, and while the others went inside he remained alone and started weeping loudly. Bidrun heard this and told the maiden, "Sayyid is weeping, maybe he has a heart for you." They both went outside, rubbed their faces on the ground and said, "Lord, why are you crying?" He said, "I remembered the daughter of Taryun [A 281] and reminisced about the daughter of Amir Umar. I have been through so much trouble, and before I had my fill of them they slipped from my hands. Which one of them should I mention first? Should it be Bayda or should it be Gul-Andam?" Adan said, "Brave warrior, do not worry, for Mah-Piruz has a sister called Katayun who is without equal in the whole world. The caesar is so afraid of you that he has sent her to a place called the Castle of the Shining Stars (*Kawakib*, on an island in the middle of the sea. They have four thousand men guarding her." Sayyid said, "Show me the way to that place" and the maiden said, "I will get you there. In fact I shall not fulfill my desire with Bidrun until you have fulfilled yours with her." She described that woman so beautifully that Sayyid fell in love with her without having laid eyes upon her. Then she said, "My father always sends me there with gifts and I am always shameless when I am with her." "That would be nice" said Sayyid and the three of them mounted at once and set out for the sea shore.

There was a deserted castle there and they hid their horses. They found a boat and got in it. By noon prayer time they had reached the castle. Sayyid had disguised himself like a monk and he told Adan, "As soon as we get there you are to tell him that a respectable Magian from Mt. Lebanon has come and speaks wonderful and marvelous things to my father. He recites the Bible in a beautiful voice and offers beautiful commentary as well. [A 282] My father has sent him for you to see for yourself, and for your heart's entertainment.' Tell him that and there is the hope that he will summon me."

Adan left and came over to Katayun. Katayun on her part came out to meet her and they exchanged greetings. Then Adan told her what Sayyid had said and she was pleased and said, "What are you standing around here for? Bring him over at once." She came and took Sayyid and left Bidrun by the boat. Sayyid came and saw that four thousand men were protecting the castle out of fear of Sayyid. Sayyid came into the presence of Katayun and saw her sitting on the throne as beautiful as the moon. Sayyid had not seen a beautiful woman like this before in his life, and he almost went out of his mind, only with great effort did he manage to keep his senses. Katayun got up and came over to meet Sayyid and kissed his hand and welcomed him. They made place for him and they all sat down. Sayyid opened his mouth and spoke about spiritual knowledge and Katayun was amazed.

Then he bent his knee and recited several verses of the Bible in the *maqam* of Husayn with a melodic voice.

You should see now how deeply Katayun fell in love with Sayyid. She told Adan, "You always used to come and bring gifts, but never one like this one," and she congratulated her, "What a fine handsome young man he is. Well done to the mother who gave birth to him." Then she turned towards Sayyid, "So many men protect me in this castle and I still cannot sleep out of fear of Battal." Sayyid said, "What sort of a person is Battal?" and Katayun said [A 283] , "In bravery he's equal to Rustam son of Zal, in trickery he can put the whole world in a jar, and in generosity he's equal to Hatim Tay. Moreover, he's from the family of the prophet, at times he comes like a monk, at times like a messenger, he's the one who killed my father and it's out of fear of him that I think everyone I see is Battal himself." Sayyid said, "Beautiful lady, from your description he's a very special person. Isn't it a shame that they all avoid such a man and do not treat him like a decent fellow?" She said, "But he's a Muslim, the commander of the wizards (*jazus*), an enemy of the Messiah. Moreover, he has abducted one my sisters and he's sent another one to the caliph. It is out of fear for him that I came over here and made this place my home." Sayyid said, "In that case, be prudent: according to your description he's not going to just leave you alone. Surely he'll get hold of you and there will be no escaping from his hands."

When Katayun heard these words she started being suspicious and said, "It would be strange if you were not Battal." Sayyid said, "Indeed I am." Katayun panicked and lost her voice. Then she turned to Adan, "Hey, what are you holding against me that you brought my archenemy to my bedside?" Adan said , "My sweet, why are you so sad? Did you not tell me to find and bring you a handsome young man? [A 284] So here, I couldn't have found a brave warrior better and more beautiful than this one, so don't run away now, no better man is ever going to come your way." When she heard these words from Adan she wanted to scream but Sayyid was on her throat and stuffed a kerchief in her mouth. They killed the two attendants and three more people and put all the pearls and jewels in four coffers. They took everything and came to Bidrun on the seashore. They got on the boat and off they went.

Meanwhile, the despicable wretch Walid was informed of Sayyid's visit to Katayun and came over to Hamiran and told him his story. He said, "Block the roads at once, because he will not stay put until he captures Katayun, so you might just get hold of him." When Hamiran heard these tidings from Walid, his heart jumped. He wrote at once a letter to the caesar announcing the situation. When the letter came to the caesar they read it and he screamed. The vizier Yamliha said, "My lord, do not be caught at unawares, this is a

difficult task." There were two illustrious patricians there, Ilyun and Yaman. They assigned a hundred thousand men to them and sent them off at once. They came to Hamiran and he had another fifty thousand. Together they blocked the roads.

Twenty-third session

The storytellers tell the story that when Sayyid and company [A 285] got out of the boat they freed Katayun's mouth and Sayyid invited her to religion but she did not accept saying, "I am not turning away from my own religion. If you accept me as I am, fine." They brought food and they ate. Then they mounted again and when they had distanced themselves from the castle forty men on horseback became visible. Bidrun went ahead to see who they were and he looked down the valley and saw that the whole place was overflowing with soldiers. He came back immediately and informed Sayyid. They turned back and returned to the castle. They placed Katayun there and trusted Adan to guard her. Sayyid said to Katayun, "Say now, will you watch and see what I will do to the infidels for the sake of religion." Meanwhile the infidels had found about them and had armed themselves and lined up for battle.

Sayyid came down and gave a war-cry in the direction of the infidels saying, "I am Sayyid Battal Ghazi, whoever wants to die let him come to the battlefield." He made a display of military skill and the onlookers all became scared. Meanwhile Katayun and Adan were watching from the tower. Adan said, "You see what sort of a man Sayyid is? It is to such a man that you refuse to obey." Sayyid entered the battlefield and asked for a challenger but no-one dared to come forth. So he dismounted and fixed his horse's stirrups, mounted again and charged against the enemy army. [A 286] He made their blood flow like a flood and he fought till the evening and then returned back to the castle. Bidrun and Adan came to meet him and rubbed their faces on the ground and offered prayers. Sayyid took off his clothes and they washed away the human blood. He performed his ablutions and the three of them performed the prayer. They sat down and had some bread to eat and then they rubbed their faces on the ground and offered prayers. Sayyid said, "Beautiful lady did you see what one person alone did today? It's all the divine grace and the blessing of Muhammad Mustafa. Come on now, let us no longer be foreigners, let us know and see each other." Katayun said, "If you want, accept me the way I am for I am not abandoning my religion." Sayyid said, "Now you are polluted and dirty and I do not accept dirty people. Become a Muslim and cleanse yourself."

Meanwhile on this side, Hamiran and Ilyun had sat down and were talking. , "Such an army will not do against Battal" they said and they wrote again to the caesar asking for more troops. The following day the drums rolled and Sayyid entered the battlefield. Ilyun



came up to him and spoke a lot of nonsense. In the end Sayyid lifted him from his belt and threw him in the air and cut him in two pieces as he was coming down with the sword of Zahhak. One by one he thrashed seventy infidels, each with a different move. Nobody else entered the battlefield and Sayyid charged against the army. [A 287] He traversed that army nine times and crossed to the other side and just when the army was about to be broken up the Shah of Qirwan appeared with two hundred thousand infidels. It was already night time and Sayyid came back to Katayun again.

They came to meet him and offered praises. Then they sat around and performed their ablutions and prayer. Sayyid had a lot of kind words for Katayun, but to no avail. The following morning the drums rolled again and the Shah of Qirwan mounted for battle. He had with him Bahram of Qirwan and Faridun the Persian. They all mounted and lined up. Sayyid entered the battlefield and made a display of prowess. Bahram came in and fought with Sayyid, who hit him with the mace and leveled him and his horse with the ground. He thrashed thirty men and then, all at the same time the army attacked. In the midst of battle Faridun the Persian approached Sayyid from behind and injured him on the throat with the lance. Sayyid turned around and reached over and hit him once so hard with the lance that he collapsed from his horse and broke one of his thighs. That day there was an awful lot of fighting and then he came back again and Bidrun with Adan came to meet him. Sayyid sat down and they performed their prayer and then they tied up Sayyid's wound.

Sayyid said, "Beautiful lady, how can it be allowed that you may abandon God and truth and you just sit there and watch. Have you not seen how I can take on whole armies? It's all on account of the true religion. Come now, abandon disbelief and become a Muslim." The maiden said, "I am afraid you'll take me now and abandon me later." [A 288] Sayyid swore an oath, "As long as you are alive, I shall not marry anyone else." She proclaimed a fake testimony of faith and they were extremely pleased. Katayun opened one of the coffers and pulled out a hollow orange and offered it to Sayyid saying, "Whenever you get hungry or thirsty hold it over your nose." It actually was a mixture of scented poison. The moment Sayyid brought it near his nose he passed out.

Katayun came to the door. Bidrun and Adan asked, "Why have you come?" and Katayun said, "Sayyid told me 'Go and wash yourself and then come to my presence.'" Adan took her and led her to the fountain. Katayun told her, "Why don't you wait over there so that I may wash myself?" Adan came back to the city gate and Bidrun said, "Hey, why did you leave her alone? Go back to her." Adan went back but Katayun was already going along the mountain across. She sighed and came back to Bidrun and said, "Katayun pulled a trick on us and fled." Bidrun said, "Alas, what are we going to tell Sayyid?"

They came over to Sayyid and found him lying down. Adan held Sayyid's hand and said, "Brave warrior, do not sleep, open your eyes," but it was to no avail. They tried very hard but they realized Sayyid would not [A 289] wake up and they said, "That cropped-haired lady poisoned this brave man."

Meanwhile Katayun with great trouble and heart ache came down from the mountain. Aqritis, the king of Maghrib had come out in reconnaissance and saw and recognized Katayun and said, "Beautiful lady, how did you manage to escape?" She said, "Lead me to Hamiran." They pulled out a horse at once and she mounted and came to Hamiran saying, "What are you standing there for? I have poisoned Battal and he lost his senses. He's lying down and he will not regain his senses until after seven days. Go get him at once." Hamiran heard that and was pleased and he immediately ordered the army to mount.

Meanwhile on this side, Adan and Bidrun were screaming in Sayyid's ear, "Lord, Katayun has run away, get up," but however much they screamed, it was to no avail. Adan saw that the army had reached the city gates so she put on her armor at once and came down. She fought bravely and killed many opponents. Bidrun, standing next to Sayyid, saw that the enemy had found an opportunity and was screaming at Sayyid, "Brave warrior, what are you lying there for, get up!" He would lift Sayyid's head but it would just fall back again.

When Adan got tired Bidrun went into battle. She came up to Sayyid and threw cold water over him but she did not succeed, it was again to no avail.

The following morning Hamiran sent an envoy to Adan and he proclaimed, "Katayun has poisoned Battal and there is no treatment for it. So who are [A 290] you fighting for? I will not separate you from Bidrun, if you will just hand Battal over to me." Adan cut off that man's nose and ears and instructed him, "Go now and tell them that Battal is an old hand at such tricks, and we have the hope that God the Almighty will send us his grace. Now for as long as Battal is alive I am not handing over not even a hair of his."

For three days they fought and sustained injuries. They were in dire straits and came to Sayyid in tears saying, "We now leave you in God's trust." Then they came to the gate and hurled themselves on the enemy army. Fighting their way through they got on the road to Malatya and set out for it. The infidels' army came to Sayyid and found him lying down. Katayun took his arms and clothes, they fastened him on a mule and off they went. They wrote a letter to the caesar and tied Sayyid to a board and left him there. When the envoy reached the caesar and reported the tidings, the caesar took off his crown and threw it up in the air and said, "The Messiah has shown me his grace again: I will go and kill Battal, send an army down there and put the Muslims to the sword and destroy their Kaaba.

I will burn it and raze it to the ground, and I will pass a rope through their caliph's neck and parade him all over Rûm."

Meanwhile, on the seventh day in the early afternoon, Sayyid regained his senses. [A 291] He opened his eyes and saw that he was lying down on a board with his feet and hands tied up. He sighed and supplicated God saying, "Alas, I've fallen captive to the infidels. Protector of the world now I no longer have any hope from you, but grace comes only from you, and whatever has come down from you has always been well received." They informed Katayun that Sayyid had come back to his senses and the begs rushed to him with their swords unsheathed. Katayun also arrived. She lifted the veil from her face saying, "Battal, you trickster, how are you? You see, you have to grasp a clever bird by both its legs. You have read plenty of knowledge in the books but you don't know anything about a woman's deceit. Did you really never have a feeling for these things? Well, now you had done to yourself what you used to do to others. You've taken away my two little sisters and this time you made me your target but your good fortune did not help you this time. So now my father is coming and the moment he sees you he is going to kill you, so come and join my religion and save yourself, otherwise even if you have a thousand heads, not one of them will survive." Sayyid heard this but did not answer. The cursed Faridun the Persian spoke extremely ugly words to Sayyid. Sayyid gathered all his power and broke loose from the board crushing all the bonds into little crumbs. Faridun fled immediately. Sayyid thrashed fifty-sixty infidels with his fist/punch. [A 292] But he was all by himself and they rushed and fell upon him. They injured him and threw lassos so they captured and tied him up again. So many thousand people were amazed at his manhood.

Qalun and Aqritis, these fellows said, "Let's kill him" but Hamiran did not let them and said, "No, let us not kill him, let us send him to the caesar. If he wants to kill him let him do it, whatever he does, let him do it."

So they left that place and came to a castle called Suluqiya where there was a great village. They came and camped there. They tied Sayyid around a tree and Katayun pitched her tents close by. She arranged for her throne to be set up. Then she fixed herself up, sat on the throne and said, "Battal come and join our religion and rescue yourself. It will be a pity to kill a young man like you. The caesar now himself will take a look at you and show no mercy and kill you at once." Sayyid paid no attention, in fact he was silently praying and seeking the help of the Almighty God.

Afterwards the begs came over and started drinking wine and insulting Sayyid. Sayyid watched them, how they all got drunk and then went back to their tents. Exhausted and still injured, all tied up around a tree, he said, "Listen God, I am not worried about my

own death, I am only concerned lest the Muslims are trampled under the foot of the infidel." Just as he was saying that a snake that looked like a flag staff came down from the tree top. [A 293] Candles were burning and the pots were up to the top with food and those dogs were lying around drunk. Sayyid noticed that the snake ate a little from those pots, then dipped its head in one of them and went back to its place.

Now the son of the Shah of Qirwan got up and ordered his servants, "Bring me a piece of meat at once" and they all woke up from the noise. They all gathered in one place and some of them had some broth, others some meat. They were all busy eating and before an hour had gone by, Bahram started trembling and fell down. He got all swollen and died. "Hey, what happened to him?" they said and rushed over. Trembling seized the servant as well, and he also fell down dead. The storytellers say that seventy two famous begs died that night and there was great mourning and wailing amongst the remaining servants and attendants.

Katayun came from the army-camp and saw what had happened. She did have an inclination for Sayyid, so she sighed heavily. She came over to Sayyid and said, "Battal, or should I say slaughterer, you caused all of this, didn't you? You've bewitched them, come on, tell me what you've done to them." Sayyid answered, "What could I have done? If I could do something it would be to liberate myself from this torture here." Katayun got very upset. She drew her sword and hit him while he was still tied up, but thanks to the power of God the sword fell upon the [A 294] bonds and his hands were freed. He gave a war-cry once and Katayun fled. Then Qarun of Taliqan stepped forward to get hold of him but Sayyid jumped and punched him from under the throat so hard that he collapsed. Sayyid got on top of him and the others attacked him and were hitting him, some with stones and some with branches. Sayyid pressed down with both legs on one leg of Qarun and held the other leg with both hands. Then he made an effort and tore him up like some old cloth. With one half he hit Aqritis from across so hard that his chest bone was crushed and gave in and he landed on his head. Sayyid reached over to finish him off as well but they threw lassos and caught him again, injuring him in a few more places. They tied him up all drowned in red blood.

At that moment the news spread that, "Here, the Caesar of Rûm has arrived" and the begs went out to meet him. They told him the story and all the blood disappeared from his skin. He came and sat on his throne and immediately ordered, "Bring Sayyid." They went and fetched him. Sayyid saw that they had set up gallows. He took his place and the caesar said, "What are you standing there for, cut his neck at once," but his vizier Yamliha did not let him and said, "My lord, do not spill the blood of this person on the ground. Taryun burned him on fire and he did not die and came back to life, Uqba the Judge

poisoned him and he did not die, so if you now spill his blood on the earth [A 295] it will mix with it and a plant shall grow. Then a lamb shall eat this plant and whoever eats from that lamb will be overtaken by lust and from this lust Battal will come forth again." The caesar said, "Well, what should we do then? I've captured such an enemy, should I just let him go?" The vizier said, "My lord, here's where you should let him: on the mountain of Arjas there is a cave they call the cave of Hell. In the times of your forefathers there was also someone like this who kept coming back to life no matter how many times they killed him. So they went and shut him in this cave and he finally died away and the world was rescued from his sedition. That's what you should do with this one as well." They all agreed it was the proper thing to do, so here they are, they all set out and came and camped around the cave at Arjas.

Meanwhile Bidrun and Adan pressed on and came to Malatya. Amir Umar and the remaining friends were sitting around talking about Sayyid, wondering, "What do you suppose happened? Did he capture Walid? What did he do to him?" when the two leaders/captains arrived. They told them the story and the friends fell in great despair. They immediately sent Yahya b. Mansur on a spying mission.

He arrived right at the moment when thousands of people had gathered to watch while Sayyid was standing on a board above the cave and the bravos were clasping their unsheathed swords. Yahya is now watching as a guard [A 296] came to give a blow to Sayyid's neck. He wanted to hit him on the board with the sword in his hand, but Sayyid wiggled and the board turned upside down and they both went flying into the cave. The caesar gave the order and they threw so many heavy stones over him, you wouldn't be able to count them. When Yahya saw what happened he returned to Malatya and brought the news in tears.

He reported to the friends, "I saw it with my own eyes, they dropped him in the cave of Hell." The friends wailed and mourned. They kept a mourning for Sayyid and put on black again. Then Yahya told them, "Be prepared for I saw the Faghfur of Chîn marching against you with two hundred thousand men," and they despaired even more. They immediately reported the matter to the caliph. The caliph also held mourning and sent a message back, "Watch out and hold your ranks, do not be caught at unawares, and let me know as soon as there is anything new."

Meanwhile the Faghfur of Chîn sent a message to the caesar saying, "Battal has killed my son and he took a great many of my belongings. Now I have gathered an army of two hundred thousand against Islam, so if you are my friend come and let us march together and wipe all the Mohammedans of the world off the face of the earth. I am now marching against Malatya, so come there too and let us meet [A 297] and do whatever is

good for the prosperity of the Messiah." When the caesar heard this news he was pleased and said, "The army of Chîn is made up of people of the sword. Let us join forces and march together and wipe our enemies out of this world. There shall be no one to be afraid of after that."

Qirwan of the Maghrib was an old man over a hundred years old and an ugly disgusting looking old rogue. He raised his head and said, "My lord I have I wish to ask of you. Please grant it to me." The caesar said, "What sort of a wish is it?" Qirwan said, "Give me Katayun! Two of my sons sacrificed themselves for your sake and thousands of my men were killed, all of them for your sake. If you don't give me your sister now I will no longer stand by your side: may you have no safety and do nothing right." The caesar said, "Let me speak with her and see what she has to say." The caesar came to Katayun and reported the situation. Heavens did she get upset! She said, "What sort of a drone is this Qirwan of the Maghrib to take my name on his lips? Isn't he older than my own father? How could he possibly deserve to have me? Is this your way of thanking me for having handed an enemy like Battal over to you?" The caesar said, "Sweet darling, if I tell him now that I am not giving you he's going to be my enemy, so let us just pretend and laugh at his beard -he's such a silly person really." Katayun said [A 298], "Even if Qirwan hits his hundred years old head on a stone, I am not making him my man." The caesar said, "Let us just laugh at his beard for the time being," and he came over to Qirwan and said, "Katayun said that whenever the army of Islam is annihilated, then he can have whatever he wishes." Qirwan was pleased with these words.

That night Sayyid's beloved beauty and posture, his manhood and munificence struck Katayun's heart. She regretted everything and cried with sobs saying, "Alas, I've hammered away at my feet with my own hands, I've caused such a brave warrior to die in such a forsaken place." She found no sleep that night and she almost turned mad. In the morning they all set out for Malatya.

Meanwhile, Yahya b. Mansur sent a message to the Sunnis and informed them that the caesar was on his way. Amir Umar wrote a letter at once and informed the caliph and he in turn sent letters out to all the provinces of Islam. He gathered an army, and there were on their way.

Meanwhile news reached Amir Umar that, "Here's the army of Chîn, they have arrived" so they came out to confront them. Forty thousand men camped out. In the morning the drums rolled and Anqas from Chîn entered the battlefield from the army of Chîn. He was a fierce brave warrior. He asked for a challenger and [A 299] a rider entered the battlefield. Anqas said, "Who are you?" but he did not answer back. Anqas just got more furious and hurled his sword and the other one's shield was cut in two pieces,

but he swiftly pulled his head to the side and the blow landed on the horse, which collapsed. Anqas came over to cross and he hit the horse's front legs and both the horse and Anqas tripped and fell flat. Before Anqas could get back up again he hit him with the sword and his head and hands went flying in the air. The Muslims shouted, "*God is Great*" and Amir Umar said, "Does anyone know who this fellow is?" Bidrun stepped forward and said, "It is my companion-friend Adan-Banu." They rushed a horse to her at once, and she mounted again. Gurang from Chîn, Anqas' son, entered next and hurled his sword. Adan met his sword with her shield but the cursed wretch turned his sword back and hit her underneath the arm. Adan became a martyr. Bidrun entered into the battlefield, thrashed Gurang and then jumped from his horse, fell over Adan and surrendered his soul. The Muslims cried bitterly and they took the two lovers to bury them.

The following morning the news arrived that, "Here comes the caesar" and the Faghfur came to meet him. He presented his greetings to the caesar and they lamented the loss of Anqas and Gurang for a while until the caesar said, "I must kill plenty of Muslims in revenge for your sons." Faghfur answered, "I will rest only the moment I capture and kill Battal." The caesar came up to him and said, "Thanks to the auspicious luck of the Fire of Light [A 300] I have just killed Battal" and he explained the story in all its details. The Faghfur was delighted and glad.

*Let us come back to the story of Sayyid. Now Sayyid himself tells the story:*

*"On that day when I fell in the cave of Hell I recited three hundred times the verse of the Koran Say he is the only God, before I reached the bottom of the cave. I was deep to my knees in mud so first I just got myself out of the mud. It was extremely dark and there was no light to be seen. I walked forty steps and reached the edge of the well and sat down."*

Then all of a sudden there was a great noise at the mouth of the cave: it was all the stones that they were throwing at Sayyid. Sayyid said, "They would fall on the mud that would at times splash over me as well while I was earnestly reciting the Koran." Then, while he was exclaiming, "Oh God my Lord, I wonder what I should do here" there appeared a light from the other side and the sound of voices came. They resembled the sounds of birds and Sayyid looked closely and saw that they were snakes, each one of them looking like a †dragon.‡ Sayyid recited the verse of the throne, drew a circle with his finger and entered into the spell. The snakes came and stopped at the circumference. Sayyid looked again and saw that flames were coming out: the snakes were like dragons. The inside of the cave was lighted up and Sayyid noticed that all those stones that they had

thrown after him had piled up in a huge mountain. He was most grateful and never stopped reciting the Koran. [A 301]

Sayyid saw that a dragon-like snake appeared with another small snake on top. It had a colorful head of emerald and more snakes on both sides which encircled the big one. They came over to Sayyid and arranged themselves. Then that small snake came forward from among them and greeted Sayyid. It accepted his greetings in return and said, "Sultan of the ghazis, Sayyid Battal, how did it happen that you fell down here? But do not worry, it was God's will that you should fall here and witness so many wonders. My name is Yamliha and they call me the King of snakes (*Şāh-ı mārān*). These ones here that you see are my army. After the death of Sulayman, Buluqiya and Afan took me prisoner. For forty days they took me over mountains and plains, and everywhere there was a special plant they told me about its effects and uses, they explained everything to me. They prescribed me a penance and God the Almighty gave me my freedom and I was saved. So I came into this well here. I only got out once again and visited the splendor of the two worlds, Mohammed Mustafa. Then I came back here. They call this place the well of Hell and there's a door that opens out to the mountain of Qaf."

Sayyid stomach was empty and Yamliha made a signal and said something to a small snake which [A 302] went and brought a stone. It handed the stone to Sayyid saying, "Your stomach is empty, take this and drop it down your throat." Sayyid mentioned the name of God and put that stone in his mouth. It was as if he had eaten all sorts of food. He felt satiated and could see properly again. He took the stone out of his mouth and put it next to him. Yamliha took it and put it back in his hand. He said, "There's still time. You may take it out when that time is up." Sayyid felt sleepy and for a while he almost fell sound asleep, but then he quickly woke up and saw that Yamliha was no longer around nor was there a snake to be seen. He was lying in the dark exactly as before. Sayyid marveled and said, "Oh God, I wonder what's going to happen to me." As he was saying that two candles appeared across from him.

Meanwhile Katayun regretted what she had done and separation from Sayyid drove her mad. She would come night and day to the mouth of the well and leave in tears. Whenever someone would see her she would pick up a couple of small stones and drop them in the well and then leave in tears. Crying became her permanent occupation.

Meanwhile when the following morning the caesar arrived the drums rolled and the army mounted. Abdu'l-Wahhab entered the battlefield and shouted, "I am Abdu'l-Wahhab, I have lived three hundred and ten years and I have seen the blessed face of the Apostle. Whoever wishes to die today, let him come forth to the battlefield." [A 303] There was an infidel from Chîn called Talut and he entered the battlefield. He came up to Abdu'l-Wahhab



and said, "You decrepit old man, is there no brave hearted man in this army to come out here and they had to send you?" Abdu'l-Wahhab said, "If you manage to defeat me, don't worry, there are plenty of hearted men in the army of Islam who could deal with a hundred like you." Talut got upset and hurled his lance at Abdu'l-Wahhab who avoided it and struck with his own lance so hard that the lance pierced the shield, found the chest but did not stop there and came out from the back. Talut surrendered his soul to hell. Shamun entered the battlefield next and Abdu'l-Wahhab killed him too. The Faghfur of Chîn was amazed and said, "Good grief, such an old man and he has killed so many brave youngsters." Awrang from Chîn entered the battlefield next and threw an arrow which pierced Abdu'l-Wahhab's shield and struck him on the shoulder, tore it open and landed deep in the ground. Abdu'l-Wahhab was heavily injured and Ahmad Turran got into the battlefield. There was a great fight between them. Awrang hit Ahmad with the mace so hard that his shield was smashed and the mace landed on the horse which collapsed.

Next entered Ali b. Hashim and Awrang sent him packing as well. One after the other he brought fourteen famous begs down. Amir Umar signaled to Ali b. Husayn, the ruler (*mālik*) of Tarsus and seven thousand Sunni Muslims charged in attack. From the army of Chîn, Qahir of Chîn charged with forty thousand men. The two armies met and the Muslims disappeared in the ocean of the other army. [A 304] They fought for a day and a night and the ghazis were in dire straits. They sought assistance from God the Almighty through the intercession of Mohammed Mustafa.

At that moment dust was raised from the road to Baghdad and the caliph appeared with two hundred thousand men, raising the banner of the prophet and the banner of the four friends, along with four hundred reciters of the Koran. Upon the caliph's order two hundred people started throwing arrows at the infidels and they brought down a lot of men. They got the upper hand over the infidel army and pushed them back. Then the two armies separated and Amir Umar along with the ghazis came out to meet the caliph. They exchanged greetings and lamented Sayyid. Then they took the caliph and settled him in their camp.

Meanwhile, when Sayyid saw the two candles approaching he said, "Dear me, God the Almighty has sent me some help." Then he saw a lizard, a real dragon, whose eyes were glowing in flames. Sayyid saw it and got scared. He recited the Koran, drew a circle all around and got inside it. The bottom of the well became sizzling hot from the dragon's breathing. When the dragon came near Sayyid, he raised his head and went straight up the well.

Sayyid tells the story now, "I recited three hundred times the verse '*Say: He is the only God*' and then the dragon's tail was drawn upwards as well." After a while he came

down again and went back up. All in all he came down and up for seven days. On the eighth day [A 305] Sayyid thought to himself, "Well, it's clear this dragon comes down and then goes back up again. If I am to rescue myself, this will have to be the way." He looked out and right at the time when the tail came near he jumped and held on to it. He embraced it and pressed hard. The dragon lifted its tail and went straight up the well. Sayyid held on tight and in embrace, but he almost burned his chest and stomach because of the beast's heat. Sayyid was in grave danger, "Good God, I'd better let go and drop back down to the bottom of the well" he said, but as he was saying that the dragon lifted its tail out of the well. Sayyid was out of his mind: he was outside the well. He offered a prayer of thanks and then he saw the dragon lying down: it filled in a whole valley. Right then the dragon raised its head and went back inside the well.

Sayyid marveled at the magnificence and dexterity of God the Almighty. Then he saw a spring in front of a mountain cave and he performed his ablutions and prayer and recited a little from the Koran. That evening he busied himself with worship till the following morning. At dawn he performed the morning prayer and sat down reciting the appropriate scriptures. Then he saw that a flock of pigs approaching from across. They came near grazing their way along to the mouth of the well and their herder shouted, "Battal, you slaughterer and good-for-nothing trickster, have you by any chance been afflicted with what you had been doing to others?" He spoke a lot of nonsense of this sort so Sayyid came over [A 306] to him and said, "What were you doing over there by the well?" He said, "I was only insulting Battal." Sayyid said, "Whose are these pigs?" He said, "They belong to Katayun." Then Sayyid asked him about the caesar and he said, "They have joined their forces with the padishah of Chîn and are marching against Malatya. Their intention is to wipe out all the Mohammedans." Then Sayyid asked for his name and he said, "My name is Lawlan." Sayyid said, "Did you recognize me?" and he said, "It does look as if you are Battal." Sayyid said, "You've spoken well, come now and say the words and become a Muslim and rescue yourself." The infidel started his nonsense and Sayyid seized his throat and he surrendered his soul to hell.

Sayyid immediately stripped Lawlan of his clothes and put them on himself. He disguised himself as Lawlan and dropped him in the well. Before it became dark, he turned the pigs back towards the city. Sayyid followed them and the pigs came over to a big pigsty across from Katayun's pavilion. They got inside and every one went to his own sleeping quarters. Sayyid saw that there was a small bed with an old goat skin spread over it. There was also a broken glass. Sayyid sat at the bench. He took off his cape and placed it besides him and sat there waiting.

After a while a young woman came along and brought a plate of food, with a piece of meat and some bread. Sayyid ate and filled his stomach and was thankful. Then in a little while [A 307] Katayun appeared wearing black atlas clothes, yet still looking as beautiful as the shinning moon. She sat down across from Sayyid deep in her sorrows and looked his direction. Sayyid saw Katayun with her expensive crown and was scared that he would loose his mind, but he managed to collect himself a little. Katayun spoke loudly from above, "Lawlan, how have you been?" Sayyid got up and offered his respects and Katayun said, "Lawlan, did you go out in the direction of the well at all today?" Sayyid said, "Indeed I did," and she said, "Do not forget what I have asked from you: if you bring me any news of Battal I will make you rich." Sayyid said, "Beautiful lady, I went today and listened in. There was a sad moaning coming." As soon as Katayun heard this she started crying and said, "Alas, alas, what did I do to myself with my own hands. It wasn't an enemy who did it, no, I destroyed my fortune with my own hands, I got hold of such a leader and gave him away, killed him. There's nothing better for me to do than go and hurl myself in that well. It would be a shame for me to ever look another man in the face." She recited a lot of hymns and wailed in lament.

Sayyid heard all this and was amazed. He said to himself, "God my Lord, how did this woman's heart that was harder than stone become soft as wax? Where's her wildness and impetuous swiftness?" Then Sayyid said, "Beautiful lady, if you deem it proper [A 308] tomorrow ride your horse alone and let us bring some ropes that you may tie them around my waist and lower down in the well and I will bring him out for you." Katayun said, "Lawlan, if you do me such a favor, you'll see what I will offer in return." Sayyid said, "Don't you worry about anything, I will do your worrying for you." That night Katayun could not sleep out of excitement, she just gathered a few ropes.

At dawn, Sayyid cried out and let the pigs out in front of him and came out to the well. Katayun took with her a couple of servant girls and a eunuch and came over to Sayyid. She shouted, "Lawlan, what are you doing, are you still standing by your word last night?" Sayyid said, "But of course! In fact this morning someone without a cap and barefooted came out of the well right here and went off into that valley out there. Order your servants to stay here and let us go ahead and find out who he is." Katayun said, "That's fine by me." She left the eunuchs and the ladies aside, and they went on, Sayyid on foot ahead. When they reached a deserted spot Sayyid turned back and grabbed the reins of Katayun's horse. She said, "Lawlan, what are you doing?" Sayyid said, "Take a close look at me and tell me whether I look like Lawlan." Katayun looked well and recognized Sayyid. She sighed, threw herself [A 309] over Sayyid and fainted. Sayyid took her in his arms and rested her head on his knee. She lay there for a while and then her senses

came back, she opened her eyes and said, "Brave warrior, am I dreaming or am I awake?" Sayyid said, "Sweetheart open your eyes for what you have seen is no dream. God the Almighty has protected me and I found a way out. Taryun burned me but I did not die, Uqba poisoned me but it was no good. It's all thanks to the blessing of Mohammed, otherwise what could a man achieve by himself?" Katayun said, "My Lord I was in error so please forgive my sin. I did not recognize your power but now I am your humble and lowly servant. Either accept me or, if you must, kill me" and burst into tears. Sayyid pulled her to the side and they locked in each other's arms.

Then the eunuchs and the servant girls came along and fell at Sayyid's feet. Together with Katayun they all pronounced the confession of faith and became Muslims. Then they brought Sayyid's clothes, his horse and his armor. Sayyid put on his clothes and asked about the caesar. Katayun said, "It's been a month since he's been in Malatya, but I do not know anything beyond that." Sayyid said, "I am on my way," but Katayun did not let him. She brought Sayyid to the city where they took whatever was of good use and loaded it on the animals and together with forty attendants and forty ladies and forty servants they set out for Malatya.

Meanwhile on this side, the two armies mounted [A 310] and Ali b. Mizrab entered the battlefield from the army of Islam. He thrashed seventy infidels from the army of the caesar. Awrang from Chîn entered the battlefield. They fought bitterly but no-one could subdue the other. Then Awrang got on foot and started wrestling with Ali. Ali lifted Awrang and threw him to the ground, invited him to religion but he did not accept so he cut his head off. Then Jalut the Frank entered the battlefield and they fought for a while. Jalut hurled his sword, Ali held his shield against it but the cursed wretch brought his sword back and hit him under the arm and cut him in two pieces. The Muslims' hearts burned and they screamed in anger.

At that moment Abdu'l-Wahhab entered the battlefield, but was taken prisoner. Ahmad Turran entered after him, but he was taken prisoner as well. Next came Sulayman and Juda and Nasr Habbab and Ali b. Hashim and Abdu'l-Salam, *well, why should we make the story long*, Jalut brought down forty seven brave warriors and dragged them over to the foot of their banner. The caesar was delighted and the caliph in despair. The Faghfur of Chîn ordered, "Come on, kill these fellows at once, what do I have to do with them?" The caliph raised his head towards the sky and pleaded for the intercession of the saints and the prophets in tears.

Right at that moment dust was raised from the road to Qaysariya and two hundred people appeared: under a yellow banner came Sayyid Battal Ghazi with the mace of Samsuvar on his shoulder and riding Ashqar, his horse of demon blood. Amir Umar

recognized him the moment he saw him and said, "Friends this fellow is the sultan Sayyid Ghazi." [A 311] When the caliph heard this he came down from his elephant and rubbed his face on the earth and said, "Lord, please help the army of Islam this time around as well."

Sayyid left Katayun some place across and gave a war-cry in the manner of Hamza. He screamed so loud it was as if the foundations of the seven heavens had collapsed.

#### Twenty-seventh session

He gave a war-cry three times in a row, "Cursed infidel caesar, where do you think you could rescue your soul from my hands? Here I am, I've come again. I must now kill you but not without torturing you first -in fact your father's death was sweat compared to what will happen to you." The friends saw him and they rushed over to him and exchanged greetings. The caliph raised his head from prostrating and came over to Sayyid. Once again he was amazed at the power of God the Almighty and upon his order the drums rolled to announce the good news and everyone rejoiced.

Sayyid came to the battlefield and shouted, "Wretched infidel, so you found the battlefield empty and you pretend like a proud cat to be a lion? Come now, show us your skills." Jalut hurled the lance he was holding but Sayyid avoided it. He came over to cross and Sayyid hit him so hard that even though the cursed wretch held his shield against Sayyid's blow, it was smashed and the blow landed on his head and leveled him and his horse to the ground. One after the other he thrashed seventeen infidels and no-one else entered the battlefield. The Sultan of Chîn said, [A 312] "Caesar, did you not say 'I killed Battal'?" The caesar was ashamed and said, "This is not him!"

Sayyid saw that no-one would enter the battlefield so he charged against the infidels' army. He moved from one wing to the other and within a moment he made the blood of the infidels run like a torrent. When evening came and the drums of repose rolled, Sayyid came back looking like a ruby-red panther from all the blood of the infidels. The friends came out to meet him and Sayyid went straight to the caliph and rubbed his face on the earth. The caliph dismounted and they exchanged greetings. They asked Sayyid about the news and he replied, "Thanks to your blessed good fortune God the Almighty protected me. My story is very long and God willing I shall tell it to you at a more relaxed time."

Then Sayyid looked and saw that a few of the friends were not there. He asked, "Where are the friends?" and they replied, "They were taken prisoners" and they told him the story of Bidrun and Adan. Sayyid broke into sobbing tears and was deeply grieved. He swore on oath, "I will not put any food in my mouth and I will not rest until I finish

with the affair of the caesar and rescue the friends." He changed his clothes at once and set out for the army.

At that moment the sky howled, lighting struck and it started to rain. A great storm broke out and there was a great inundation, with plenty of tents torn and men and drapery drowned in water. A loud sigh was heard from the infidels' army. Said the caesar, "You see, that wizard (*jazu*) has come again, and look now what misfortunes are going to hit us." [A 313] Then Sayyid came to a tent and saw the friends sitting with iron chains. The guards were all scrambled up and dispersed, each looking for refuge. Sayyid got inside and released their bonds. The friends all fell to his feet and prostrated offering thanks. He took all of them in his embrace. Then they got some horses from the army and mounted. Sayyid sent them to the city while he remained there.

He came to a place and saw that at the foot of a mountain possibly as many as ten thousand people had sought refuge from the rain and were waiting there. He asked someone, "Where is the caesar" but the other fellow got upset and answered, "In Hell!" Sayyid said, "Well, whose army is this, then?" and the other fellow said, "This is the army of the Shah of Qirwan." Sayyid came forward, presented his greetings and said, "The caesar is summoning you. We have captured a beautiful place, let him come and protect himself from the flood otherwise he might fall in Battal's claws."

Sayyid spoke like that and then took Qirwan from the Maghrib out of the camp and brought him down with a single blow by the foot of a tree further down. He tied him up around the tree. , "What are you doing?" said the Shah of Qirwan. Sayyid said, "So that the flood doesn't wash you away!" Then he came over to Shamun whose head was scrambled up as well as he stood drenched by the foot of the mountain. Sayyid came and with some other maneuver took him out. He brought him over and hanged him from a tree right next to the Shah of Qirwan. Let us not make the story long, that evening Sayyid got the caesar, the Faghfur of Chîn [A 314] and forty famous sultans, called so and so, and hanged them from their throats on a hill across the city.

In the morning the skies opened up and the rain and lightning calmed down. One's eyes could see again, so they looked for the begs of the army. When they found them all in one place, they started screaming and wailing. Their heads became all scrambled up and they took to fleeing. Sayyid gave a war-cry, "I am Sayyid Battal Ghazi, the killer of the caesar and the Faghfur. Cursed wretches, your life is in my hands, where do you think you can go?" He charged in attack and the friends who had remained in the city charged in attack too, killing and capturing them. They took the goods and belongings of that great army and returned to the city. The caliph offered many prayers and distributed those goods

to the Sunnis and they all became rich. They offered Katayun to Sayyid and held festivities. Then the caliph set out for Baghdad with an abundance of wealth.

CHAPTER SIXTEEN  
The Story of Caesar Asatur  
and Guzandu Jazu.

Meanwhile the storytellers tell the story how when the caesar died he had only one son left, named Asatur. The begs of Rûm gathered in council and elected Asatur to the throne in his father's place. So he became a padishah and sent an envoy to Sayyid saying, "I am your servant, whatever happened it was my father who did it and he acted of ignorance. I am not going to do anything of what he did." When Sayyid read the letter he said, "His father said the same words many times, gave his word but never kept it. [A 315] This one now will also get whatever he gives." So the caesar accepted the obligation to keep paying the tribute indefinitely.

Meanwhile, one day the caliph along with a few others had gone out hunting and they saw someone sleeping under a tree, only his nose and ear had been cut off. When the caliph saw him he burst into tears. They asked him, "Who are you?" and he said, "I am Suhayl the merchant, I had gone down to Rûm because I had some transactions with the caesar Asatur. I went to ask for the aqçes of my cloth but they did not pay me. I said 'The money belongs to the caliph' but he got upset and said 'I've already put that aside, what do you think you are doing now making money claims on me?' and he brought me to this condition, and here I am now. Please help me to get my justice from him."

The caliph's inside burned with anger and as soon as he came back to the city he dispatched letters around inviting all the provinces of Islam. He gathered three hundred thousand men. Then he marched to Malatya and Amir Umar, Sayyid and the remaining ghazis came out to meet him. They rubbed their faces on the ground and brought him to his resting place. The caliph explained the story to Sayyid and Sayyid said, "Lord, do not get in the trouble yourself, if only you had let us your servants know, I would have punished the caesar." The caesar said, "You speak well, but my heart is longing for a ghaza." [A 316] So thirty thousand sturdy men enlisted in Malatya and they lead the troops along with the commanders of Malatya and Amir Umar and Sayyid ghazi.

Meanwhile the caesar was informed and he marched with the nine hundred thousand men he had gathered. They came to a place across from Mt. Jabal and encamped there. Asatur had a vizier called Danyal and he sent him to Baghdad with the message,

"Get hold of Battal and send him over to me. Moreover, accept an obligation to pay *kharaj* to me. If you refuse I will spare neither him nor you and I will destroy the entire of Islam." The letter was read in front of the caliph and Sayyid got upset and upon his order they cut Danyal's nose and ear. Said Sayyid, "You faithless dog go and tell him 'You are going to suffer what your father suffered, and more'."

The following morning the drums of battle rolled and the two armies mounted. Qart the Frank entered the battlefield from the army of the caesar and Suhayl from the Muslims. Qart was an archer and he hit Suhayl with an arrow and made him a martyr. Afshin entered the battlefield and became a martyr as well. The cursed Qart gave a war-cry and said, "Where is Battal then? Let him come." Sayyid entered the battlefield and the cursed wretch secured an arrow on the bow but before he could stretch it Sayyid reached him and hit him with his lance. It did not stop at the shield but came out of his chest through the stomach. Sayyid made a final effort, lifted him up and threw him on the ground. A loud sigh was heard on the camp of the infidels, [A 317]

Empty place for miniature.

Zaryun entered the battlefield and was killed. Asatur got furious and entered the battlefield with four hundred servants in gold belts and with a banner with the cross. They came up to Sayyid and he said, "Battal you slaughterer, today is my day of revenge for my father and grandfather." They attacked each other, but what good is a wild cat against a lion? Asatur saw that he was being exhausted so he turned away and fled. There was great screaming from both armies and the infidels' army charged in attack all at once. They encircled Sayyid and he gave a war-cry [A 318] and counter-attacked. The caliph himself also charged in attack. The two armies clashed in battle and such blood flowed that it swept the bodies away.

Asatur saw that the situation did not turn out as he had expected so they pulled aside a fast Arabian horse and he took off. Sayyid reached and destroyed the infidel banner and the army broke its ranks. The Muslims killed and chased them away taking many prisoners. They all gathered around the caliph and the caliph offered prayers for Sayyid and the ghazis and distributed the goods to the ghazis. Then the caliph said, "What I would like is to corner the caesar before we go back." Sayyid, "The command is yours" and they immediately rolled the drums and set out for Istanbul.

Meanwhile Asatur came to Istanbul, opened up his treasury and spent a lot of wealth raising an army. One day at a dinner party he said, "Battal is certainly not going to leave me in peace, he's bound to come here. Only I have no power to confront him, with



his sorcery he has made me useless. If only there was a wizard (*jazu*) to be found whom we could bring and turn against him!" He had a vizier called Harun and he said, "My lord there is an island called Aqlan and there is a wizard (*jazu*) there called Hadus. He's from the family of Shangul Jazu. If he were to come here he would devastate our enemy."

Upon Asatur's order they wrote a letter saying, "I am your humble servant [A 319] and there is this person here now whom called Battal who wants to make me change the religion of my forefathers. He has killed my grandfather and has hanged my father from his throat, and now, he's coming after me. Please deign to come and rescue our souls, our little birds, from the hands of that people, and I will, for my part, obey your orders for as long as I am alive and will fulfill any service you ask of me." They prepared the letter and sent it off.

After forty days there came the news that, "Here, Hadus Jazu has arrived." The caesar himself went out to meet him and all of a sudden there came out of the sky a whole troop, some riding pigs, some riding dragons each holding a snake as a whip in their hand, and some riding barrel jugs. They all had a different face which no human could bear to look at. They were all hideous monsters. They all landed in a wide open field. No human could go near them because of their foul smell. As soon as Asatur saw them, he became scared and worried. He dismounted and walked over to them to present his greetings. He took Hadus and brought him to his tent and afforded him a generous hospitality.

Hadus got drunk and asked about Sayyid. Asatur made a lot of complaints and Hadus said, "I had heard that Battal was a dangerous warrior no-one could match. He has studied the four books and is an evil seditious person. I myself am no match for him but I know a wizard (*jazu*) who lives in the cave of Dhu'l-Qarnayn. They call him Guzandu Jazu and he is forty cubits tall. If he comes, [A 320] he could take care of a whole world of Battals." Asatur gave the order and they wrote him a letter. Then he said, "Who's going to deliver this?" Hadus took the letter in his hand, lifted himself in the sky and flew away.

Meanwhile, all of a sudden the news came that, "Battal has arrived." Asatur fell in despair. The first one to appear was indeed Sayyid Battal Ghazi, followed by the commanders of Malatya, troop by troop. Then came the caliph in all magnificence: he had four hundred judges and *muftis* on his right and four hundred exquisite Koran reciters with a golden voice on his left. They were reciting the verse, "Verily we have conquered" while the Koranic instructors with their beautiful voices were shouting, "*God is Great*" They had arranged the throne of the caliph on top of that white elephant and he was sitting on it. On the banner of the Apostle -May Peace Be Upon Him- the banner in praise of Muhammad- was written, "Muhammad, give the good news to the believers, Victory is from God and the conquest is at hand."

When Asatur saw the caliph with this majestic pomp he sighed and the fire of fear burned his inside. He said, "Fire of Light, what did I do to you that you've brought this people against me" and burst into tears.

On this side, the army of Islam came and camped across from Istanbul. Immediately, upon Sayyid's orders, they sent the judge of Mosul to Asatur with the message, "Abandon disbelief and come to the believing faith otherwise my intention this time around [A 321] is to bring the whole of Rûm to Islam." When the news reached Asatur he sobbed and said, "Give me a grace period of ten days and let me assemble the priests and hold council and let us see what the dignitaries will say. Let our advisors gather together with yours in one place and have a debate to determine which religion is more powerful." He sent the judge of Mosul back to the caliph and he gave his report. And so they gave the caesar a period of ten days.

One evening when the caesar was left alone he said to himself, "Alas, this clime, these provinces have all been ruined in the hands of this people. My father and grandfather have died in their hands, and here I am now, destitute and weak" and fell down on his face crying. The son of the cursed Uqba was there present and he raised his head and said, "My Lord, do not worry and let me send Battal on a far away task. Once Battal is gone on a task from the army, the rest is a piece of cake." Asatur swore in oath, "If you succeed in doing this, I will give you my daughter" and he sent Walid off.

He disguised himself in the sufi manner, colored his beard white, passed a set of prayer beads round his neck and in the morning, right after they were through with the prayer he slipped in their camp. He rubbed his face on the ground in front of the caliph and burst into tears, [A 322] placing a letter in front of him. They picked up the letter and they read it. At first the name of God the Almighty was mentioned, then there were praises for the Apostle of the two existences, for the caliph and for Sayyid. Then it continued: , "From my behalf, Abdu'l-Mu'min, the Padishah of the Maghrib, the Padishah of Samuniya, be informed that I have heard that the sultan Sayyid ghazi has armed himself for a ghaza against Istanbul and I gathered an army as well and boarded on ships with seventy thousand people. On the way I came to an island called Qaytamuniya. There was a infidel called Ghun the Frank, and he came against us with ninety thousand men. They burned our ships and he has taken me prisoner. Now please send some help to the Muslims over here -it would be sufficient if Sayyid were to come by himself, but if he does not come we will be destroyed in front of all these Franks." When the letter was read in front of the caliph he said, "What should we do now, if we send Sayyid, well the good fortune of all of us depends only upon him, without him we do not amount to much." Sayyid summoned that old man and said, "How long a journey is it to them from here?" The old man said, "You

go by sea, and you can get there in five days." Sayyid said, "It is not such a long journey." He asked for permission and set out with the old man.

They came to the seashore and boarded a boat. They went until they reached that island that the infidel [A 323] had talked about. They got outside on land and Sayyid stood for prayer. The cursed Walid saw that Sayyid had gone for his prayer so he quickly pushed the boat back in the water and took off. When Sayyid completed his prayer he looked around and saw that infidel had taken the boat and left. He shouted, "Hey you infidel, where are you going?" The cursed wretch said, "Watch out because I got you; I am Uqba's son and I've left you in a place where as long as you live you will not see another human face. Let me go now and have your army break itself" and sailed away.

Sayyid was stranded there in the middle of the island, and for all that he walked up and down the island looking for someone to ask, he did not find a soul. He burst into tears and wailed and lamented asking for help from the Almighty God. After a while he saw a little old woman coming. She saw and recognized Sayyid for she had seen many places, and she came and greeted him. Sayyid stood up and returned the greetings. Then she placed a plate in front of Sayyid with two breads on it. His stomach was quite hungry so he ate it and filled his stomach. He offered his thanks and the old woman said, "My dear, why were you caught so much off guard and believed the words of that infidel? But I suppose that too was written on your forehead. Now get up, I am going to direct you to the prophet Khidr." She took Sayyid and went for a while and they came to a fountain in the middle of a lush green field. There he saw a fair horse with the colors of a rainbow standing there grazing. An old man was performing [A 324] a prayer. As soon as he completed the prayer Sayyid stepped forward and threw himself at his feet and presented his greetings. He took Sayyid and drew him in his embrace and kissed him on both eyes.

One day and one night they talked with Khidr and he offered a lot of advice to Sayyid. Then he took out three arrows and gave them to him saying, "You will need them." The old woman said, "Bring him back to his army." Sayyid bid both the little old woman and the prophet Khidr farewell. Then Khidr said, "Close your eyes!" He closed his eyelids and before he could open them again he found himself on dry land. There was no Khidr and no old woman. He offered prayers of thanks.

Meanwhile, on this side, the cursed Walid, the son of Uqba went back to Asatur all giddy and pompous after he abandoned Sayyid on that island. He reported the story to the caesar, who was delighted and rejoiced. While they were in the midst of such good news Hadus Jazu arrived. Walid gave him the news of Sayyid and that infidel was pleased and said, "Since Sayyid has left on such an expedition, let me attack and corner this army myself until Guzandu Jazu arrives."

They rolled the drums of battle at once and the infidels charged out of Istanbul. The caliph was informed and the Sunnis also mounted and the two armies stood facing one another. A wizard (*jazu*) entered the battlefield and a brave warrior entered from the Sunnis. The wizard (*jazu*) recited some charms and the Sunni's hands were locked. The cursed wretch then cut him in two pieces with his sword and made him a martyr. He killed three Muslims like that until Abdu'l-Wahhab entered the battlefield. [A 325] The wizard (*jazu*) recited another magic spell and threw a bottle at him. Abdu'l-Wahhab was inundated by water on all four sides. He was about to drown and die when he recited the prayer of the Apostle -May Peace Be Upon Him- and the witchcraft was canceled and all the water disappeared. Abdu'l-Wahhab hit with his sword and cut the wizard (*jazu*) in two pieces.

Next entered the battlefield Qirtas Jazu. He performed great witchcraft and recited several spells but in front of the blessing of the prayer of the Apostle it was all to no effect. Abdu'l-Wahhab thrashed him too. Then Nuqayta the Frank charged with seven thousand Franks and they encircled Abdu'l-Wahhab. The caliph ordered and Ahmad Turran and Nasr Habbab and Sulayman and Ali b. Hashim and Juda and Muhammad b. Ali , all these charged in attack. They put a thousand Franks to the sword and forced the remaining to retreat to the center. Asatur ordered and the infidel army attacked all at once. The shouts from both armies reached the high heavens. Hadus put his hand on the ground and seized a handful of earth and recited a charm and blew it over the Muslims. A great darkness fell upon the Muslims and their hands were all tied up. Their tongues were stuck and their powers abandoned them. Thus the infidels were able to break the army of Islam and push it back to the caliph.

The caliph saw that the army of Islam was being broken and he immediately dismounted from his horse and uncovered his head at the foot of the banner and rubbed his blessed white beard on the earth and asked for the intercession of the light of Muhammad. He burst into tears and said, "Lord Creator, [A 326] let there be this time as well power and strength for the army of Islam from you. Please help us."

Then there was a war-cry and the Sunnis heard the voice of Sayyid and were delighted and glad. Sayyid saw that the army of Islam was broken and had taken to fleeing. He sighed loudly and gave another war-cry: a war-cry that brought the dead back to life and took the living to death. Without delay they brought in Ashqar and he mounted and charged in attack.

Now the cursed Hadus had taken off his clothes and was reciting charms bare naked picking up earth and spraying it on the Sunnis. Sayyid rushed against him with a war-cry and Hadus attempted to run away. He recited plenty of charms but none had any effect on Sayyid. Sayyid reached over and hit him with the sword and his head rolled like a

cup in front of him. When Hadus died light came back and the darkness was lifted. Every one of the Muslims turned into a dragon and they came back and attacked the infidels' army spilling their blood like a flood. As soon as the wizards (*jazu*) saw Sayyid they did not stay any longer and broke their ranks. The infidels' army retreated to the city and the Sunnis encircled and camped all around.

Sayyid came to the presence of the caliph and rubbed his face on the ground. They embraced and greeted each other and Sayyid reported his adventure in every detail to the caliph. All the friends were amazed and Sayyid said, "For as long as Walid remains alive we will not be spared his pains and toils." [A 327] So here the Sunnis were glad and happy in Sayyid's company.

On the other side, news reached Asatur that evening that, "Guzandu Jazu will arrive in the morning" and he rejoiced and was happy. In the morning he marched out to meet him and the storytellers say that when the wizard (*jazu*) reached the army camp he came with great majesty along with all the other cursed ones that came along. The bladder of those watching was torn with fear. Each one of the wizards (*jazu*) had a different shape and magic spitting flames out of their mouths. When Guzandu Jazu came facing the caesar no human would come near her because of her foul smell, but whether he liked it or not Asatur got on foot and exchanged greetings with the wizard (*jazu*). He brought him to his own palace and had him as a guest there. They had plenty to eat and wine to drink and the wizard (*jazu*) became drunk and said, "My dear caesar, don't you be sad, for the whole of the mountain of Qaf is under my orders. Even the *winged fairies* do not sleep out of fear for me. After all, who is this Battal that you are be so worried about? I am not going to spare neither Battal nor the caliph, I am going to burn their Kaaba up in flames. A quarter of the inhabited world will be mine." When the caesar heard these word his inside burned and he sighed, saying, "Alas, with my own hands I've cut my legs with an ax. This person is going to spare neither Battal nor me. It was bad enough having to find a cure for Battal, but now how am I to find a cure for this one?" Fear fell upon him and he could not speak.

[A 328]

In the morning Sayyid was circling around the city and they threw a letter with an arrow. Sayyid picked it up and had a look. First the name of God was mentioned, then the name of his Apostle -May Peace Be Upon Him- and then there was a prayer for Sayyid. This is how it read after that, "I, Shammās the old man, one of those who hold you dear to their hearts, would like to let you know and make you aware that the cursed Walid has found out about my secret, that I am a Muslim, and has reported me to the caesar. Asatur arrested me and imprisoned me, so now I am lying in prison along with three thousand Sunni Muslims. Now I know that the divine favor and the miracles of the Apostle are with

you so hopefully you will not forget us. Together with the other three thousand Sunnis we are constantly praying for the continuation of your good fortune." When Sayyid read the letter his eyes filled with tears. He cried with sobs and informed the friends and they were all shocked.

Then Sayyid assigned Abdu'l-Wahhab with forty thousand men and the army of Khwarazm to be on guard. The following morning the armies mounted and came out of the city. To the right of the caesar was Guzandu Jazu and his two sons, each with the appearance of a monster. The rest of the army of wizards (*jazu*) were busy, each with a different magic. Guzandu Jazu, that disgusting infidel, entered the battlefield. He was forty cubits tall, and he rode a rhinoceros wearing a black rag. He had with him four hundred infidel wizards (*jazu*) just like himself, all disgusting malicious demons spurting flames. The Sunnis saw [A 329] them and were scared. Sayyid offered a prayer in front of the caliph and set out in the direction of the battlefield.

Sayyid came up to Guzandu Jazu and when he saw Sayyid he said, "Who are you?" Sayyid said, "Who are you looking for?" and the jazu said, "I am looking for Battal" Sayyid said, "I am the one you are looking for." Then the jazu said, "So you are Battal, the one who has gotten all the world fighting, and turned everything upside down in the house of Rûm." Sayyid said, "Indeed I am." Then the eyes of this cursed wretch became bloodshot and he reached and pulled a stone with burning flames out of his chest, recited some charms and threw it at Sayyid. Flames covered him and dragons appeared from among the flames and attacked him. Sayyid recited the prayer of the prophet Khidr and the witchcraft was canceled out.

At that moment that old woman who always came and helped Sayyid when he was in dire straits appeared and said, "Sayyid, where are those arrows Khidr gave you?" Sayyid said, "Why, they are right here!" , "Throw one of them at this cursed wretch" she said, and Sayyid took out one of the arrows, held his bow and threw the arrow in the air. Divine power made the arrow land on the right eye of Guzandu and come out of the back of his head. The cursed wretch screamed and came over to lift Sayyid from his belt but Sayyid hit another arrow in his left eye that also came out of the back of his head. The jazu sighed loudly and said, "Battal [A 330] you slaughterer, you have destroyed me with your tricks." Sayyid spurred Ashqar and came forth and hit him with the sword of Zahhak and cut him in two pieces. There was a loud cry of disappointment from the army of wizards (*jazu*), whereas the army of Islam shouted, "*God is Great*" and raced their horses. Sayyid gave a war-cry and charged in attack and the witches stayed no longer. They took the corpse of Guzandu and ran away. Sayyid captured their banner and Asatur turned around and fled for the city. On his way he was met by Abdu'l-Wahhab who took him prisoner:

Abdu'l-Wahhab along with the army of Khwarazm had been waiting for an ambush and they killed a lot of infidels. A lot of those who rescued themselves made back for the city.

The caliph offered many prayers to Sayyid and they came and settled down. They brought Asatur with his hands tied together and to his neck to Sayyid's presence, and Sayyid said, "Cursed wretch become a Muslim at once or else I will give the order and they'll hack you to pieces. Asatur said, "Brave warrior, right now I have two cities and seven thousand castles under my control. If I become Muslim they will secede and start a rebellion. Come, show me mercy and protection this time as well and set me free and have me pay tribute and I swear I will never again attack Islam." The caliph and Sayyid and the remaining notables held council and said, "If we kill him now the city folk will establish his son as caesar in his place. Moreover, the city is extremely well fortified [A 331] with three sides on the sea and it cannot be taken by battle. So let there be peace, since there is famine in our own army. There is no other way but to make peace." So they agreed that they should make peace.

Sayyid came back and said, "Asatur, come now, just grant me a piece of land the size of an animal's skin so that I may set up a monument." Asatur said, "So be it." They agreed on oath and Asatur accepted the obligation to pay the tribute. Sayyid then cut a skin of a water buffalo in very thin stripes four thousand cubits long and claimed a part of the city. Then he ordered it dug up and destroyed all the churches and the shops that were there. When Asatur saw this he came over to the caliph and complained. He broke in tears saying, "Sayyid asked for a place the size of an animal skin and now he has taken over half the city and is destroying it." The caliph asked Sayyid, "Why did you do that?" but Sayyid got furious and looked at the caesar with terrible wrath. Such fear fell over the caesar that he came over and fell at Sayyid's feet and said, "My lord, do whatever pleases you."

Then Sayyid said, "Tell me now, Shammas is in prison, isn't he? Take him out." He went and got Shammas and the three thousand Sunni Muslims out of prison, dressed them in wonderful clothes and brought them to Sayyid. Sayyid and the caliph went out to meet them. They exchanged greetings with Shammas and took him along. [A 332]

Then they destroyed many palaces and churches and built a Friday mosque and a lodge. They also built a beautiful minaret and performed the general assembly prayer. Seven days later Shammas died. They buried Shammas and all the Muslims who had died there so there were also many cemeteries there. Then they got a seven year tribute payment from the caesar and bid him farewell. They moved on and came back to Malatya.

Amir Umar held celebrations and offered his hospitality to the caliph. After seven days they bid him farewell and sent him along (while the rest of the companions stayed in

Malatya eating and drinking and having a wonderful time, always busy with their worship P.)

## CHAPTER SEVENTEEN

### The Story of the Missing Children of Battal.

In the month of Muharram, on a Friday the news came to Malatya that the caliph Mu'tasim had died and his son Ma'mun ascended the throne. Amir Umar and Sayyid and the remaining friends and commanders were in mourning for seven days and then they agreed they should go and pay their obedience to the caliph Ma'mun. They armed themselves and trusted the city to Abdu'l-Wahhab and departed.

Now Sayyid had three sons, Ali , Nazir and Bashir. The two of them were still young but Ali was already sporting a light beard. Sayyid had taken Ali along with him but had entrusted the other two to Abdu'l-Wahhab. While Nazir and Bashir were at a hunt they disappeared and even though they looked for them very hard, they could not find them. Abdu'l-Wahhab was in despair. He immediately sent someone to Baghdad in case they had also gone after their father. The spy brought back the news [A 333] , "He is not there" and Abdu'l-Wahhab said, "You see now in what trouble I am? Sayyid entrusted his sons to me and they disappeared while in my presence. When he comes back tomorrow how shall I answer him?" and burst into tears. Immediately they sent men in the direction of Rûm but they too came back and said, "However much we looked for them we got no news of them. In fact we even heard that the caesar's son disappeared as well. His name is Takfur Shah. Every night the daughters and sons of their begs disappear and no one knows where to. What's more, they say that it is Battal who is up to this trick , and they also say that the caesar's patience is running out." Abdu'l-Wahhab was bewildered and he exclaimed, "The only solution is for me to go out in Rûm. God willing, I will find some news about the kids." He changed his clothes at once and set out in the direction of Rûm.

Meanwhile the storytellers tell the story how a spy came to caesar Asatur while Abdu'l-Wahhab set out for Rûm and informed him that the caliph Mu'tasim had died and his son Ma'mun had become caliph in his place. Moreover Sayyid had gone to Baghdad and it did look as if it was Sayyid who was doing all these things that were happening. Furthermore everyone in these climes turns to Battal as the one capable of magic. Apparently, out of fear for him, every year the priests out in Rûm send to the Kaaba five *batmans* of wax per head. [A 334] Asatur heard these words and his heart burned and he was shocked.



There was a famous beg called Aqrinos and that evening his daughter too disappeared. He came over to Asatur in tears and said, "King of our times, these days there is at present no king greater than you. How can it be permissible then that you should so neglect bravery and stand behind such a tricky thief and even pay him a tribute?" He dropped some earth on his forehead and complained about Sayyid, saying, "This evening he came and snatched my daughter too." The caesar listened to him and was beyond himself. When he came back to his senses he sent letters out to the seven climes and gathered an army of five hundred thousand men that he placed in Istanbul. He also guarded all the valleys and passes in case he might capture Battal. Himself, he came to Mamuriya with two hundred thousand men.

Meanwhile, one of those days Abdu'l-Wahhab arrived in Rûm. He came up to a fountain and performed his ablutions and prayers. He slept for while and saw the following dream: He was wearing clothes from black mud and was prostrating in front of an idol and asking for its intercession, when Sayyid came along and tore Abdu'l-Wahhab's mud clothes away and dressed him in white clothes and washed his body. He woke up and asked for forgiveness and immediately performed an ablution and prayer. He cried in sobs and said, "Nothing good is going to come out of [A 335] that dream I saw." He stood up for prayer and it was right then that Asatur appeared with his begs and found Abdu'l-Wahhab praying.

They fell upon him but Abdu'l-Wahhab got up at once and took his sword in his hand. One of the begs of the caesar called Nuqayta the Frank stepped forth and said, "Battal you slaughterer, did you really think that all the sedition you have caused would go unnoticed? And what about your oath, your agreement? You were supposed not to come the way of Rûm, isn't it so?" But when he stepped forth Abdu'l-Wahhab jumped and hit him with his sword and cut him in two pieces. Asatur screamed and he ordered them to shower him with arrows, and so they did. Asatur then said, "Battal, where is my son Takfur, where's your word with me that you would no longer attack Rûm? Where are all these girls and boys? How would it be now if the Fire of Light took his revenge for all of them now?" and they threw more arrows. They engaged in battle but Abdu'l-Wahhab was without his armor and he got injured. They attacked and tied him up and brought him to the caesar who looked and saw that it was a white-bearded old man. He said, "Hey, who on earth are you?" and he said, "I am Abdu'l-Wahhab, I am that old man that saw Mustafa with my own eyes, I am three hundred years old and have been on a pilgrimage and visited Mecca seventy times, I have taken part in one thousand two hundred ghazas. If you want, go ahead and kill me, or if you like you may let me go, for me death is sweeter [A 336] than sugar." When Asatur heard these words he said to his viziers, "What do you say,

what should we do with him?" and they said, "My lord, come don't kill this fellow. Let us be nice to him and maybe we will convert him to our religion. If he comes back to our religion then you may know it is because our religion has more splendor, and maybe all those who abandoned their religion and entered the religion of Muhammad will convert again and turn their face to the Messiah. Moreover, Battal's bravery and very existence depends on this fellow. Without him Battal is incapable of anything." At once the caesar ordered and they sent Abdu'l-Wahhab to Istanbul and they settled him in a beautiful palace. He even told his daughter, "My darling, do whatever you want, but it would be so nice if you could get Abdu'l-Wahhab out of his path."

Meanwhile, the caesar had a daughter called Hurimang. She was extremely beautiful and there was no one in her times who even looked like her. In the middle of the night she dressed up and, drunk, came up to Abdu'l-Wahhab. She greeted him and said, "How are you my lion? That's the fate of the world, at times pleasant, at times unpleasant. What one must do is get a taste of the sweetness of this world." She then filled a glass and offered it to him saying, "Take this and drink it and make your heart happy. This world does not stand still, so have some good time with a [A 337] beautiful girl like myself. Do not stay in jail without any desires." She emptied her glass and sat down right across from Abdu'l-Wahhab. She had brought all the accompaniments for a drinking party, including a few dancing girls. She revealed her chest and neck right in front of Abdu'l-Wahhab, and was very playful. She drank a few glasses and became drunk. She knelt down, took his hand and brought it over her neck, rubbed her face in his, and said, "Please drink this glass from my hand and don't give away your grace to distress and sorrow." Now this girl was so pretty and she was so playful that Abdu'l-Wahhab got out of control and however much he tried not to loose his heart to her, it was to no avail. The poor old man could not help it and was seized by the fire of love. He held his chest out against the arrows of fiery love, but they came and sank deep inside, but he still patiently held out. For forty nights she came and displayed such magic tricks and sent Abdu'l-Wahhab completely beyond himself making him fall madly in love. But he was patient indeed: every now and then his senses would come back and he drowned the fire of love with the water of patience.

Asatur appeared one day and summoned his daughter and said, "My darling how is it going?" She answered, "Father dear, I did not manage it yet, I haven't converted him yet." He immediately ordered and they went and tied Abdu'l-Wahhab and dragged him in the presence of the caesar. They brought him up to the gallows [A 338] and tied his eyes. The caesar said, "I had decided not to kill him hoping he would enter my religion. Since he does not want to become a servant of the Messiah, cut his neck off at once!" The guards drew their swords and walked against Abdu'l-Wahhab, but just at that moment the girl

rushed in through the door, asked for pardon, took Abdu'l-Wahhab and brought him to her own room. She said, "Abdu'l-Wahhab, life is better than death -good grief, take a lovely girl like me in your arms and let us spend the rest of our lives together." She was so playful and coquettish that Abdu'l-Wahhab was beyond himself. Inside his heart a voice was saying, "At least in my heart my religion is steadfast. Let me make a confession in words and fool them and take such a lovely maiden in my arms and fulfill my desire. In any event the fact is that if I do not confess they will kill me, and life is better than death." So in this way he fastened his heart on the true path but with his tongue he said to the girl, "Sweetheart, let it be as you say. I accept your order and I am all yours/faithfully obedient." The girl heard that and was delighted and left her arm over Abdu'l-Wahhab's neck and started kissing him. She filled a glass and offered it to him. The poor old man took it in his hands and drank it without much ado. As soon as he drank the wine they rushed the good news to the caesar: [A 339] "Abdu'l-Wahhab has converted."

That infidel was of course pleased and rushed to Abdu'l-Wahhab. He too offered him a glass and Abdu'l-Wahhab drank it in mirth. The girl would offer him a glass and then the caesar another, until Abdu'l-Wahhab's head became hot and sleepy and he forgot who he was. Then the caesar gave the order and they decorated the city and prepared for celebrations. They paraded him around the whole city and went to all the churches. The priests came out and visited him. They washed Abdu'l-Wahhab with the water of worship, dressed him in a priest's robe and a high hat, tied a *zunnar* around his waist, and made him prostrate in front of idols and fed him pork meat. Then they brought him to the presence of the caesar. The caesar himself walked up to him and sprinkled coins over him and gave him all the same clothes as he himself was wearing. Then the monks brought his daughter and the caesar offered her to Abdu'l-Wahhab in marriage. In addition he gave him a thousand servants and maidens, four great cities, thirty castles and endless gifts. They celebrated for seven days.

They lead Hurimang and Abdu'l-Wahhab to the bridal chamber. Abdu'l-Wahhab was extremely drunk and he fell down asleep. The girl stood there by his head and was observing his face when she saw a white bird coming out of Abdu'l-Wahhab's mouth [A 340] and flying away and then a hideous black bird coming back into his mouth. Right at that moment that old man of light with the beautiful face became pitch dark and his light disappeared. He was all pitch black, all of his splendor had disappeared. He woke up, sat up and said, "Bring me some wine, I feel sweetly dizzy." She brought him some wine and they had a few glasses. Then she told him all about her vision. Abdu'l-Wahhab burst into tears and said, "That white bird was my faith and that black one was the disbelief which took faith's place. Alas, so many years that I worshipped and went on pilgrimages and

ghazas, it's all gone in the wind. Disbelief and error have taken the place of my Muslimhood." He sobbed and the girl said, "It's all gone now, here, drink this glass" and while she was offering him the glass there was a turbulence and a severed head dropped from the sky, still fresh with blood gushing out. The girl screamed and Abdu'l-Wahhab said, "Hey, do not scream, let me have a look." He got his sword and climbed to the roof. He looked at all four sides but did not see anyone and came back down saying, "I did not find anyone." As soon as he sat down there was again a loud noise, even more terrible than before: another severed head dropped from the open sky. Abdu'l-Wahhab [A 341] got upset and, sword in hand, climbed to the roof again, but did not find a single soul. He was bewildered and came back downstairs, but this time he didn't even find the girl. He cried for help and they informed the caesar whose blood froze when he saw those freshly severed heads. The following morning they looked around but saw and found nothing. They all said, "Battal did this." Forty days passed after this.

Meanwhile, Amir Umar and Sayyid stayed forty days in Baghdad with the caliph and he presented everyone with robes of honor and sent them back to Malatya. One of those days they reached Malatya and the people came out to meet them. Sayyid noticed that his two sons and Abdu'l-Wahhab were not there. He asked about them and they told him right away. He had no patience, he immediately changed his clothes and set out in the direction of Rûm along with Musa b. Juda. When they reached Rûm the people there were saying to each other, "That old man, Abdu'l-Wahhab, the one who has seen the face of the prophet, came over to Rûm and fell in love with the caesar's daughter. He converted and abandoned his religion and became a renegade and the caesar gave him his daughter Hurimang to marry. But then the very evening of the bridal chamber Battal came and snatched the girl away, so he was left in darkness, a desperate soul."

When Sayyid heard these words he sighed and said, "Good grief, look at what happened to the poor old man." [A 342] He pulled Musa aside and said, "Do not go anywhere until I am back" and he set out for the caesar. The caesar for his part had set up his throne and gathered all the notable begs that there were. They were having a council and discussing, "What shall we do to take our revenge from this Battal?" Abdu'l-Wahhab was sitting on a red golden chair with a crown on his head and had a few glasses already and was drunk. All of a sudden an old man entered and greeted the caesar and walked up to Abdu'l-Wahhab and punched him so hard that his mouth and nose bled badly and three teeth went down his throat. He fell from his chair and rolled down, got back up but did not say a single word. The old man took Abdu'l-Wahhab's seat and no one had the guts to say a single word, they all remained with their mouths shut and lowered their heads. The caesar was bitterly saddened. He raised his head and said in grief, "Who might you be to

come and act like this here in my presence?" The old man answered, "The Faghfur of Chîn has sent me, I am an ambassador of the Shah of Chin. He heard that you gave your daughter to someone else and was terrible grieved. I came to let him know how that man feels, and well, you have seen what I have done with him." The caesar sighed, "Ah, what good is it now? Where is my daughter? She has disappeared [A 343] and I do not know what happened to her. And where is my son Takfur? And so many boys and girls, Battal has snatched them all" and burst into tears. The old man got up from his place and said, "I will be right back" and got out. Right then Abdu'l-Wahhab came back in and the caesar said, "Hey, what's with you? This person came and humiliated you so badly in front of so many notable begs and you didn't even manage to tell him a couple of words?" This is how he answered the caesar at once, "You should be grateful that he did not attack you and that, whatever he did, he did it to me." The caesar said, "Who is that person, do you know?" He said, "I certainly do" and the caesar said, "Well then, who is he?" He said, "He is Battal." Then the caesar gave the order at once to start pursuing Sayyid.

Meanwhile Sayyid came straight to Musa from there and told him the whole story of Abdu'l-Wahhab and they both shed tears together. Then they pressed on and came to a monastery and knocked at the gate. A monk came out and said, "Who are you?" He replied, "I am Battal and this here is my servant. I leave him in your supervision. If I come back, all is well, if not, you may keep him here and put him to use." The monk agreed to it out of his fear. Sayyid left Musa there and he got out and left. But right then, dust was raised and the caesar appeared. They encircled Sayyid and Falaqrat the Frank, [A 344] an evil cursed wretch, marched against Sayyid. They showered him with arrows and Sayyid gave a war-cry and charged in attack. He fought bravely until the evening. It was a bitter fight and as soon as it became dark, he cut through one flank and got out.

Until the following morning he reached the seashore. He saw two persons and they asked him, "Who are you?" He said, "I am a servant of the caesar, they call me Mahruz and I have come looking for Battal. He came and behaved very badly right in front of the caesar, he punched Abdu'l-Wahhab and broke three of his teeth. Then the caesar chased him and he fought with us, only he disappeared when it became dark, so I've come here looking for him. If you know where he has gone, tell me right away and I will give you his horse and clothes and send his body to the caesar." They said, "We also are looking for him because one evening he came and snatched our sister." They took out some bread and ate it together with Sayyid. Then they got up and left. Sayyid stayed there. He was very sleepy, so he slept for a while.

The cursed Falaqrat with a few of his men came upon Sayyid. When he saw that he was sleeping he immediately ordered and they fell upon him, did not let him move and tied

him up. Sayyid saw Falaqrat standing on top of him and realized that they had captured him. He said, "Why are you holding me?" Falaqrat said, "You are Battal. I was looking for you and the Fire of Light gave me the fortune and I got you." [A 345] Sayyid said, "I am not who you think I am! I am a servant of the caesar and my name is Mahruz." The cursed wretch said, "Your evil tricks are plenty but I am not going to be fooled by your tricks." Right then two young men came along, saw that they had captured and tied Sayyid and they said, "Hey, this the caesar's servant Mahruz, why have you tied him up?" Falaqrat said, "This is Battal" and they said, "No he isn't." The argument went on for long until the swords entered the picture and the two young men were killed.

Then Falaqrat took Sayyid and they came to a village where they settled. They brought Sayyid out in the public and he said, "Battal you slaughterer, where's my daughter? What did you do with her? Tell me what you did with all that wealth that you took from Rûm, where it is, and I will set you free." He hit him with a wooden club and tortured him. Sayyid said, "I have not seen your sister nor do I know about her. As for the goods, I have never in my life amassed wealth. Whatever came to my hands from the *ghazas* I distributed to the dervishes. My family has never accepted any wealth and I never have done so myself." But the cursed wretch would not believe him. Instead, he had a guard in place who kept beating Sayyid with a hard wooden club.

Now there was a oil mill at that village and he brought Sayyid there and fastened him to the mill's stone. He placed a servant guard there who beat and tortured him for three days. He sent another servant to the caesar with the message, "I have captured Battal, [A 346] what is your order? He himself went over to Sayyid and said, "Battal give me my sister and tell me where you buried all that wealth and abandon the religion of Muhammad and come to mine, otherwise beware, I have informed the caesar myself and he is on his way. He will grant you no mercy and kill you straight away." Sayyid said, "Bring me a pen-case, a pen and paper and I shall write down where the treasures are and grant them to you. I shall also enter your religion but on the condition that you will give me your sister." Falaqrat said, "If what you say is true, then I will not hand you over to the caesar." Sayyid said, "If you are not going to hand me over to the caesar, I will on my part make you a padishah at Rûm and shall place you on the throne in his place. I will also capture the caliph and hand him over to you and you may do what you like with him." That silly cursed wretch was delighted and pleased. He ordered at once and they brought pen and paper and Sayyid said, "Ask everyone to leave lest anyone finds out about our secret regarding this agreement we've made." Falaqrat locked the door of the mill and Sayyid said, "Now untie one of my hands so I can hold the pen and write down the letter."

The mindless cursed wretch freed Sayyid's hand and sat next to him. Meanwhile, Sayyid [A 347] lifted his hand and grasped Falaqrat's throat and pressed so tight that he lost his senses and fell down. Sayyid made a great effort and broke the bonds of his other hand and freed it. Then he took off Falaqrat's clothes and put them on himself and put his own clothes on Falaqrat. Then he made his appearance such that no one would recognize him and say, "Here is our own master." He put his own helmet on Falaqrat's head and then he tied the cursed wretch at the place where they had tied himself. He punched him so many times in the face that it his eyes and cheeks became one. When he came back to his senses he opened his eyes and saw himself tied at the mill stone he screamed, "Hey , who tied me up here?" Sayyid said, "Battal you slaughterer, you are no longer going to escape from me with your tricks. Tell me at once what you did with my sister, where the caesar's son Takfur and your treasure are." Falaqrat said, "Hey, I am Falaqrat and you are Battal. Just a moment ago you were tied up here, what magic charm did you recite and manage to tie me in your place?" Sayyid walked up to him and said, "What sort of nonsense are you talking now?" and punched him so hard in the face that his teeth went down his throat and his eyes and cheeks became one. Then Sayyid summoned Falaqrat 's servants, "Come along you fools," and opened the gate. [A 348] They came inside and he handed one of them a hard wooden club and said, "Whenever he speaks, hit him." Now he started screaming, "I am Falaqrat and he is Battal" but the servant did not listen and was hitting him with the club. Falaqrat would say , "Battal you trickster, no one is fooled by your tricks anymore" and the servant would hit him. He hit in the face, in the eye, on his head until he turned him into a great mess. It was right then that the caesar arrived. Sayyid came out to meet him, rubbed his face on the ground and said, "My lord, for your good fortune, I captured this trickster thief. I've been torturing him for three days now but he will not confess about your son or my sister."

The caesar was delighted and pleased and he took off all the clothes she was wearing and gave them to Sayyid and came to the mill. Falaqrat saw the caesar and cried for help saying, "My lord for the sake of the Fire of Light help me: I am Falaqrat and he is Battal." The caesar came close and said, "Hey Battal you trickster, do you know what you have done to me? Where is my grandfather, where is my father, where's my sister, where's my son Takfur Shah, where's so many of my begs? Do you still think I would let you go alive or trust any of your myriad of tricks?" He was screaming, "For Jesus' sake, I am Falaqrat and he is Battal!" Sayyid said to that servant, "Don't let this trickster get the upper hand here, hit him so he does not speak." He hit him so much that blood started flowing from his head. Sayyid said, "My lord, you see what [A 349] a rogue thief he is?" and he went further out and got a whip. He struck him with it and said, "I am going to kill you

now, confess at once that you are Battal." Falaqrat saw that no one was listening to his words and he said and confessed, "Al right, yes, I am Battal." Sayyid then took the whip in his hand and came near and said, "Tell us now what happened to the padishah's son and daughter, what you did to them. Tell us at once what you did with all the treasures you amassed, where did you bury them?" Falaqrat said, "My lord I am Falaqrat and he is Battal. He got me in this situation with a foul deceit but no one knows about it. He is the one who knows about your son and daughter, what can I tell you?" The caesar laughed and said, "Battal, when it's about deceit, you are the one for them, aren't you? But from now on there is no help: you've fallen in the claws of an evil person." Sayyid said, "My lord, we've already spent too much time talking. Let us not miss this chance. With your permission, give the order and let me finish him off." The caesar said, "You know better" and he stepped out and left. Sayyid ordered and they brought firewood, lit it up and burned Falaqrat on the pyre. He surrendered his soul to hell screaming and howling as he turned to ashes.

Sayyid came to the caesar and prayed and afterwards the caesar gave him his crown and presented him with robes of honor. Once again the world around was filled with the cries, "They've burned Sayyid at such and such a place." [A 350] The news reached Malatya and the friends heard it and were shocked with despair. They said, "It just might be a lie again!"

Meanwhile Sayyid said, "My lord, Battal couldn't have come to this clime alone, so if you order me I shall seek out his friends, and with the good fortune of the Fire of Light I might capture them." He took a hundred sturdy men with him and set out in one direction. When he distanced himself from the caesar he kept offering thanks to God the Almighty saying, "God, it is all due to your divine grace and power. I am just the instrument moving along, you are the one who causes things to move. But there is still one difficulty: my own two sons and so many princes and maidens have disappeared from these climes, and they all think and say that it was Battal who snatched them. My humble wish is that you make this issue too clear to me."

Then he pressed on and came to the monastery where he had placed Musa. He knocked on the monastery's gate and the monk came outside, saw Sayyid and paid his respects. Sayyid said, "There is someone here from the friends of Battal, bring him out at once." The monk said, "I am afraid of Battal" and Sayyid said, "I have killed him and burned him on fire, you may forget your hopes for him." The monk went at once and brought Musa all tied up and entrusted him to Sayyid. They took him and went on for a while and then they said, "We must have him killed." Sayyid said, "Give him to me [A 351] and let me torture him and find out about his situation. You may go along."



With these words he took Musa and walked away. Then Musa took a look and saw that it was Battal. He fell at Battal's feet and Sayyid freed his hands. They talked for a while before heading back for the monastery. They came and knocked at the gate and the monk came rushing. Sayyid said, "Where's the servant I had entrusted to you?" and the monk replied, "Falaqrat just picked him up and left." Sayyid said, "I trusted him in your protection: why did you give him away?" He replied, "He said that he had killed you, burned you on fire, he said" Sayyid got upset and came down and invited the monks to religion but without any success, so he hanged forty monks from the gate of the monastery.

Then they left from there as well. On the way Sayyid said, "Musa, I am in a terrible situation and I can find no way out: my two sons have disappeared and the sons and daughters of so many begs have gotten lost as well. I do not know what happened to any of them. I searched the entire Rûm here, but did not find any trace of them. The people keep saying 'Surely it is Battal who's up to this' and I remain here helpless. But I do know one thing, yes, this no work of a human, this is the work of a demon." Musa said, "Hopefully God Almighty will grace you with his good fortune and we will find hem."

They pressed on and reached the seashore [A 352] and camped by a fountain. They performed their ablutions and prayers and saw that a whole flock of pigs appeared. A handsome young man behind them was looking after them but was crying and sighing heavily, "Alas, alas, we are completely helpless now that they have killed delicate Sayyid Battal, he was our only hope, that he would come here and set us all free. Alas, we have no other escape." He sighed like that and beat his chest. He looked out and saw Sayyid. He came forth and greeted them saying, "Hey helpless ones, what are you sitting here for? Get up and go. This is no place to stay, it only means trouble." Sayyid said, "Who are you and what are you doing here?" He answered, "My name is Ibrahim b. Abu Sa'id. I had a lot of property in Baghdad. We were forty merchants when we came and settled here by this spring when a witch (*jazu*) came by and put a spell on us and kept us bound. She killed my friends and I've been a prisoner here forty years in the hands of a woman -she's the wife of Guzandu Jazu. Battal has killed her husband but she has two sons. One of them is here and the other in the underground tomb of Dhu'l-Qarnayn. The one who is here is called Hilal, and he abducts all the virgin maidens he hears about. Some of them he roasts and eats, some he leaves in prison. Come on now, go away, this is no place to stay." He spoke these words and started crying. [A 353]

All of a sudden the hideous woman came out and the young man sighed and said, "Here she comes." Sayyid took a look and saw a hideous monster demon stark naked, with her breasts dangling like huge cheese sacs. When she saw Sayyid she started laughing loudly and said, "Battal you slaughterer, what are you doing around here? Woe to

you now that I found you -you've killed my man Guzandu and imprisoned my sons. Woe that I got hold of you, I am going to kill you today and spare the world from your evil." She recited a spell and clouds appeared and the world became overcast and dark. She sprayed fire over Sayyid but he recited the prayer of the prophet Khidr and the spell was canceled. The cursed wretch got upset and she lifted a rock as big as a mountain and cast it at Sayyid. Sayyid jumped away from the place he had been standing on and moved somewhere else, but the woman reached for another rock. Sayyid took out one of the arrows of prophet Khidr, strung it and aimed at her. The arrow pierced her eye and came out from the back of her head. The sorceress fell down and surrendered her soul to hell.

The young man rushed and fell to Sayyid's feet and prayed for him. Right then there was a great noise up in the mountain and a voice came, "Battal you slaughterer, you have killed my father and you've killed my mother, so now I am going to have your two sons roasted and feast on them at once. Where do you think you can go from here?" [A 354]

Empty place for miniature.

When Sayyid heard this voice he walked up towards the mountain leaving Musa with the young man. When he came to the foot of the mountain it became terribly dark but he managed to find a path and climbed in the darkness. As soon as he reached the top, the world was full of light again. There was a great pond in the middle of a huge meadow. In the middle of the pond there was a rock with smoke coming out of it. Sayyid said to himself, "Whatever is going on, it's all happening over there." [A 355] With the back of his sword he split the water open at a few places and the water ran down the valley. Sayyid walked up to the rock and snatched it with his hand. Then he saw it was a well, pitch dark but with a ladder made of dried skin. He drew the sword of Zahhak and the three jewels sparkled and the place was light up. He went down forty steps to the bottom of the well. His eyes adjusted to the darkness and he saw a gallery, a thousand foot long. He walked and came up to a gate. It was closed but he hit it open with his hands and found himself in a fortified city. He passed by houses, pavilions, markets and reached the palace, where there were many curtains hanging. He lifted one curtain and went inside and saw four masterly built benches facing one another and a Sulayman's throne in the middle. The whole interior of the palace was decorated with golden carpets and on every bench there were forty cells filled with gold and silver. Only there was no one walking about.

Sayyid went through another door and saw three benches. Each bench had a golden throne on top and there was a maiden asleep in each one. Sayyid walked up to them

and undid their covers: they were dead and the covers had putrefied. There was a marble column in the middle of the palace with an inscription on it. This is what was inscribed:

"In the name of the Creator of all beings whose existence is necessary, I am the king Dhu'l Qarnayn who has subjugated the seven climes. I have constructed this place and these three maidens are my daughters. Their mother was [A 356] an extremely beautiful and pious lady. She also had a sister who was in love with me and for that reason she lead he astray with words like: 'Your mother does not want you to find a man, you are going to grow old and bitter in your own home. You should know that the joy of the world is with a husband and with a little son. The world is tasteless without a man and a little child. So go now and poison your mother and I will bring you my son and look after you better than her.' That's what she would say and these mindless ones believed her. They poisoned and killed their mother. Then they told me all about it and I came here and had this city and this palace built and gave everyone of them attendants and beautiful slave girls and sustenance for fifty years. Then I hid this place and made it safe it with a talisman. Aristotle the Greek wise man was my vizier and I asked him 'Will any human being ever find his way to this place here?' He tried hard looking for an answer. He took an astrolabe in his hand and said, "Indeed someone will come, a descendant from the line of the last Apostle of the time, Muhammad the Chosen -may peace be upon Him. He will be a brave warrior, a ghazi and a knowledgeable and intelligent person, demons and wizards (*jazu*) will die in his hands. He will come here looking for his two lost sons. [A 357] There will be a demon moving around here. His food will be padishahs' daughters. That young man will come and destroy the demon and make the world safe from his evil. Young man, when you do come to this place, please extend my greetings to the seal of the prophets, Muhammad from Arabia, and tell Him 'Dhu'l Qarnayn ruled the whole world, from Qaf to Qaf. He has been asking for God's benediction upon You and he has chosen You and has become a member of Your community.' Tell him also that on the Day of Judgment he should not deprive me of his forgiveness. Young man, watch out well and do not be conceited by the power of your arms. Beware and do not open the way for the carnal soul, since the carnal soul has excited many to sedition."

The inscription contained plenty more words of advice and when Sayyid finished reading it he burst into tears.

Then he entered those cells and saw that they were all filled with pearls and jewels and valuables beyond belief. He saw yet another door and opened it and got inside and saw another decorated palace with forty lovely maidens sitting around. They heard

Sayyid's footsteps and got scared but when they saw his face they fell to his feet and said, "It has come true, Apostle of God. Welcome Battal Ghazi, dear beloved of Muhammad Mustafa, you have stepped in the right time." Sayyid said, "How did you recognize me?" and the maidens said, "We cried bitterly during the night [A 358] and wailed and we saw the beautiful Fatima -may God be pleased by Her. We fell at her feet and said 'Please help us and rescue us from the prison of this cursed wretch.' She said 'Do not worry at all: tomorrow Sayyid Battal Ghazi is on his way and he will liberate you.' That cursed demon comes in the day and selects two of us, has them roasted and eats them." Sayyid said, "Which one of you is the caesar's daughter?" She stood up and came and fell at his feet. Sayyid said, "Where is this demon's living place?" and they showed him a door.

Sayyid went outside and there was a garden in the middle of a great field with a pavilion whose tower reached the high heavens. Sayyid walked around for a while touring the garden, and then came to the pavilion. He went inside and saw the cursed monster, sixty cubits tall, ready to have his feast. He had lit a huge bonfire and had a huge bottle next to him. Two beautiful maidens as bright as the shining moon were lying down with their hands tied up. Sayyid drew the sword of Zahhak and said, "Cursed wretch, you may have done so many horrible things like that, but the time has now come for the Muslims to be rid of your evil." The demon raised his head and said, "Battal you slaughterer, deceiver and scoundrel, where did you think you could hide your soul from me? I was supposed to go out looking for you, but my good fortune dropped you here at my feet." [A 359] He grabbed his club which was right there beside him, and hurled it at Sayyid. Sayyid jumped and the club landed and was buried in the ground. Before he took it in his hands again Sayyid hit him with the sword underneath the armpit so hard that his hand and head went flying in the air. The cursed wretch fell down and surrendered his soul to hell. Sayyid untied the hands of those two maidens and they fell at his feet. Then the caesar's daughter and the other maidens came over and offered prayers of thanks to Sayyid. Sayyid cut the demon's head off.

Empty place for miniature.

They took whatever valuable they could find and they also [A 360] found four hundred horses. They loaded the treasures, he had the maidens climb on horse back and they came to Musa and Sa'id. They saw them and were delighted and pleased. Then they set out on the road to Istanbul.

On the way a priest appeared, saw Sayyid and said, "Who are you and what's your name?" Sayyid said, "Who did you think I looked like?" He said, "In fact, I saw a

resemblance with Battal." Sayyid said, "You've recognized me well" and the priest said, "It is such a strange thing: they have burned you on fire so many times, they've killed you on so many other occasions and still you always come back to life." Sayyid said, "God the Almighty has created me for a certain task and until it is completed I am not to die." When the monk heard that he became a Muslim. Sayyid asked for news of the caesar and he said, "He has gathered an army and is marching against Malatya, but Abdu'l-Wahhab did not go, he's here. Every day he comes to the place where they burned you on fire and cries and wails and then goes back again." While they were talking like this suddenly some imperial cavalry men appeared and the monk said, "Well, this is Abdu'l-Wahhab coming."

Meanwhile, as it happened, Abdu'l-Wahhab was hunting and a dove appeared right in front of him. He let his falcon loose and it dropped the dove on Sayyid. Sayyid shot the falcon with an arrow and brought it down. Abdu'l-Wahhab [A 361] reached and saw that the falcon had dropped down and came right up to Sayyid and said, "Hey, why did you kill my falcon?" Sayyid said, "Why did you abandon your religion?" Abdu'l-Wahhab said, "I only accepted what fate sent me." Sayyid said, "Well now your falcon was also a victim of its fate." Sayyid opened his mouth and recited with a beautiful voice the chapter of the Merciful from the Koran. When Abdu'l-Wahhab heard Sayyid's singing he lost his senses and fell off his horse. Sayyid dismounted and took Abdu'l-Wahhab's head on his knee. His senses came back and he opened his eyes and said, "Brave warrior, I saw your blessed face, but was it a dream or a fantasy?" Sayyid said, "Abdu'l-Wahhab open your eyes and collect your mind in your head, for this not some dream of yours." Right then Abdu'l-Wahhab stood up, took out his dagger and cut his *zunnar* and renewed his faith. His servants accepted the faith too. Following Sayyid arrived all the maidens and Abdu'l-Wahhab saw the daughter of the caesar amongst them and was delighted. They exchanged greetings and then Sayyid told Abdu'l-Wahhab the story of the maidens and the story of the demon. He was very pleased and offered many prayers of thanks to Sayyid.

Then they set out and came to the city and the maiden collected everything she had from gold and silver and then shouted, "I am going to my father" [A 362] and they got out and left. Sayyid asked for news of the caesar and Abdu'l-Wahhab said, "He has gathered four hundred thousand men and is marching against Malatya." Sayyid said, "And I have finally found out what happened to my sons: they are on the mountain of Qaf, prisoners of the son of Guzandu Jazu. God the Almighty willing I shall set out for the mountain of Qaf, but right now it won't do to abandon the Muslims and go there."

Meanwhile on the other side, the caesar Asatur appeared against Malatya and the news reached the friends so Amir Umar immediately sent emissaries to the caliph informing him of the situation. He also sent letters all around and gathered an army of

thirty thousand cavalry and six thousand infantry. When the emissary reached the caliph Ma'mun he informed him of the situation with the caesar. The caliph heard the news and fell in despair. When he learned about Sayyid's death he shed a lot of tears. There were two brave warriors standing by there, one called Hashim and another Hamid. With them in the front they set out for Malatya.

Meanwhile, the army of Malatya mounted and moved out seventy miles away from the city to meet the advancing army of the infidels. All of a sudden dust was raised and the army of the caesar appeared. The caesar Asatur arrived with twenty elephants in front of him and seven sultans that had come together with him. They lined up for battle across from each other. But evening had come and they camped. Guards were posted from both armies. Both armies waited till the morning [A 363] but at the break of dawn the drums of war rolled and the armies mounted on their horses and lined up again. They stood there watching who watching who would enter the battlefield and who would display some bravery.

Suddenly dust was raised on the side of Rûm and a yellow banner showed itself from within the dust. At its foot was the leader of the ghazis, Sayyid Battal Ghazi riding on Ashqar with the mace of Samsuvar on his shoulder, with Abdu'l-Wahhab beside him. As soon as the Sunnis saw him they shouted loudly, "Here comes the brave warrior, our ghazi." They rejoiced and came to meet them. They all dismounted, rubbed their faces on the ground and exchanged greetings. First they cried together, then they rejoiced.

When the caesar Asatur saw Sayyid he was astonished and said, "Alas, what shall I do, this deceiver has arrived again." While he was saying that a person came and informed him, "Battal has come and brought your daughter and Abdu'l-Wahhab became Muslim again. Your daughter collected all the useful things she could find in Istanbul and left saying 'I am going to my father'. So here they are now, they've arrived." The caesar heard these news and sighed loudly. Fire burned his inside, and he broke into sobs. There was no fighting that day, the two armies came and camped.

Sayyid told all his adventures to the friends and they all offered prayers of thanks. Amir Umar said, "We sent a letter to the caliph [A 364] and he will come as well." Sayyid immediately wrote another letter to the caliph and explained his own story and condition with these words, "Don't you put yourselves in any trouble at all and come here, it is no longer necessary. Pray that good fortune be with us from where you are, just so that I may be able to punish the caesar." They prepared the letter and sent it. The letter reached the caliph and he was delighted and very pleased and everyone rejoiced.

Meanwhile on the other side, Asatur caesar settled down in camp but was in great disarray. He sat down in despair and said, "Alas, alas, what shall I do, my liver is burned

out because of Battal: I've dropped him in the well of hell and he did not die, Taryun burned him in fire and he did not die, Falaqrat burned him in fire a second time around and he still came back to life." He held his kerchief in his mouth and cried with great sobs. He had a vizier, a renegade from the children of Yusuf Hajjaj whose name was Hantala. He got up and said, "My lord, do not worry, I am going to discover Battal's secret tonight and bring it to you." The caesar said, "If you succeed in doing what you promised I shall give you half of my property, and I shall annihilate the Mohammedans and give you the throne and kingdom of the caliph." The cursed renegade Hantala changed his clothes and off he went.

Meanwhile that night Hamid and Hashim arrived from the caliph with a hundred thousand men and Amir Umar treated them to his hospitality. Hashim had gone out on the guard post while Qanatur was out on guard from the caesar's army. The cursed Hantala [A 365] came and stood waiting close to Sayyid's tent and had his diamond dagger ready to attack him as soon as he came outside. When Hashim had gone out on guard the Sunnis dispersed and everyone retired to his one quarters. Sayyid got up and went outside and as he was about to cross over, his eyes fell upon the cursed wretch who had been sitting in the darkness. The cursed wretch was seized by trembling and the dagger fell from his hand. Sayyid saw him, picked up the dagger and grabbed Hantala by the beard and brought him inside to light. Sayyid asked him what was going on and he told the plain truth. Sayyid tied him up and said, "I am going to punish you tomorrow."

Meanwhile Hashim with his ten thousand men on the vanguard came up to Qanatur and cut him in two pieces with one blow. He killed thirty thousand infidels and let himself loose on the army of the caesar. That huge army was caught at unawares and was seized with great terror. The infidels got up, reached for their swords and slaughtered each other. Until the morning twenty thousand infidels were put to the sword. As soon as it dawned the two armies mounted and arranged their lines for battle. Upon Sayyid's order they set up a gallows beam in the middle of the battlefield and hanged Hantala. When the caesar saw that he wailed a lot. The caesar's daughter Hurimang set out and came to Sayyid's presence and said, "I have a few things to tell my father, please allow me to write them down. [A 366] Let me quickly tell him my adventures, how I fell into such troubles and how Sayyid liberated me, and he might come our way."

Sayyid gave his permission and the maiden told her whole adventure, in every detail, and then said, "The true religion is the religion of Muhammad: this person does whatever he does thanks to the blessing of the miracles of Muhammad. So you come too now and become a Muslim or at least accept your obligation to pay tribute and make peace with this fellow otherwise you will perish yourself. Collect your mind in your head and do

not destroy yourself in vain." They found a prisoner and gave him the letter and he brought it over to the caesar who tore it up in pieces when he read it.

There was a infidel called Yamliha. He was a wrestler and he entered the battlefield. Muhsin entered from the side of the Muslims and when he came face to face with Yamliha he destroyed him with one blow. Then a renegade called Yunin, the son of the regent of Syria, came to face Muhsin. Muhsin said, "You infidel, why did you go and abandon your religion? Turn Muslim at once, otherwise you know...." They attacked one another and Muhsin hit him with his sword and cut him in two pieces. Another infidel came in and Muhsin killed him as well. But then Nestor came in and brought Muhsin down with one blow.

Sayyid gave a war-cry in the manner of Hamza and came opposite Nestor. Nestor said, "Battal you slaughterer, [A 367] where were you again? Are you some sort of barley grain and you come out alive and well from under the stone of a mill? Watch now what I am going to do with you" and with these words hurled his sword. Sayyid avoided it, and now it was his turn. He spurred Ashqar and came over and grabbed Nestor by the belt and lifted him high up before throwing him to the ground. Then he dismounted and tied him up and brought him to the corner of the battlefield. He ordered and they set up a wooden beam and hanged Nestor head downwards. They skinned him while he was still alive and he surrendered his soul to hell. They filled his skin with grass and hung it there.

When the army of the infidels saw that, fear settled over them and no one else dared to enter the battlefield. Asatur ordered and they attacked all at once and encircled Sayyid. The Sunnis too, shouting '*God is Great*' charged in attack. The Sunnis fought like dragons and they spilled the infidels' blood. There was fighting until the evening that day and as time passed the fighting became more heated up and it lasted until the following morning. There was only a very few Muslims and they were in a very tight spot. But at dawn's break dust was raised on the road from Baghdad and the caliph appeared with a hundred thousand Khwarazmians, all Sunni Muslims who let themselves loose on the infidels. When Sayyid saw that the caliph had arrived he took aim on the caesar's banner. However many arrows they threw and how hard they fought to stop him, it was to no avail. He reached over and [A 368] hurled a lance at the caesar's throne. Asatur jumped off his throne, mounted a fresh horse they pulled out for him, and fled. Sayyid snatched the banner, the infidels broke their ranks and the Sunnis, each fighting like a dragon, killed and took them prisoners. They pillaged and held sway. Then they all gathered around the caliph, but Sayyid was no where to be seen. They looked for him three days and did not know whether he was alive or dead.



Meanwhile the caesar went fleeing for three days until he came, alone, to a fountain. There was a monastery near by and he saw a monk coming. The monk came right in front of him and offered prayers saying, "Lord, be so kind and let us go the monastery and rest for a while and have a few glasses." Asatur looked closely and saw that it was Battal! He tried to escape but Battal grabbed him by the rim of his clothes and tied his hands behind his head.

The Sunnis were in despair on account of Sayyid when all of a sudden he appeared together with Asatur all tied up. He went straight to the caliph. The caliph Ma'mun kissed Sayyid on both eyes and Sayyid immediately ordered to have Asatur brought in. All the notable begs were sitting around the caliph while they set up the gallows. The fearful guards stood by all ready. Sayyid raised his head and said, "Caesar, you have now heard your daughter's story and you have seen with your own eyes all the things that I did. It was all thanks to the blessings of the light of Muhammad. Now become a Muslim and I will restore you back to your position."

Empty place for miniature.

The caesar said, "Brave warrior, all of what you said is true, but as soon as I become Muslim all my community will turn their faces away from me and I will no longer have what to live on." Sayyid said, "If anyone does not obey you, you just report him to me, and I will take care of him." Asatur said, "There is something else. Bring me my son Takfur back, and I will have no further requests, [A 369]

Empty space for miniature.

I will become a Muslim." Sayyid said, "Write this with your hand that if you do not become Muslim I am not to have any mercy and kill you." The Caesar promised in writing, "May I see my son's face and become a Muslim!" Right then Sayyid freed his hands and dressed him in expensive robes of honor. He also freed ten thousand prisoners and entrusted them to the caesar. They also gave him banners and flags. Then the caliph took the road back to Baghdad and Sayyid said, "Now I am going to look for my son at the mountain of Qaf. Let us hope that, God willing, I shall come back." All the leaders prayed for Sayyid. He bid his friends farewell and together with Asatur they came to the castle of Sunbatiya at the seashore. They stayed put there for a couple of days and then Sayyid said, "Asatur I need a good sea captain who knows the ways of the sea well to take me to the foot of mountain Qaf. The caesar had an experienced captain called Qintar and he

summoned him. He addressed him in kind words and gave him provisions for two years. They boarded the ship and sailed off.

Sayyid took the boat everywhere there was a castle and an island and asked about his son, but to no avail. They sailed like that for a full six months until one day a large mountain appeared on the horizon. He said to the captain, "Lead the boat to that mountain." [A 371] The captain did so, and as soon as they reached the seashore Sayyid disembarked and saw a fountain. He performed his ablutions and prayers there and they spent the night there. As soon as it became dark in the night there appeared a great fire light. Sayyid told his travel companions, "You all go back to the boat and let me go and see what sort of fire this is" and set off. When he came close he saw that the flame was coming out of a cave.

He stepped forward and saw that forty black monsters were sitting around a huge bonfire they had lit, roasting pork and drinking. They were all drunk. One of the bigger ones said, "Friends, do you know at all why I've come over here?" and they replied, "No." He said, "Well, behind this mountain there is a city called Saylaf, and there is a padishah there called Asjad. He has a guard of thirty thousand men in armor. He also has a daughter called Huma Dil-Afruz with whom I have been in love for years." Each one of those sitting there made a boasting claim, "Let's go and get her." But he himself said, "This is my job, you sit here and I will be back" and got up and left. After a while he came back again and he had brought the maiden under his arms: she was as beautiful as the moon. He put her down beside him and made her sit, then offered her some wine but she refused. As soon as she saw the monsters she lost her senses. That cursed wretch hit her at the mouth with the back of his hand [A 372] and her mouth and nose started bleeding. He tied her hands and put her aside while they kept on drinking until they fell down drunk.

Sayyid came inside with his dagger in his hands and freed her hands. He also cut the heads of all forty of them and the maiden fell at Sayyid's feet and said, "Who are you good man to have come and set me free from this infidel?" Sayyid answered, "Well, how about you showing me the way so that I can take you to your place?" The two of them got on the road and crossed that mountain and came to Saylaf. He threw a lasso over the tower and climbed up, then he pulled the maiden up as well and brought her to the palace. He brought her inside from the window and hit the road again. He came out of the city to a fountain and performed his ablutions and prayers. He was very sleepy, so he lied down and slept. Suddenly he woke up and opened his eyes and saw forty dervishes with veiled faces sitting all around him. Sayyid got up and took a seat and the dervishes got up and greeted him and bowed in respect. They said, "Welcome cavalier of religion, brave warrior of the face of the earth." Sayyid said, "Dervishes, who am I?" and they said, "You are

Sayyid Battal Ghazi and we are the dervishes of this city. Tonight we saw the Apostle in our dream and he sent us to this place: 'Battal is lying there, go' he said. So we came with the instructions of the Apostle. You get up too now and let us take you to your place." Sayyid got up and [A 373] entered the city with them. They sat down for seven days conversing and then Sayyid said, "Friends, I have some other friends who are waiting for me at the seashore." They said, "The apostle has decreed that you are to stay here with us for forty days" and Sayyid said to himself, "Let me now treat them to something" and he took a jewel out of his arm bundle and told them, "Sell it and spend the money." Together with Sayyid they went to sell the jewel and sat down waiting for a buyer when suddenly two attendants came and prayed in front of Sayyid. They said, "Brave warrior, where have you been? I have been looking for you for forty days. Now if would please be as kind as to come with me, for Huma Dil-Afruz is summoning you." Sayyid said, "I am staying at such and such a lodge with the dervishes." As soon as they learned about Sayyid's living quarters they went and informed the maiden. Right on the spot Huma ordered to treat them with the warmest hospitality and so they came back to those forty dervishes and Sayyid and invited them over. They brought them to Huma's chambers. They cooked forty ducks and placed a jewel in each one. Then they served them to the dervishes saying, "This is your share, you may take it to your own chambers." Then they ate and drunk and the maiden came forth and fell at Sayyid's feet. She kissed his hand and foot and placed a thousand red coins in front of him, and asking for pardon sent them to their chambers.

After that the [A 374] dervishes tore up the ducks in order to eat them, found the jewels and were delighted. Sayyid also took the thousand red coins and came and gave them to the dervishes. One of the dervishes took his jewel to the bazaar to sell it. When the money-changer saw it he said, "Sit here for a minute, let me go and bring gold from my house." Only he went straight to the king and told him the story. Asjad was furious and immediately sent his servants saying, "Bring that sufi right here to me for I would like to find out what a jewel from my treasury is doing in his hands." So they came and brought the sufi to the king. Said the king, "Dervish, where did you find this jewel?" and the dervish answered, "An elder one of ours gave it to me -you'd have to ask him for the rest of the story." They sent envoys, and fetched Sayyid and the remaining dervishes. Asjad asked, "Now where did you find this jewel, I mean where did you steal it from?" Sayyid said, "My lord, I am no thief -God forbid, I am from the family of the prophet. Heavens, I must have given away as gifts a hundred thousand times this much. In any event the treasures of the whole world are not worth a penny for me." At once Asjad sent his men out and they collected all the merchants of the city. Asjad asked them, "Do you know this person at all?" One of them took a look and recognized Sayyid. He said, "My lord, your

good fortune has brought this one here and made him your prisoner: his thievery and sedition are infamous all over. My name is Satha [A 375] and I am the brother of Uqba the Judge. I am out for this person's blood: the number of padishahs he has killed is beyond fathom. Yes, your good fortune indeed has brought him to your feet. Why are you idly standing there? Give the order and kill him." Asjad felt a burning in his heart and he gave instructions and they took then outside and set up forty wooden gallows at once. They came to tie the hands of the dervishes and Sayyid did not move. They tied them all and it now was Sayyid's turn. A guard walked over to tie him his hands, but Sayyid hit him so hard with the back of his hand that his chin was smashed and he collapsed head down and was overwhelmed. One of the magistrates whipped his whip and Sayyid turned and punched him so hard that he also collapsed head downwards and his brains were spilled all over the ground. Then they all charged against Sayyid and he thrashed seven or eight people. Well as it turned out Huma's attendant was there watching and when he saw what had taken place he came over and informed her. She mounted quickly and came over to Sayyid. She cut through the crowd, dismounted from her horse and came and placed her head on Sayyid's foot and said, "Pardon me, brave warrior, I did not know..." She immediately freed the hands of those forty *sufis*. Asjad was informed and he also mounted and came over to his daughter saying, "Hey what's the matter with you? What are you doing?" The daughter said, "Calm down for a moment and listen: I've got news for you," and she described her predicament to her father. She said, "They are no thieves, I was the one who gave them the jewels." Asjad [A 376] collected himself and they immediately sent men out to that cave and they found the corpses of those infidels -they had swollen up like cheese bags. They came back and informed Asjad whose heart burned and came on foot and fell at Sayyid's feet. They took him and the forty *sufis* and came to the palace and he had Sayyid sit on a throne and treated them to his hospitality. Sayyid explained in every detail his own predicament and why he had come to this province. And so Asjad gave his daughter to Sayyid. He assigned ten thousand men to Sayyid, they rigged the ships and they sailed away.

They went for a whole month and then the wind became wild and the ships scattered. Sayyid got on a little boat together with an old man and they reached a mountain. The old man said, "Lord, you wait here, let me go out and see what sort of a place this is." He got out of the boat and went for a while until a castle appeared. When he came near he saw that there were three blacks standing by the gate. As soon as one of them saw him he came out to him and said, "Who are you" and he answered, "I am Battal's captain" and he said, "And who is Battal?" Then he said, "He's that fellow that captured the world with his schemes and he came to Saylaf and took Asjad's daughter." The others said, "Our leader

was in love with her and went out to hunt her down. Do you know anything about him?" The cursed Satha said, "Battal killed him along with those other forty blacks, and now, after he has killed my brother, he's after my own blood. I am [A 377] waiting for a good chance to get him myself. Actually right now I've brought him to the seashore, so why don't you hide around and let me go and fetch him. As soon as he falls asleep you can come and cut his head off." He made an agreement to that effect with them and came back to Sayyid saying, "Lord, I advanced for a while and came up to a castle but I was scared and did not go any further." Sayyid said, "You stay here, let me go and see." He went and looked around but did not find anyone. Meanwhile the blacks came and took the boat and hid it. Sayyid came back and said, "Where's the boat?" and the old man said, "A few people came and assailed me, so I abandoned the boat and fled, but they took the boat and left. Sayyid was sad and felt sleepy, so he lied down and slept. The cursed wretch immediately got up and came and informed the blacks who drew their swords and came upon Sayyid. But Sayyid saw the Commander of the Faithful Ali in his dream who said, "Get up my dear, they are attacking you." So Sayyid gave a thundering war-cry and got up. Those three infidels were so scared that they lost their senses and the swords fell from their hands. Sayyid cut their heads off and said, "Old man what is this, why did you not warn me?" and the cursed wretch said, "As soon as I saw them I lost my mind and was dumbfounded." While they were talking like this a coffer appeared in the sea, at times sinking and then coming back up again. Sayyid got on the boat, [A 378] he reached with his hand and pulled the coffer out to the shore. They lifted its cover and saw that there was a handsome young man inside, dressed in royal clothes. They sprinkled some water on his face and he came to his senses and got up. He sat down and Sayyid asked him some information, "Who are you and what happened to you?" The young man said, "I am a Muslim, one of those who say 'There is no God but God' and I am from the city folk; my father's name is Rajas and he is an infidel. He could not beget a son or a daughter regardless of how many sacrifices he would make and how many alms he would give, until one day my mother became pregnant with me. She gave birth to me and it was like a belly, you couldn't tell head or legs, there were just two holes, one for breathing and the other for defecating. They came and had a look but they were scared to cut the belly open. Doctors and surgeons gathered and not one of them agreed to cut it. Things stayed like this until one day my father found four dervishes while he was hunting. They were Moses, Jesus, David and Muhammad, may peace be upon Him. He lead them into the sitting room, had them sit down and brought them food and drinks. Then he asked them which religion was the more heavenly one. Every one praised their religion and my father said, "Won't you all make a prayer so that my dear son be rescued from this prison, and whoever manages to

solve this great difficulty of mine, I shall join his religion." Each one made a prayer but it was to no avail. Finally Muhammad fasted for three days [A 379] and then prostrated and made a prayer and the belly was torn apart and I was delivered. My father saw me and rejoiced, accepted the faith and became Muslim with his regions and province. He named me Mu'in.

When I grew up my father died and I got the throne. Now my father had a brother who was Jewish and who heard that my father had died he set out against me on a ghaza and caught me at unawares. He was about to kill me, but my mother screamed and did not let him, so they went and put me in this chest and left me at sea. I know no further" he said and fell at Sayyid's feet. Sayyid took him on the boat and off they went.

A mountain appeared and Mu'in said, "These regions that you see are ours." They led the boat in that direction and landed ashore. Sayyid kept that young man on board and he himself set out for the city. When he reached the city it was dawn prayer time and he read the call to prayer with a loud voice from an elevated spot. There were four hundred Muslims who all gathered together at Sayyid's presence. One of them recognized Sayyid and introduced him to the rest. They all fell at his feet and Sayyid told them Mu'in's story and their insides burned. They prostrated for prayer along with Sayyid. Sayyid took that group and led them to the city and came straight to the palace.

The name of that infidel there was Gugil. He asked, "What kind of a person are you?" and Sayyid said, "I have news." Gugil said, "Let us hear them." Sayyid said, "Empty the place out and I shall tell you at once." Quickly he emptied the room, [A 380] called Sayyid beside him and said, "Come on, out with your news," Sayyid said, "Quickly become Muslim and rescue yourself from my hands; I am Battal Ghazi, you might have heard of me. Why did you leave your brother's son out in the sea?" The infidel wanted to scream, but Sayyid jumped and grabbed his neck and pressed him tight and he surrendered his soul to hell.

Sayyid stepped outside and invited one of the dignitaries standing there saying, "Hey you, come in inside, the padishah is summoning you." He showed him Gugil and said, "Become Muslim at once" this fellow wanted to scream and he thrashed him. One by one he invited seventy high noblemen to the faith, but none would accept so he thrashed them. Then he took Gugil's head in his hand and came out. He gave a loud cry and introduced himself. Great confusion befell the city and the four hundred Muslims became busy with their ghaza. Sayyid put many people to the sword until they asked for mercy. Right then Asjad appeared with ten thousand men. They rejoiced at Sayyid's conquest. They prepared their armor and boarded their ships and off they went.

They went for seven days when Asjad said, "Lord, from here on there are no human beings, just difficult, dangerous places." Sayyid answered, "Asjad, if you sense any trouble do me a favor and go back. I shall entrust myself to God but I must press on." Asjad said, "As long as [A 381] my heart is in my body I will not leave from your service. Come what may, I will not be separated from you."

All of a sudden they came across a white mountain. They wanted to get out but could not find a way. Then Sayyid boarded one boat, Asjad another and off they went. Asjad found a way and led the army to the mountain and camped there. They found the mountain to be flat and full of fruit of all kinds. They pitched white tents and settled and lit fires. Asjad looked around and saw a few beasts, they were more like dogs. The whole mountain was filled with their howling and they would come, one this way five another, twenty from over there, fifty from elsewhere, hundred from nowhere. Asjad saw them and sighed in despair and ordered the army to prepare.

On the other side, Sayyid was also looking for a way out to the mountain but sleepiness overcame him, he dozed on land and slept. In his dream he saw the King of the heroes, the Commander of the Faithful, Ali-may God bless his face. He came and told him, "Brave warrior, you will behold several marvels and you will meet different kinds of creatures this time. When you wake up tomorrow morning there will come an apple, take it and eat it so that you may learn all the languages." Sayyid woke up and saw that a great apple had appeared. He ate that apple of power and all the languages became known to him. Then at last he also found a way through the mountain and he saw that [A 382] Asjad and the whole army had gotten up and camped there and were trying to protect themselves as these hounds were vanquishing them. As soon as Asjad saw Sayyid he said, "Brave warrior, we've fallen into the mouths of dragons." Sayyid said, "You stay here and let me go find out what sort of a people they are" and marched ahead and shouted to them in their language, "Hey, what do you want from us?" When they heard the voice in their own language they shouted to each other, "Why, who are you, no human has ever visited us." Sayyid said, "Take me to your padishah, I have a message for him."

Well, they called their leader Kharsan, and he was present there, so they brought Sayyid to his presence. Sayyid bowed and pronounced a blessing and Kharsan exclaimed, "You human creature, where did you learn our language?" Sayyid said, "I am one of yours, they captured me when I was a child and I grew up amongst men and I turned their color." He said, "And what is the Padishah of Saylaf doing here, what has he come here for?" Sayyid said, "He had two sons who have become prisoners of Qil-Baraqlar. And he has a fair daughter that he will give to you as wife upon the condition that you help him liberate his sons." As soon as Kharsan heard of the maiden he rejoiced and was glad. He

said, "What dogs the Qil-Baraqlar are, let me go and get him at once." [A 383] And then he sent forty hound-headed with the order, "Go and examine the bride." Sayyid came over to Asjad and told him the story and they immediately dressed the beautiful up and presented her to these envoys. They came and reported to Kharsan who so happy he wanted to explode out of his skin. Then he got up and went over to Asjad. Sayyid came out to meet him. They took him inside to their quarters and gave him plenty to eat and drink and brought him a dressed-up slave girl until he was drunk. Then Sayyid excused the remaining guests but kept hold of Kharsan. As soon as the place was emptied, he went inside and advanced towards him and seized him by the throat. He asked him for the confession of faith but the cursed wretch attempted to scream, so he pressed his throat tightly and Kharsan surrendered his soul to hell. Sayyid skinned him at once and then straightened the skin out with his own hand and hung it to dry until the following day. In the morning the hound-headed arrived and Sayyid put on Kharsan's skin and came out to make an appearance. They all rubbed their faces on the ground and Sayyid said, "This Asjad fellow came and gave me his daughter so it is now necessary for me to rescue his son from the Qil -Baraqlar. So get ten ships and ten thousand men ready so that I may go and capture his son. Indeed, I will stay here and have something to eat with them, but you rush and prepare yourselves immediately." [A 384] They went and prepared ten ships and ten thousand hound-headed.

They boarded the ships and off they went. Every now and then Sayyid would put on Kharsan's skin and go out to inspect them and come back to Asjad. After forty days they reached the Qil-Baraqlar. They disembarked and camped. Sayyid put on Carson's skin and came out and collected the hound-headed and selected forty able ones and made for the Qil-Baraqlar. The news had reached Qil-Baraqlar, and their padishah whose name was 'Unuq came out to greet them. , "Brother, what happened and you got into the trouble of coming here" he said, and Sayyid answered, "This is the Padishah of Saylaf, called Asjad. He is a great king whose son was taken prisoner by the Kilim-Gush. He came out to me and gave me his daughter. But he has another daughter, the likes of which are not to be found around this world, and he will give her to you if we join forces and rescue his son." 'Unuq rejoiced and was glad. Sayyid brought him to Asjad. Immediately they put him in a tent and again they prepared a slave-girl and presented her to him.

That evening Sayyid flayed the skin of this one as well and hung it to dry. The following day he put it on and came out. The begs came and pronounced blessings and Sayyid sent them away with the words, "Begis, rush to prepare ten ship and ten thousand men. Asjad [A 385] gave me his daughter, and I will stay with this beg here and chat with my brother Kharsan. Meanwhile you go and prepare yourselves immediately." And so



they prepared ten ships and ten thousand men and they became a force of thirty thousand with thirty ships.

They boarded the ships and off they went to the Kilim-Gush. *And what's the point of making the story long*, Sayyid brought seventy two tribes under his control in this way, and every day he would come out in all kinds of guises and inspect them. One day they reached an island and they were delighted and happy because they had run out of water. Amidst great rejoicing they got out on land. Sayyid saw that there was a beautiful meadow with plenty of fruit-trees, innumerable game and whose plants were hyacinth, carnations and saffron. That hungry lot went hunting -the gazelles were delicious! Sayyid thanked God and said to them, "Let me look around for a while."

He climbed on a hill and looked around and saw a beautiful field with a great tree in its middle whose branches reached the heavens. Under it there was a domed pavilion from red-gold, another from green emerald and a third one from white pearls. Sayyid saw them and was amazed. He pressed on and came down and found a beautiful spring. He performed his ablutions and prostrated for prayer and recited the Koran with a beautiful voice. All of a sudden the domed pavilions collapsed and three enlightened sages appeared and greeted Sayyid. He greeted them back. [A 386]

Empty place for miniature.

They came and sat beside him. Sayyid looked and saw that there was a pillar of light to the sky from their faces. They said, "Welcome, descendant from the family of the Apostle of God. We were longing to see your blessed face, praise be to God that we saw it." All of a sudden three small trays set with food were lowered in their middle from the sky. They reached out and ate. Then they offered prayers and the trays were lifted back in the sky. Sayyid asked them [A 387] , "What is this station and what sort of a place is this?" They answered, "This place is called Khurram-Abad and it is at the feet of Mount Qaf. Dhu'l-Qarnayn's tomb is here. We are from his companions, we used to be one hundred families, but one day winged fairies (*paris*) came and destroyed our community and we ran away into a cave. One day we heard a voice, 'Come out for God the exalted is going to veil you' it said and we came outside and they carried us one by one and brought us to these domed pavilions. It has been five thousand years from our time to the present. This evening we saw the Apostle in our dream and he informed us of your arrival. He said 'Whatever he says obey him and follow his orders. He has come looking for his sons and he will take this land from the giants and he will go back with his heart wishes satisfied. Do tell him to rush and not delay for an infidel has been on the march against the Sunni

Muslims and my religion. He wants to annihilate it and destroy the righteous path'." So they spoke and Sayyid asked their names. One was called Kamil, the other was called Habil and the third one said, "My name is Mayil." Again Sayyid asked after his sons and they said, "He's brought them here, yes, but we do not know what he has done with them." Then Sayyid left them there and returned to his army and he came out and inspected every tribe in the tribe's padishah's guise saying, "Get ready, tomorrow there will be battle. [A 388] Do not spare anyone who will be coming from this mountain here." Every different tribe thought that he was their ruler.

In the morning, that great army arranged its banners across from the mountain and stood waiting. Sayyid took off and came to those sages, they greeted each other and when they saw the army they were amazed. Sayyid noticed that voices and fire smoke were coming from the other side. The sages said, "Hilal Jazu surely got news of your arrival, this fuss must be theirs." Sayyid said, "I would like to send one of you to Hilal so that he gives me back my son." Mayil the sage said, "Lord, let worthless me go over. I know I will get killed, so you should march ahead from the side that you see my head falls." These sages greeted each other and wept a little among themselves and Mayil said, "Sayyid, I am sacrificing my soul in your path and I would like that you please bury me with your own hands. Moreover, when you get to the tomb of Muhammad Mustafa, the noble of the first and the last, please pass on my greetings to the Prophet so that he does not refrain from forgiving me on Judgment Day." So he said and set out.

After a while Sayyid saw that the sage's head rolled and came over and fell right in front of him. He stepped forward pronouncing the confession of faith [A 389] and buried the head with his own hand. The army marched on from the place the head had fallen, and as soon as they reached the top of the mountain the darkness went away and everything was bright. Sayyid looked and saw a field. In the middle of the field there was a glorious city of beautiful white marble whose tower reached the edges of heaven. Hilal Jazu was sitting on a throne with forty thousand demon monsters and wizards (*jazu*) right in front of the city. As soon as he saw Sayyid he laughed out with great noise and shouted, "Battal, I was looking for you. You are going to die in my hands, and my good fortune threw you at my feet. At that moment Sayyid gave the order to the hound-headed, "Do not hesitate, we have found the enemy." They attacked and following them he sent the Qil-Baraqlar and they marched. One by one he ordered every tribe in the guise of their ruler to attack -all of them thought that he was their leader. Once they attacked and the giants and the wizards (*jazu*) got all mixed up, Sayyid came to Asjad and saw that his power was failing. He saw Sayyid and shivered, and Sayyid exclaimed, "Asjad do not fear, for God the Exalted is helping us." So he said and recited the prayer of the Prophet Khidr and he directed himself

towards ten thousand men and said, "Don't you abandon your standing point." He himself became busy with war. There was a fierce fight and a terrible bloodshed. Hilal ordered and they brought his throne, [A 390] and raised in the air, so that the cursed wretch was watching from above. Sayyid saw Hilal, how he had risen to the sky and was busy with his sorcery. He trusted himself in the protection of God and read the prayer of prophet Khidr. He and took an arrow, strung it on his bow and shot it. The arrow hit and pierced the throne, then pierced his palm and cut his ear in two. The cursed wretch came down with a roar and tried to catch Sayyid. Sayyid pronounced the name of God and hit him with his sword straight on his right shoulder. His hand went flying in the air. The cursed wretch gave such a scream that you would think the sky had collapsed on earth. He grabbed his arm and fell back into the city. The army of giants and wizards (*jazu*) saw what had happened and were filled with fear.

Sayyid came back to his army and advised every tribe -every one considered him their own ruler and were keeping their hearts at ease. Sayyid searched around that evening but every which side he tried he found giants-witches guarding the paths, and he could not find a way. He rubbed his face on the ground, and pleaded for help. Right then the prophet Khidr reached down and gave greetings and said, "Battal don't be sad for these provinces must be conquered by your hand and this station must be honored." He dismounted his horse and put Sayyid on it and said, "Steer the horse's head towards the city." That's exactly what Sayyid did and the horse flew in the air [A 391] and landed right in the middle of the city. Sayyid dismounted and walked straight to the palace. He got through the gate, passed through seven screens and finally reached a place where he saw four masterly built benches with a Solomon's throne of red gold in the middle. Hilal Jazu was asleep on his back on the throne. He had placed his severed hand on his chest and was snoring loudly. Sayyid jumped forth from his place, bare sword in hand, and grabbed Hilal by the throat before he could get up. He tied his hand behind his head. He recited the prayer of the prophet Khidr and however much Hilal tried his sorcery, he would not get on top of Sayyid. He exclaimed, "Battal, you have killed my father, you've killed my mother, you've killed my sister, what do you want from my poor soul?" Sayyid said, "Cursed wretch, where are my sons, what have you done with them?" He said, "I brought them out here and then the winged fairies came and grabbed them from my hands. But here is the son of the caesar." Sayyid saw that a young man was tied up at the foot of the throne, so he came forward and freed his hands. Sayyid said, "Are you Takfur?" and he said, "Yes," and got up and fell at Sayyid's feet. Without delay Sayyid took out the belt of Prophet Ishaq and looped it around Hilal's throat and gave it to Takfur to hold. He walked behind them and they came to the city gate. Sayyid hit it with Khidr's whip, the gate opened and

they stepped out and walked away in a rush and came to Asjad. [A 392] Sayyid ordered and they brought Hilal. , "You cursed wretch, where is my son?" he said and Hilal exclaimed, "The winged fairies got hold of your son, I do not know anything else." Sayyid realized that nothing good would come out of him, so he hit him with the sword of Zahhak and cut him in two. Hilal screamed once so that all the witches understood that Hilal had died and they scattered and fled. Sayyid ordered and the ten thousand people entered the city and took as much booty as they could carry. All of them became rich beyond mind's reasoning.

Then Sayyid saw, inside the city, a domed pavilion and someone sitting in front of it. Sayyid extended his greetings and was greeted back, "Welcome Sayyid, good grief, you have rescued this clime from the cursed's evil." , "Open this door and let us go in and have a look" said Sayyid, and the old man said, "It's been three thousand years since I have not gone inside or opened this door." Right then the prophet Khidr appeared. Sayyid saw him and fell at his feet. Khidr said, "May your ghaza be blessed, brave warrior, you have made this province safe from the evil of that infidel," and opened the door. He said, "You may go inside now, it is allowed. Go and visit Dhu'l-Qarnayn's tomb."

Sayyid entered and saw a orchard full of all kinds of green plants -it looked like paradise. There was a domed pavilion in its middle, from putty, with a door of rubies.

[A 393]

Empty place for miniature.

Sayyid entered and saw a courtyard, three thousand steps long and wide, with a carpet of gold and silver spread out and four raised platforms opposite one another, each with a throne on top. Iskandar was seated on a throne with wise Aristotle who was his vizier beside him. It was as if they were talking to each other. Sayyid almost lost his mind from his amazement, but he came back to his senses, stepped forward and saw a board on which it was written [A 394] , "Young man who shall come here and shall be from the sons of Mustafa Muhammad, I am the king Iskandar. I have conquered the seven climes and subjugated giants and winged fairies. This is indeed my makeshift/provisional depiction. Proceed inside so that you see what behold my inner condition." Sayyid looked closely and saw a sarcophagus from red gold, and a hand holding another green inscription. Sayyid looked closely at the inscription. After the name of the Lord the following was written, "Battal, when you shall come here and see my condition, you shall realize that this world is transient. If it were to be otherwise, it would surely have been so for me, as I was the one who has toured this world three times, and who pulled the wall against Gog and

Magog and crossed the sea of Iskandariya. But at the end of it all there was death, and against death I was helpless. Here I am, I departed this world empty-handed, all belongings and possessions remained in place. So you too now do not be conceited by your bravery and heroism. Whatever you do, do it for God, do not soften your heart to this world for whoever gave his heart to this world became ill-fated. Now when you reach the Prophet, pass on my greetings so that he may not forget me from his forgiveness tomorrow at Judgment Day. In fact at the corner of my head there is a jewel, I have put it there for you, so that you tie it around your arm and remember me with [A 395] a prayer." So it was written, and there was plenty more advice.

Sayyid wept for a little while then stretched his hand and picked the jewel and tied it around his arm. He looked around and stepped outside. The door was shut back. Sayyid returned to his people, sad that he still had no news of his sons. He came to Takfur and said, "Takfur, what's happened with you?" Takfur said, "They caught us and brought us to this station, together with your sons. They dug a hole in the manner of an underground oven and lit a fire in order to feast on us. They tied our hands and feet. Suddenly a great noise came from the sky and there was terrible banging and clashing of swords. They captured us again, and soon thereafter a demon rushed and killed the winged fairy and took me once again and came back. I do not know what happened after that." Sayyid said, "Come and show me that hole." He took Sayyid and led him there. Sayyid saw a fountain and performed his ablutions and prostrated for a prayer of two complete rounds. He wept and asked the Apostle of God to intercede. Then all of a sudden he noticed a elderly woman in green, wearing precious clothes. She greeted Sayyid and asked, "Why are you crying, brave warrior? If it's about your sons, they are in good health and spirits and great comfort: they are a padishah." Sayyid exclaimed, "Where are they?" The woman said, "They are with Tamus the Pari, who is the sultan of all the winged fairies. He gave them his daughters and made them his sons-in-law. At present one hundred thousand winged fairies are under the command of your sons. [A 396] I am the nurse of these girls. Now that you have come and killed Hilal and made this province safe from his evil let me go a fetch Tamus, for Tamus the Pari is a Sunni Muslim who has seen the face of Ibrahim Khalil. Hilal snatched this clime with trickery from him. Now that you have shown such bravery, let me go and fetch Tamus." With these words she flew up into the skies. After a while Sayyid saw that daylight turned into darkness while the sound of kettledrums and trumpets filled the air.

The army of the winged fairies appeared led by a tall old man with a long beard. He was wearing green garments, and was riding a winged fairy horse. He was followed by a countless army. They settled and put up tents and *baldachins*. That old man came over to

Sayyid, kissed the earth, presented his greetings and said, "Brave warrior, what are you doing in the midst of all these troubles? Praise be to God that you rescued the clime from the hands of that infidel. I myself struggled a lot for this but never with success. God the exalted granted you this conquest." He started conversing with Sayyid when all of a sudden that old woman came again. She said, "Brave warrior, this is Tamus the Pari. He's the padishah of this province and he is the father-in-law of your sons." Sayyid was delighted. He held Tamus' hand and said [A 397] , "How can it be allowed that my sons should be with you without you informing me about it. You caused me so much trouble and you still have not brought them to me." Tamus said, "I have betrothed my own daughters to them and made them my in-laws. As for the reason why I did not bring them with me, that's because I am afraid you will come and snatch them away and leave me all helpless here." Sayyid said, "You are a winged fairy and I am human. What could come from such a union? Quickly deliver my sons and do not say much."

While they were talking like this Khidr -peace be upon Him- appeared. The winged fairy Tamus fell at his feet and said, "Lord, I have taken the sons of this fellow away from the gallows of Hilal and brought them here, gave them my daughters and made them padishahs, and now this fellow wants to take them with him and go. My dear boys have become close friends with them and learned from them. If they go my dear boys will not get their fill of separation and will perish. I am not letting go of his sons." So he spoke and there was great argument among them. Khidr made peace among them and exclaimed, "Brave warrior, time is short, an enemy has appeared against Islam and you are the only one who can help. Let go of this army." Indeed they gave permission to Asjad to leave/ The ships were there waiting, so he boarded and left for his place. Then they dismissed the dog-headed Qil Baraqlar and they too returned to their place.

Sayyid said, "Well now, where are my sons?" and before he finished speaking they appeared together with a hundred winged fairies with the sounds of drums and banners. [A 398] They fell at Sayyid's feet. Sayyid saw them and was delighted. He pulled them to his chest and spoke with them.

For seven days they ate and drank, and on the eighth day they armed themselves, tied Sayyid to a throne and lifted him straight to Istanbul. Sayyid exchanged greetings with Tamus and they came back. Sayyid was standing there by the seaside. It was prayer time so he performed his prayer. He got up and walked and looked across and he saw his own servant Mubashir. He came and fell at Sayyid's feet. Sayyid said, "What are you doing?" and he said, "I had come to trade, but the road was shut and I got stuck here." Mubashir spoke with Sayyid's sons, they asked news of Malatya and the companions. Mubashir told them, "I have heard that a contesteer has appeared who has done great harm to Islam, they

say." Sayyid heard that and was greatly disturbed. He sent Mubashir to the caesar, and he came and reported the good tidings announcing , "Sayyid and your son Takfur have arrived." Asatur was very sick so he ordered all his officers to go and meet them. They came and met with them, exchanged greetings and brought them in the presence of Asatur. He was lying under his covers. Sayyid came up to his bed head and said, "King, how are you? Here, I've brought you your son." Asatur replied, "Where, let me see and I will become Muslim." Takfur came forward, fell at the feet of his father and kissed his hand and foot. As soon [A 399] as he saw his son he went out of his mind. But then he came back to his senses and he kissed his sons in both cheeks. He got up, raised his finger and came to the faith and became a Muslim. Forty-seven officers became Muslim. Takfur told them all about Sayyid's adventures of bravery and manhood. The caesar remained alive another seven days and then passed away. Sayyid washed the caesar himself and said his prayer. They buried him in the Muslim cemetery in the presence of Shammās.

They mourned him for seven days and on the eighth day they made Takfur the caesar his officers all came and presented their credits to Sayyid and took an oath of service. Sayyid made to leave but Takfur cried and exclaimed, "I am afraid here alone by myself." Sayyid left his middle son, Mubashir that is, with him and said, "Every time that an enemy appears let me know." He placed Bashir there but he took Nazir along with him and off they went.

## CHAPTER EIGHTEEN

### The Story of Babak

They settled in a spring close to Malatya together with Asjad's daughter Dil-Afruz and all of a sudden a caravan arrived and also settled at that spring. Sayyid called an older person and asked him for news. That person said, "The caliph Ma'mun has left this world and his son Mu'tasim has become caliph. And yes a certain person has appeared who has made a claim to prophethood. No arrow can pierce him, no sword can cut him, no fire can burn him, he proclaims pork meat and [A 400] wine to be proper. He knows the names of everyone and could tell you their parents' names as well, he can make goods come out of the earth. Whatever he says is done. He even considers it proper for a daughter to go with her father and brother to go with sister. Twice he has attacked and ravaged Syria. Everyone has tried to resist him but there is no one his match. Even Sayyid Battal has disappeared, no knows whether he is alive or dead. That cursed wretch's name is Babak. He has ravaged the province of Tabriz and gathered all of the wealth of the Persians."

Sayyid said, "Where does his ancestry stem from?" The man said, "At the time of the previous caliph his father was in Baghdad. He was a great scoundrel and they used to come and complain about him until the caliph ordered that they kick him out of town. So he left and went to a village where he was herding cows. Now the village owner had an one-eyed slave-girl with whom he had a pleasant time. Now the village beg heard and found out that the slave-girl is pregnant so he went ahead and married her to this man. After four months she gave birth to a son and they nourished him. When he became seven years old his mother and father died, and they entrusted him with the herding of the village cows. Things stayed like that for a while and the boy grew and became a healthy brave man. He learned to play all the kinds of lute that there are. Eventually he met Mamlan of Tabriz but he started drinking wine day and night and was up to great mischief. He grabbed Mamlan and gave him two hundred blows with a tree branch and chased him away. Then one day he found Mamlan hunting alone and killed him. Then he joined the ranks of a few rebels and took to recklessness. [A 401] All the wretched persons came to him, the blood-thirsty rebels gathered around him and eventually a good hundred people came together. One day as Babak was sitting alone an old man came along and Babak asked, "What sort of a person are you?" The old man said, "I am Gabriel. You are a prophet, that's why I have come to you. If you listen to my words you will conquer the whole world." The cursed Babak wondered, "What sort of a prophet shall I be? If they ask for miracles what shall I do?" , "May no sword cut you, no mace or lance penetrate you, may fire not burn you" said Gabriel and led him astray. Then he said, "Here, under such and such a stone there is a hidden treasure. Take it and spend it" and he showed Babak where it was. Babak gathered those four hundred people and revealed himself to them. He showed them the treasure, they opened and divided it. His name acquired fame, so people came and became his followers. About five to ten thousand rebels gathered around him. The tidings reached the caliph who sent Asad of Kufa as an envoy, but Babak led him astray and turned him into an infidel as well. He took him by his side and made him his vizier. Next the caliph sent Nuqayta the Turk along with a force of twenty thousand men. Stark naked Babak advanced against Nuqayta, who said, "Who are you?" Babak replied, "I am a prophet and all of you must declare obedience to me." Nuqayta said, "Miracles are a sign of prophethood. What might your miracles be?" Babak said, "Unsheathe your sword and hit me a few times. If you cut me, fine, [A 402] if not, will you join me?" They agreed. He hit him once or twice in the neck with his diamond sword but when he realized that it did not cut him, he dismounted and fell at Babak's feet. So he converted Nuqayta and his twenty thousand men, and made him his commander-in- chief. Now he had ten times ten thousand men under his command. Walid the son of Uqba the Judge was his major-



domo and Satha, Uqba's brother, was his vice-regent. He left that place and reached Baghdad and chased the caliph away to Damascus. Battal's son Ali is now his prisoner along with forty four companions."

As soon as Sayyid heard these tidings his heart burned. He sent his young son Nazir to Malatya and himself, together with Huma Dil-Afruz he set out in the direction of Baghdad. He marched in tears and great lament. He noticed a rider approaching. When he came near he dismounted and fell at Sayyid's feet. Sayyid looked closely and saw it was Muhammad b. Fallah. He drew him into his arms, greeted him and they lamented together. Sayyid asked about the tidings and Muhammad told him exactly the same things as that merchant. He said, "Caliph Mu'tasim is in Damascus and he sent me to ask Amir Umar to levy an army. I was coming right along, I slept by a fountain spring and saw the Apostle of God in my dream. He said 'Muhammad do not grieve for Sayyid Battal is on his way and Babak's death is [A 403] in his hands.' With these words I woke up and so it was that I reached the dust of your feet." Sayyid said, "Turn back and announce my arrival to the caliph and tell him not to grieve for there is hope that I will destroy that cursed fellow." Muhammad returned back and Sayyid took the road to Baghdad.

On the other side, Babak had settled with his five hundred thousand men and with four vice-regents (*malik*) on his left and right side. He burst into laughter and they asked, "Lord-master, why are you laughing?" The infidel said, "Tomorrow Battal is coming!" They said, "But he is dead and gone," and he said, "Absolutely not, he is by Dhu'l-Qarnayn's tomb. He has subjugated numerous peoples and attacked a great multitude of demons. He also found his sons there. Tomorrow he is coming, and if he agrees to obey me I shall recognize him as a world hero, but if not, I shall cut his head off."

On the other side, Sayyid reached a fountain spring and slept there. He got up in the morning and performed his prayer and humbly supplicated God. Then he mounted his horse and rode to a hill from where he looked down and saw that an army beyond mind's reasoning had camped. Sayyid was dying to get to Babak right away, but the devil came and brought tidings to Babak, "What are you potting around for? Battal has arrived. Quickly rush to meet him!" The cursed Babak ordered and the army mounted [A 404] for battle and fastened their banners. Sayyid dismounted and tightened his stirrups, spurred his horse and entered the battle field. He rushed in with a great show of skill and cried once, "You mindless people, what did you find wrong in Muhammad's religion that you decided to change and be trampled upon by the devil. How will you respond to the exalted God tomorrow? I am Sayyid Battal the ghazi, I went and saw Mountain Qaf with my own eyes, I slaughtered Hilal the demon, and here I am back again. Where is the dirty infidel who has soiled you as well? Summon him over."

Babak was eager, but it was Qanatur who entered the battlefield and came up to Sayyid, saying, "Battal, why do you not obey the prophet? Come forth and let him demonstrate his miracles." Sayyid spurred his horse, reached over and seized Qanatur by his belt. He cast him in the air and cut him in two pieces as he was coming down. Haytal came next, uttered some insults and Sayyid seized him from his horse, tore him in two pieces like an old piece of cloth and threw him away. One by one Sayyid thrashed a hundred men and no one else entered the battlefield. Babak started out for it, and Sayyid saw that he was a tall infidel, swarthy and with green eyes, with a thick, abominable beard, but handsome and well set-up. He came up to Sayyid and said, "Battal, why are you killing these sinless men? I am a prophet, so why are you not fair and turn your face away from the right path? [A 405] You will regret it at the end, think about that. And if you want miracles, pull out your sword and let me hold my neck here so that you hit me. If I die, fine, but if not, would you not believe in me?" Sayyid answered, "Cursed wretch, even if you show me a hundred thousand things like that I would not put my faith in you. You are nothing but an arch- scoundrel, what do you know about such things?" Babak said, "Muhammad himself was an orphan and when the grace came to him he became a prophet. You yourself were an orphan, God's grace reached you and you reached such a station in life that the whole world is ringing with your name's fame, demons and winged fairies are your subjects. I was also assigned my portion from God, don't think of me as you would of the others. If you follow me you will be by my side as Ali was by Muhammad's. As much as they call him Muhammad of the latter day they call me prophet of delight." Sayyid replied, "Cursed wretch, the Koran came down to our Apostle from the Heavens. Where's your book?" Babak said, "He was a deceitful man, he just said whatever was necessary." Sayyid got angry, held his lance and charged. The cursed wretch put his breast out against it, and Sayyid's lance did not leave even a trace on him. Sayyid was astonished. Quickly he drew the sword of Zahhak and raised it in the air bringing down on his neck [A 406] but it did not cut through even a hair. Then Sayyid drew his own sword, but it also left no trace. He hurled the mace of Samsuvar and the cursed wretch said, "Battal, where is your sense of justice? How many swords and maces have you tried?" Sayyid hit that infidel so hard that had he hit Mountain Qaf it would have crumbled to pieces, but this infidel did not move at all. Sayyid was dumbfounded. He said, "Come on, you infidel, show us what you can do" The cursed wretch hurled his lance but Sayyid beat his whip and obstructed it. He then hurled his sword and Sayyid met it with his mace and avoided it. They fought until the evening and then Sayyid turned around and set out for the place he had come from. Babak also turned and came to his own people.

That evening they kept praising Sayyid's bravery. On the one side, Sayyid reached a fountain spring and performed his ablutions and was busy with prayer until the morning. On the other side, Muhammad b. Fallah entered the caliph's presence in Damascus, and the caliph said, "Why did you come back, Muhammad?" Muhammad presented the good tidings of Sayyid's return and the caliph was delighted. Muhammad said, "Here we are then, Sayyid reached Baghdad for your sake, let those who arrived here come over there with their army." So Muhammad marched off in the direction of Baghdad with an army of five hundred thousand.

On the other side, Sayyid performed his morning prayer and came down again. He gave a loud war-cry and shouted, "Where's that infidel, let him come near." [A 407] Babak came on horseback and met Sayyid. They fought till noon. Babak kept saying, "Battal do not do this, or you will be ashamed afterwards. What greater miracle do you need when you see that neither a sword nor a lance nor a mace leaves any trace on a person?" Sayyid said, "Cursed one, this is not the work of God, this is the work of the devil. And mind you, where do you think you can escape from me? I will do such things to your skin with my own hands, that they will be talking about them until Judgment Day." Babak said, "Battal, let's see you notch your arrow straight against my forehead. If there's any trace, fine, but if I suffer no injury will you not enter my religion and profess your faith to me?" Sayyid took out an arrow and notched it, aimed straight at his forehead and took his shot. The arrow hit him but its tip got twisted and broke into tiny pieces. The accursed wretch said, "Battal tell me, what more of a miracle do you want? I say, come to the faith now." Sayyid replied, "I've declared my faith already to the Apostle of God. Why, I admit no faith to you, all you are is an infidel of the Devil. My prophet has decreed 'There shall not come any prophet after me'." The cursed wretch said, "He was just an egoist who wanted his name to stay in the world forever." Sayyid said, "Whatever you say is silly nonsense," but he remained helpless against this infidel and got exhausted. [A 408] The cursed wretch said, "Battal, I know you would not follow something that is untrue; but my religion is true. I have shown you such miracles and you still do not believe. Now if your religion is also true, let me also hit you with an arrow, a sword and a lance and if my arrow and sword do not cut you I shall know that your path is straight as well and your word true." As soon as he said that, Sayyid started trembling like a tree leaf. Inspiration returned to his heart and he said, "Good God, let me put my trust in the uniqueness of God the exalted, and what is to be shall be." He pronounced a prayer for the Apostle of God and exclaimed, "Say now, you infidel, whatever you have to say, come forth." The cursed wretch took his diamond sword in his hand and hurled it at Sayyid. Sayyid uncovered his arm and held it up against it and not even a hair of his was touched. Sayyid used to have some blessed hairs from the

prophet tied up around his arm. The accursed grasped his mace and said, "Hold your head up" and then hit Sayyid three times but not even a little piece did he cut away. Then the accursed grasped his lance and hurled it at Sayyid and hit him at the chest, but not even a single hair of his was touched. The infidel was bewildered and now his power was exhausted. As these were in the midst of fighting dust was raised from the road to Damascus and the caliph appeared with five hundred thousand men. As Sayyid [A 409] was in the middle of the battlefield fighting with Babak they all prayed for him and shouted praises.

The caliph had not noticed Sayyid, who rushed and presented his greetings to the caliph. Sayyid soothed the caliph and he was joyful and happy. That evening they were all happy to have seen Sayyid's face. That day there was no more fighting and the armies settled down. The caliph sat on his throne and Sayyid came and sat on dry earth across from him. However much the caliph insisted that he should not sit on dust, it was to no avail. Sayyid said, "How could I deserve a proper seat when such an infidel has arrived and defaced Muhammad's religion. Death is better than such a miserable existence." The evening passed and the following morning the drums rolled and the armies mounted their horses and lined up for battle. The cursed Babak rushed to the battle scene wearing just a shirt and shouted, "Battal where are you, come forth, but come bare as I have, so we can confront each other."

As soon as the caliph saw Babak he ordered a thousand archers and they shot arrows like rain. The arrows would hit their mark but they were repelled and fell to the ground without leaving even a trace on the cursed wretch. They were all astounded and Babak shouted, "Battal, did you get scared by what I am doing? I am not much bothered by things like that. But where is your famous bravery, or have you become weak? Now that you saw the miracles, put aside your disbelief. The era of Mustafa has gone by, [A 410] this is now my era. So if you are a man come forth as I have." Sayyid immediately dismounted and took off his armor. However much the caliph said, "Brave warrior do not do this," it was to no avail. He stayed without just his bare shirt and came to meet Babak with the sword of Zahhak in his hand. The infidel saw him and was amazed. He said, "Battal why are you still fighting like this? I do not wish to wipe you out just like that. I would like for you to follow the right path so that I can make you a world hero." Sayyid said, "Cursed wretch, do not say much. Thanks to the grace of God the exalted so many dogs like you have not managed to be victorious over me, in the end I ruined them. This time also I shall overpower you and do things to you that will be heard all over the world. And should I die, I will go to paradise, whereas you'll surrender your soul to hell." They

attacked each other by sword and they fought till the evening. No-one got the upper hand and they returned to their camps.

The caliph came straight to Sayyid and prayed for him, the leaders and officers cheered him and prayed. They brought him a change of clothes, he put them on and left the army encampment and went to the mountain where he found a fountain. He dismounted and performed his ablutions and prayer. He asked for the intercession of the prophets and the saints and said, "Lord do not accept that a faithless dog should dirty pure Muhammad. If this is how it will be, bring me death so I do not have to see this baseness." As he was saying this he suddenly became sleepy [A 411] and fell asleep. In his dream he saw Muhammad Mustafa. He fell at his feet and Muhammad kissed him in both eyes and said, "My beloved, do not grieve for his death is in your hand. The execrated devil has taken him out of the path and turned him into an infidel like himself. Whenever he enters the battlefield the cursed Azazil comes along and when you hit him with your sword the accursed puts himself in his place and the sword does not cut him. Now stand up and inscribe on your arms 'There is no power and no force except with God the High and the Magnificent.' Then read the Koran in your language so that the devil may run away and you may find victory over the cursed wretch." Sayyid woke up and touched the earth with his face. He quickly took out a pen and made the inscription. Then he mounted his horse and came down to the army. Meanwhile, that evening the caliph had been sad all through the morning that Sayyid had not come to his company.

In the morning the two armies mounted and raised their banners. The caliph was in desperation, saying, "Where on earth is Sayyid, where did he go? He did not show up all evening," when Sayyid drove his horse into the battlefield, happy and joyful. The army of Islam saw Sayyid and were delighted and relieved. Sayyid shouted once, "You vile infidel, where are you? Come forth." The cursed Babak put on his armor as the devil did not come along and entered the battlefield. Sayyid said, "Why did you not come the way you used to, wretched infidel?" Babak said, "Gabriel did not come today, that's why." Sayyid said, "Cursed wretch, this is not Gabriel the Merciful, [A 412] this is the devil; Come on now, let us see you attack." The cursed wretch hurled his lance but Sayyid avoided it. Sayyid gave him such a hard kick that Babak collapsed seven

Empty space for miniature (eight lines)

steps away from his horse's saddle. The Sunnis saw this and shouted, "*God is Great*" all the way to the heavens. The army of Babak charged and snatched the cursed wretch. The

accursed realized that Gabriel had not come and was not revealing himself to him, so he stayed no longer. He turned his back and fled to Zangan.

They pillaged the encampment of that army and Sayyid came to the caliph's presence. The caliph dismounted [A 413] and kissed Sayyid in both eyes. Afterwards Sayyid took that army and they came to a castle that the accursed Babak had built at that village. It was a tough place, but they came and laid siege to it for three days.

One evening Sayyid found the chance and climbed the fortress tower with a lasso and then brought up, one by one, twenty more. They reached the gate from inside, killed those standing by it, broke the gate and took the fortress. The accursed Satha was at the fortress and heard the tidings and grabbed Babak's son and daughter and fled from another gate. When it dawned and eye could meet eye, Sayyid showed no mercy and killed every follower of Babak that he found. He took Ali the son of Battal along with forty four companions out of prison and Ali came and greeted his father whereas the companions kissed Sayyid's hand and greeted him. They all complained of Babak. Sayyid said, "Thank God that we broke the talisman, you have nothing more to worry about." They demolished the fortress and destroyed that village and set out for Zangan.

The cursed wretch reached it first. As'ad b. Sa'd was the ruler of Zangan, and he closed the gate shut. When they arrived they asked him for the fortress. Asad of Kufa exclaimed, "Sa'd, are you raising your sword against the prophet? The era of Muhammad is long gone, this is the era of Babak" and spoke a lot of nonsense so Sa'd gave the order and they showered him with arrows and chased him away. The accursed laid siege for seven days. They were in great distress and desperation, and right when they were about to take the fortress [A 414] a great tumult was raised and Sayyid appeared and attacked. Following him came Ma'd who charged with forty thousand men. Sayyid came across a renegade called Lawin-Gungara. He cut him in two with a blow of his sword and his army disbanded and fled. As it turned out it was not Babak that was over the city but this Lawin-Gungara. The disbanded army came up to Babak and announced, "We were about to take the fortress when all of a sudden about forty thousand men arrived and killed Lawin-Gungara, so we fled."

Babak was furious and immediately left and came back to Zangan. The tidings reached Sayyid, "Here, Babak has arrived" they said. Sayyid said, "Sa'd do not announce my arrival, should I manage to get hold of this cursed wretch. Do not worry yourselves, just make good fortune your companion." So he spoke and off he went. The following day Babak came and lined for battle against the city and stood waiting. The city folk were standing on the opposite side. Sayyid straddled down the mountain in a strange appearance and rushed into the battlefield. Whoever saw him marveled, "What kind of a creature may

that be!" In the middle of the battlefield Sayyid shouted and said, "I come from the mountain of Qaf as I've heard that in the settled quarter of the world a prophet has appeared. Now we are a hundred thousand tents/families and we've come to be his companions if he really is a prophet, a friend to his friends and an enemy to his enemies." The cursed wretch stepped into the battlefield and came up to Sayyid [A 415] and said, "I am the person you are looking for." Sayyid said, "Perform a miracle so I can see for myself." Babak looked for Satan, but did not see him by his side, so he said, "Surely you've heard that I am the person that a sword does not cut and fire does not burn. What better miracle than that could you want?" Sayyid said, "Tell me my name and my father's name." The cursed one was helpless and said, "Let me tell you tomorrow." Sayyid said, "You worthless seed, I've heard that Sayyid has broken your bones. I am one of his companions and I will do things to you that will be talked about in the world." Now there was an infidel who had come along, whose name was Khurram-zad, and he became furious and shouted, "Have you gone out of your mind? Do you know who you are talking about?" He hurled the sword in his hand at Sayyid, but while the sword was coming down, Sayyid hit him under the armpit and cut him in two pieces. Next he threw Asad of Kufa down with a blow and the infidel Babak remained helpless. "Young man, wait till we meet tomorrow" he said, and Sayyid said, "Not quite, I am not letting go of you." Babak said, "Don't tell me, you're Battal!" Sayyid said, "Yes you cursed wretch, now you have recognized me." Babak said, "Wait till I put on my armor." Sayyid spurred Ashqar and the horse leaped so he grabbed Babak by his belt and hurled him on the ground. He got off his horse and mounted on Babak's chest and filled his palm with his beard as if it were a donkey's tail. He put his knife on his throat and Babak said, "Battal do not kill me, [A 416] just send me to the caliph so that I may become Muslim there." Sayyid tied his hands over his head and trusted him to Ma'd. He mounted his own horse and dashed against the army giving out a war cry. The army did not stay and fled to the city of Piladan.

Meanwhile, Sayyid immediately turned back. The companions saw him, recited prayers and came down to greet and speak with him. Ma'd came along and Sayyid said, "Where's the cursed wretch? Bring him forward." Ma'd went and found out that the guards' heads had been cut off and the cursed wretch had escaped. He informed Sayyid and he said, "Where could he escape from me?" and mounted his horse in pursuit.

Babak returned to his army that was standing right in front of the city. Then in the middle of the night Sayyid arrived and gave a war-cry saying, "You bastard, here I am, where did you think you could escape from my hands?" The army started slaughtering each other and there was great slaughter until the morning. At dawn break Ma'd arrived with forty thousand men and they charged killing plenty of infidels. They broke their army

and pushed them into the city. Babak took refuge in the city and they laid siege to the city for seven days. On the eighth day Sayyid marched against the gate, hit it with his mace and stormed it. But the cursed wretch got into a tunnel with his servants and escaped. The city asked for protection and became Muslim. Sayyid looked for Babak but did not find him until they showed him the tunnel. He held Ashqar' s reins and got into the tunnel. After a while he came out to a meadow and saw that a shepherd was looking after his sheep so he came up to him and asked him about Babak. The shepherd told him, "Babak has just left."

[A 417]

Meanwhile the cursed wretch, once he got out of the tunnel he reached a fountain spring and they all settled there. At that moment the devil appeared to this dog and said, "I am your only hope and rescue. Get up and go, Battal is coming after you any moment." The cursed wretch got up and before he put on his armor Sayyid came rushing in. He mounted at once and came out to Sayyid. Sayyid said, "Cursed wretch, just how do you think you can rescue your soul from me?" They were one hundred and twenty men so they surrounded Sayyid. Then Ma'ad and Abdu'l-Wahhab and Sayyid's companions arrived with forty thousand men. From Babak's men, forty escaped, forty were killed and forty were captured. Babak fought bravely. Sayyid tore into Babak's shield with his sword, cut it in two and hit the horse's neck. The cursed wretch collapsed head downwards. Sayyid jumped from his horse to grab him, but Babak rushed behind a tree and said, "Battal, what do you want from me? Grant me mercy and I shall never mount a horse again -have you given anything without taking it back?" Sayyid replied, "There is no way out: either you must become Muslim or I will kill you without mercy." All of a sudden a crying voice reached Sayyid's ear. He looked and saw an old man saying, "Brave warrior, watch out and have no mercy, these are the ones that martyred Hasan and Husayn" As soon as he mentioned the young brothers bloody tears started rolling from Sayyid's eyes. By the time Sayyid wiped his tears there was no more Babak and no old man to be seen. [A 418] Sayyid sighed and said, "That old man was the devil himself, he came and took the cursed wretch away." But he found Babak's children there still waiting. His daughter was as beautiful as a bride. When Abdu'l-Wahhab came along he entrusted them to him saying, "Take them and deliver them to the army. I shall not return until I've cornered Babak." Himself, he mounted and set off.

Meanwhile, the accursed Babak marched tired and destitute for seven days until he reached a village where there was a monastery. He came up to the monastery and collapsed to sleep. After a short while a monk came asking, "Who are you?" He said, "Just a poor dervish." He spent a few days there. Meanwhile, Sayyid one day came up to a spring and performed his ablutions and prayers and sat down. Well, Nu'man the son of Mamlan who



had gone out hunting saw Sayyid at this spring and came and threw himself at his feet and led him into the city. Sayyid told him in every detail the whole story of Babak and said, "I am afraid that he is going to come and make trouble again ." Nu'man sent spies to gather information in all four directions.

Meanwhile, the accursed Babak became well and all of a sudden the devil came down and said, "How are you?" Babak cried saying, "You've made me a prisoner of ill-fate, you've brought me all sort of disasters, where have you been?" and fell at the devil's feet. , "From now on there is no need to worry, Battal's death is in your hands. Go ahead and win a fame like his in this world." Once again he showed him a treasure saying, "Get up and go introduce yourself. [A 419] From now on I will not abandon you" and he disappeared. Suddenly the monk came and Babak called him over, presented himself and converted him. Then he rushed to the village and spread the tidings and fooled all of its people. This accursed brought the treasure and they opened it and distributed the riches. So about seventy to eighty thousand destitute infidels gathered around him. One day someone came up to Babak and said, "My lord I saw something terribly strange here on this mountain, that we've never seen before. A beast, dog on the one side, human on the other, with a wildly hairy belly." Babak said, "Let us hunt it and we might catch it." They went hunting on that mountain and the hunters dispersed. Sayyid appeared in front of Babak and gave a war cry once. He said, "You infidel, where do you think you can hide your soul from me, here I am," and he blocked Babak's way. The infidel could not escape, so unwillingly he came up to Sayyid and they fought in such a way that when the cursed one was weakened his army were informed and a hundred thousand of them came and surrounded Sayyid. Sayyid pulled out his sword and charged forth. They fought passionately until dusk when Mamlan of Tabriz arrived with ten thousand men. When the infidels saw them they broke their ranks but however much Sayyid looked for Babak, he could not find him. So he sent Mamlan back to Tabriz and he himself went off after Babak, seeking him everywhere he would go.

One day he came to a spring and performed his ablutions and was standing for prayer when, [A 420] lo and behold, Babak arrived in a rush. He saw that Sayyid had gotten up for prayer and was completely immersed in God. He thought to himself, "Aha, here I found the opportunity to get Battal" and approached Sayyid sword in hand and stabbed him seven times. But however much he tried he did not touch even a hair of his; it was thanks to the protection of the blessed hair from the head of the Apostle of God that Sayyid was bearing on his arm that the sword did not cut him. He saw that he was not able to cut him so he fled and ran away into the mountain. Sayyid quickly performed his prayer and rode chasing the cursed wretch. The accursed was well accustomed to the sea so he set

out in the direction of the sea. When he got there he saw that the ships were loading and pulling anchor to sail away. So he shouted saying, "Look, I had an enemy, he took all my belongings and left me like this. Please take me aboard."

They took him aboard, and as it turned out Satha, the brother of Uqba, was on that ship. They hid Babak and when Sayyid arrived and asked for him saying, "Have you really not seen a man like this at all?" the cursed Satha said, "Of course we saw him, he's aboard that ship over there that's sailing off. In fact all these ships are all going to Chîn." So Sayyid also boarded that ship, they pulled anchor and sailed off. On the way Satha offered Sayyid a piece of dried bread that had been dipped in a spice- drug. Sayyid took it and ate it and lost his consciousness. The cursed Babak got out of his hiding place [A 421] but however much he hit Sayyid with his sword he did not cut as much as a single hair of his. So without further ado they tied an anchor round his neck and dropped him in the sea. But right then a stormy wind blew the ship hard onto a rock and broke it into pieces. Babak and Satha, the two of them were rescued on a wooden board, all the rest drowned. As for Sayyid, he dived to the bottom of the sea.

Meanwhile, by the time Babak and Satha were washed out on land they were hungry, so they found some fruit and ate it. Then they came up to a village and asked, "What city is this?" and were told, "They call this city Dilchin, this is the province of Chîn and this city is the capital." The accursed saw that about fifty thousand troops were camped in front of the city. At that moment the devil drew near and Babak burst into tears upon seeing him and complained about Sayyid. Iblis replied, "I am your good fortune. Go now and invite the king of this place here and tell him the name of his father and his own name, and should they ask for more miracles, well tell them that on such and such a place there are forty jars of royal goods from the days of kings of old. Let them go and open them and offer their obedience to you."

The accursed got up and went for the king. He told the gate-keepers, "You people go and inform your king that a prophet has arrived here outside, and is seeking permission to enter." Someone got inside and came back saying, "The Sultan has approved" and Babak got inside. He told the king his own and his father's name and went on, [A 422] "You saw a dream last night and it was like this and like that, and here's its interpretation." The hit him several times with a sword but it did not cut him, the arrows did not penetrate him. They lit a fire and put him on it but he did not burn, he just said, "If you want more proof and miracles, there's forty jars full of royal treasures of old at such and such a place lying open. Go and mind your business." They found and opened them and they all fell at the cursed wretch's feet and accepted to follow him in everything he would say. They became his obedient and faithful servants.

Meanwhile Sayyid relates, "*As soon as I regained my consciousness I realized I was moving head downwards, when all of a sudden a man came and held me, untied my hands and removed the anchor from my neck. In fact he took me to the bottom of the sea, we went so far down that the sea was left hanging over our heads like a sky. I took a close look and saw that the person who had led me there was red faced with a sword hanging from his neck and an turban wrapped in the manner of the Arabs. He got down from his horse and embraced me saying, "Sayyid, not to worry! Several things like that afflict real men! How many more wondrous things you are going to see."*

They moved on until an impressive city appeared, with seven-story towers. As soon as they approached, the people of the city came out to meet them. Handsome people in magnificent dresses they were, and they came to pay their respects to Sayyid. They took him and brought him to the city, in whose center there was a public square where wheat had been piled up and people had gathered and were taking it away in sacks. [A 423] From there they took him to the palace, where Sayyid saw that a throne had been set up and an old man, dressed in green and with a crown on his head, seated on the throne with his legs seated by his sides. As soon as he saw Sayyid he came down, greeted him showing him great kindness, and said, "Lord, I became Muslim in the hands of the Commander of the Faithful, Ali. Now they call this place Taht al-Thara (Under-the-Moist-Earth), for just as the heavens are made of seven layers, so is the earth. On the first layer live the humans, on the second live us the *paris* and the *jins*, nobody lives on the third, the beasts live on the fourth, the demons on the fifth, there is darkness and gloom in the sixth and the sea on the seventh.

They kept Sayyid there for seven days and on the eighth day they brought him out from under the sea. Says Sayyid, "*They told me 'Close your eyes' and I closed them and when I opened them I found myself by the seashore, Ashqar grazing right across from me.*" As soon as Ashqar saw Sayyid he came up to him, Sayyid put on his armor, mounted and rode off.

He came up to a church and a monk came outside to greet him. He said, "Welcome, Sayyid Battal, it is such a pleasure! I saw Mustafa in my dream last night, and it was he who told me you would arrive" and raised his finger and became Muslim. He took Sayyid inside, brought food and they ate. [A 424] Sayyid asked for news of Babak and the monk, in tears, said, "There's a city not far from here called Dilchin, whose padishah is called Waqqas. Babak came this way and raised great many riots and destroyed those provinces. Not to mention that he did many things that are not approved by any doctrine." Sayyid also burst into tears and they lamented together. Then Sayyid said, "Now I must give you a

letter to send to him," and he quickly wrote a letter that he gave to the monk, who took it and went over to Waqqas.

He was seating with the cursed Babak drinking wine when the monk handed him the letter. Waqqas took it and read it aloud. First there was a heading and this is what was written, " In the name of God, let it be known from my part, from Battal Ghazi that is, that the cursed Babak has fled in fear of my sword and taken refuge in your court. He has incited you to evil acts and ruined you. As soon as you read the letter you are to tie his hands together and then to his neck and bring him to my hands. If you disobey, I shall be there on the spot, so be prepared to see what I will make of you." When Waqqas read the letter he ordered to have the monk killed, but Babak did not allow it, saying, "It is not good to kill the envoy." So Waqqas wrote a letter back, saying, "Battal you slaughterer, I was looking for you night and day, in order to take revenge for my father and brother's blood. It is my good fortune that has brought you here in person." He handed the letter to the monk who took it and brought it to Sayyid. He read it and did not say a word. That night he got up at early dawn, mounted and marched off in the direction of the city. [A 425]

Meanwhile, Babak along with four hundred thousand infidels like himself mounted and lined up for battle. Sayyid rode up to the city and saw the sea like army standing there, all mounted and with their ranks arranged for battle. He marched right into that army and gave a terrifying war-cry. When they heard Sayyid's war-cry they thought the heavens were rent asunder. Waqqas asked Babak, "What's going on?" and Babak said, "This is Battal's call to arms." Waqqas, amazed, said, "God forbid that there should be a man to give such a war-cry." Babak said, "He has no equal, it is true, but this time he'll certainly be destroyed in my hands." At that moment Sayyid came down from the mountain and entered the battlefield, and displayed seventy two different types of moves. Waqqas was amazed with his manhood and skills. Sayyid shouted, "Waqqas, I am Battal Ghazi , so just get hold of that infidel and hand him over to me. As for yourself, wrap a shroud around your neck and come over to me, otherwise you are going to see what one does not see in this world." A brave warrior called Haman entered the battlefield and hurled his lance at Sayyid. Sayyid repelled it and seized him by the belt , lifted and threw him up in the air, and then hit and cut him in two pieces on his way down. One by one he attacked seventy infidels and that people fell into great dismay. [A 426] Babak shouted, "What happened to you? Here let me get hold of him" and dispatched one hundred thousand men against Sayyid. They circled Sayyid and fought till noon. Babak saw that his hundred thousand people were tired so he sent in another hundred thousand mounted warriors.

They fought for three days like that, night and day. Sayyid was overpowered and got injured in several places. He lost a lot of blood and became very feeble. He turned his

face towards God the exalted and asked for the intercession and help of the Apostle of God. Right then a tumult was raised in the heavens and Tamus the Pari along with an army of one hundred thousand winged fairies arrived on the scene. Only swords, no men were visible while heads were flying around. Within a moment two hundred thousand infidels were cut down and the army of infidels was broken and forced to flee.

When Sayyid saw what had happened he was grateful, he struck his lance in the ground, rested his head on it and stayed there. He had fought for three days and nights, no wonder he was a tired man! Tamus the Pari came along, held Sayyid and pulled him to the side. Sayyid opened his eyes, saw Tamus and rejoiced. Tamus brought him to the camp, took off his armor, prepared some sweet drinks (*sherbet*) for him to drink, and he carefully bundled up all his wounds. Sayyid said, "Where on earth is Babak?" Tamus answered, "The cursed devil took Babak and his young and brought them to Rûm. There was great fighting but we did not manage to capture them." Sayyid rejoiced and was glad. Then they marched against the city with banners and standards and kettledrums, [A 427] and Sayyid mounted Ashqar and advanced with Tamus the Pari on his right side. When Waqqas saw what was going on, that they are a strange tribe the likes of which he had never seen, he looked for Babak but could not see him. He sighed heavily, but meanwhile the army of winged fairies had drawn near and his strength had deserted him. Then Sayyid gave a war cry and shouted, "Waqqas, abandon your infidel ways and become a Muslim, otherwise I will order the winged fairies and the demons right now to turn this city upside down." Waqqas quickly had the gate opened, rushed out and fell at Sayyid's feet, saying, "Brave warrior, I made a mistake, an infidel came and led me astray." He raised his finger and became a Muslim. Twenty four cities and seventy fortresses all became Muslim. Sayyid stayed there for a whole month and taught them the essentials of religion, the obligations and observances. Then he sent Tamus to his own land and told Waqqas, "Rig a ship for me, I am boarding." Waqqas replied, "I am coming along, I am not leaving you" but Sayyid did not let him. He boarded the ship with forty people bid Waqqas farewell, and off they went.

Meanwhile the cursed Babak when he saw all that tumult fled and came to the seashore, when all of a sudden Azazil appeared. As soon as Babak noticed him, he started crying, "Where have you been? You've put me in such trouble even though you had said 'I will never be missing from your side.' [A 428] Look now what Battal has made of me." The cursed devil said, "Come on, move and do not say much. I am watching after you and from now on your task will go smoothly." With these words he took the cursed wretch over the seas and let him loose saying, "March on to Istanbul so that you throw a mountain at Battal's heart." Babak went on for seven days, miserable, on foot and hungry until one

day forty priests appeared and upon drawing near presented their greetings saying, "Who are you, what's your name and where are you going?" Babak said, "Where are you coming from and where are you going?" They said, "We come from Rûm." He said, "Who is the padishah of Rûm?" and they said, "The Padishah is Takfur, the son of Asatur, and yes indeed, he is an Sunni Muslim. He's together with Battal's middle son, the two of them are padishahs at Rûm." Babak said, "And where are you going?" They said, "We are looking for Babak." He said, "What will you do with him?" They said, "Nestor, the vice-regent (*nāyib*) of Istanbul keeps the religion in secret and plans to get rid of Takfur, and he told us 'Our idols have informed that 'Here, Babak is coming, and he has killed Battal', so rush out to meet him,' and he sent us with a bundle of clothes to give to him." Babak heard this and rejoiced. He said, "Here, I am Babak, I killed Battal in Chîn" They said, "Show us your chest, we want to see." The cursed wretch opened his chest, it was all black and white circles. [A 429] The minute they saw that it they fell at his feet. They dressed him in those clothes and brought him to Istanbul.

Nestor came to meet him, greeted him and then they hid him somewhere in the city. Under his leadership great begs were organized until one day they found an opportunity to hunt and killed Takfur and Bashir. At that point Nestor came and released Babak. He screamed, "I am Babak the happy man, who killed Battal in Chîn. Here I am, I have come and killed Battal's son and Takfur also. I am that person that no sword can cut, no lance or arrow leaves a trace upon, fire does not burn. Hey people, whoever submits to me will be rescued." They marched and killed all the Muslim followers of Bashir and Takfur, even though most of them returned to their old faith and became infidels. So they gave the throne to the cursed one and sent out messages in all four directions and gathered four hundred thousand men. Thirty six famous infidel begs took an oath of allegiance to Babak. Amongst them were Nuqayta the Frank, Kabus the Frank, Tarun the Frank, and Abdu'l-Salib. Then the cursed wretch took his army and marched against Malatya. While Sayyid's companions were at unawares they killed forty four famous army leaders. Sayyid's son Nazir along with eight famous companions, namely Ahmad Turran, Abdu'l-Salam, Juda, Qasim, Mansur, Nasr Habbab, Aflahun and Abdu'l-Wahhab [A 430] fought their way to a fortress called Larinjan, while the cursed Babak ordered and they demolished Malatya. The cursed wretch spoke to himself, "Why, you've pulled such a big one on Battal, he will never let go of you. Even if you become a bull's horns you will not escape from his hands." This accursed had several devotees among the Georgians, so he migrated to those parts.

Meanwhile, one of those days Sayyid came to Ali b. Zartaq. The news had reached that, "Here, Sayyid has arrived," and without wasting time he had gathered all the begs and

gone out to meet Sayyid. He greeted him and brought him to the city, gave him to eat and drink. Then Ali told Sayyid in every detail how Suhayl b. Sunbat together with the city of the Georgians had become Muslim and Sayyid was very pleased.

After a few days a messenger arrived and handed Sayyid a letter. Sayyid took the letter, read it, pulled his kerchief over his face, burst into tears, and tore his collar out. As it turned out the letter was from Amir Umar. The following was written, "Babak has come and martyred your son along with forty four of his companions. He laid the whole city and the provinces waste. Just your son and Abdu'l-Wahhab and Aflahun and Juda's four sons have survived. We all fled and made our way to this fortress, they martyred the rest." [A 431] After that Sayyid put on mourning clothes.

Meanwhile, Amir Umar with Abdu'l-Wahhab wrote another letter to the caliph. He dispatched Abdu'l-Wahhab with the letter to the caliph. He reached the caliph and the caliph also went into mourning. He asked Abdu'l-Wahhab, "Where do you hear Sayyid to be these days?" He said, "He is in the Monophysite province in Georgia, and has converted that province to Islam. They say Babak went to those parts as well." The caliph sent Abdu'l-Wahhab with two warriors, Ma'ad and Hashim, and forty thousand men.

On the day they arrived the tidings reached Sayyid and he came to meet them. They cried together for Sayyid's dear children and companions, until Abdu'l-Wahhab said, "Lord, in my life that lasted more than three hundred years I have seen a lot of places but I never found a person as evil, as immoral and merciless as Babak. Beware, and do not consider that infidel easy prey." Sayyid said, "What can we do, whatever will be will be. Let us see what God has in stock for us."

Some days passed after this, Sayyid made Abdu'l-Wahhab his commander and marched into Nakhjiwan. The tidings reached Babak and he also gathered an army of five hundred thousand men and advanced against Sayyid. He sent Marzuban Kushan ahead as a vanguard with a hundred thousand men [A 432] and he marched against Abdu'l-Wahhab. The two of them fought. Abdu'l-Wahhab unsaddled him with one blow and wanted to cut his head off, but he asked for mercy saying, "Take me to Sayyid and I will become a Muslim." The armies mingled and the tidings reached Sayyid.

Meanwhile, on this side, Babak appeared, encircled Abdu'l-Wahhab and freed Marzuban from captivity. Abdu'l-Wahhab realized that the situation was dire, and his strength abandoned him. Suddenly Sayyid arrived and gave a war-cry, "You good for nothing infidel, where do you think you can save your life from me? Here I am," and charged forth. Ali b. Zartaq arrived and also charged forth, and the army of Islam arrived and charged forth. There was fighting for a day and a night. In the midst of fighting Sayyid came across Abdu'l-Salib. He was a stark strong infidel. When he saw Sayyid he

said, "Battal, where have you been? I've been looking for you and finally the Fire of Light has brought you in my hands" and hurled his lance. Sayyid repelled his lance as well as his mace and sword. Then it was Sayyid's turn, and he hit with the mace. It scattered his shield and landed on his chest and he collapsed from his horse. Sayyid dismounted, and before this fellow could get up Sayyid, as quick as a falcon, was up on his chest. Sayyid did not even give him enough time to open his eyes, grabbed his beard as if it were a donkey's tail and with the words, "No more pardoning for Babak's followers" he severed his head from his body. The cursed wretch surrendered his soul to hell. Sayyid mounted his horse again, [A 433] and gave another war-cry that reached straight into Babak's heart. Babak saw that the tide had turned and stayed no more but took to fleeing.

*Come now and see* how many Sayyid killed- the mind cannot fathom it. Babak fled the scene for three days and finally came to a place and settled there. Those Frank begs were with him. They held a council and again they talked of raising an army, of doing this and that, of inviting this beg and that ghazi. They met and debated in the private rooms of the cursed wretch. There was a castle called Qand-Abad whose beg was called Suhayl b. Sunbat. Babak sent him a letter saying, "Have mercy upon me, give some place for me so that I can come take refuge." The letter was delivered, Suhayl read it and said, "My fortress is small, let him come only if he comes alone," and sent the servant back. That night Babak left the army with eight of his begs and came to the fortress of Qand-Abad and entered into Suhayl's presence. He came out to meet them and brought them to his palace.

Sayyid was informed that evening, so he instructed his army, "You go ahead and cross the water and keep your ears open: when you hear my cry, come along. I may just be able to get hold of the infidel" and rode off. He went in the dark of the night and came to the tower. He hid his horse somewhere and took a lasso with him. He threw it up to the tower and climbed up straight on the palace roof. He looked in from the window and saw that the cursed Babak sitting next to [A 434] Suhayl. Walid son of Uqba and the cursed Satha were sitting there as well and they were all drinking wine and getting drunk. He came down quietly and stood across from them in a dark corner.

Babak raised his head and said, "Suhayl of Khwarazm, I know that his time around Battal is going to die." The cursed Walid immediately asked for Baghdad and was granted it, while he made Satha his vizier. There were eight people sitting around, he assigned them each a clime. Sayyid marched forth and asked, "What will you assign to me?" When Babak saw Sayyid he sighed loudly and looked for escape, but Sayyid punched him with such force that he fell down landing on his head. Sayyid fastened his two hands tight. Walid and Satha also looked for escape and he hit them each with one blow of his sword and cut them in two. There were some more begs, he killed them all. Suhayl b. Sunbat fell



at Sayyid's feet, raised his finger and became Muslim. They quickly opened the front gate and Sayyid gave his war-cry, and the army that was standing all ready to go arrived at once. Until the morning they had cleared all of Babak's followers, not a single one was spared. After three days he was an exhausted man. He chained Babak and entrusted him to Suhayl.

They started out for Baghdad. On the road Babak told Suhayl, [A 435] "Suhayl, come over here and release me from the chains, I am a prophet, I am Babak the cheerful." Suhayl came up to Sayyid saying, "Lord, Babak comes up and tells me 'Set me free' and reads magic." Sayyid came over to Babak and said, "You dog, we've hardly been on the road yet. Come on, accept the faith and become Muslim and save both your head from me and your soul from the fire of the other world." Babak said, "Battal, listen up, I am a prophet and this is my era. The era of Muhammad is bygone. Abandon his principles of worship and come in allegiance to me so that tomorrow, during Judgment Day you won't be ashamed of yourself in front of me." Sayyid was furious and sent for a hook. They brought it right away and he dipped it in Babak's mouth, took out his tongue and cut it off saying, "There, that's what you need, you infidel." They pressed on for a few days and Babak made gestures to Suhayl to let him free. So Suhayl came again and informed Sayyid. He came over to Babak again and offered advice and guidance for a while, saying, "Here, come and be a Muslim and I will ask from God to restore your tongue." Babak started on his nonsense so Sayyid had his two hands cut off. There after he took out his eyes. Finally Sayyid sent a messenger and rushed a letter to the caliph writing, "The cursed Babak is in my hands, what do you say, should I kill him right away, or should I bring him over to you?" Besides that, wherever Sayyid would visit they would complain that, "They take our daughters from our houses, we have no idea what's going on." Everywhere Sayyid stopped they said the same thing. [A 436]

Then the messenger reached the caliph and delivered the good tidings and the caliph rejoiced and was glad. Upon his order they embellished the city and prepared for celebrations. Sayyid arrived and the caliph went out to welcome and greet him. He brought Sayyid into town and honored him with a feast. He also ordered that they bring Babak. They lit a tremendous bonfire in front of the city and burned the infidel, throwing his ashes to the wind. And these news spread out all over the world.

## CHAPTER NINETEEN

The Story of Ra'd Jazu and Saffiya,  
the Missing Daughter of the Caliph

Sayyid stayed seven days with the caliph. One day they told the caliph, "Your daughter Saffiya has also disappeared" and he was so shocked he fell unconscious and did not say a word for three days. His wife Sa'ida Banu was lamenting one evening in the garden and she just lied down. Before she fell asleep she saw two green birds come and settle on the tree under which she was lying. One bird said, "Why is the caliph's wife crying?" and the other replied, "They've abducted her daughter, that why she's crying." "Who took her?" asked the first bird, and the other answered, "Ra'd Jazu took her." "Where is she now?" continued the first bird, and the other said, "In a place called Aynu'l-Qitir beyond the seven seas, that's where she is. He's taken a hundred and forty young virgin maidens from this province." Then the birds flew away. Sa'ida went to the caliph at once and told him everything. The caliph informed Sayyid and he said, "Here's work for me again. [A 437] Wish me good fortune so that I may, God willing, find this infidel and bring this task to conclusion."

That evening Sayyid mounted and rode off. He reached Oman in three days. He saw a marvelous city where an old man had brought an idol and was crying out, "No one can fashion such an idol, it is a benign God. I am a master at carving gods, there's no idol god maker better than me. I am the master of the idol-god makers, and whoever gets this one will be safe from any kind of troubles, his daily food and provisions will always be bountiful." When Sayyid heard all this he became upset and said, "What sort of blasphemies are you uttering? How can anything that an impotent being like you cuts out have anything to do with divinity? God is the One Who created the twelve thousand worlds but was created by no one, and the one who provides for the whole world." The prodigal old man argued with Sayyid and said a lot of nonsense. Sayyid hit and threw him down. The people got angry and circled Sayyid, who threw down everyone who would hit. He thrashed fifteen people. The beg of the city was informed and he immediately came to meet Sayyid. He dismounted and greeted Sayyid and rubbed the earth with his head, whereupon the crowd dispersed. He brought Sayyid to the palace, gave him to eat and placed him on the throne, saying, "Brave warrior, what brought you over here?" Sayyid told him that the caliph's daughter had disappeared [A lacuna, P 175<sup>b</sup>] and that Ra'd Jazu had abducted her. Taghanos also cried and said, "My daughter also has disappeared and I do not know where she has gone. Now if you bring back my daughter I will also convert from idolatry and become a Muslim." [P 176<sup>a</sup>] Right then there was a hullabaloo in town and Sayyid asked, "What's going on?" Taghanos prayed and said, "Lion of God, the Commander of the Faithful Ali came over here and made half the city Muslim and collected tribute from the other half. Now at times they quarrel over some trivial matters." Sayyid said, "Let's hope that I may get hold of your daughter so that both you and your city

become Muslims" Upon Taghanos' order they went and dispersed the fighting crowd. They held a feast for Sayyid for seven days and prepared a ship that he boarded with forty men and sailed away.

They went for three days and on the fourth day an adverse wind blew the ship on a rock and smashed it to pieces. Sayyid jumped on top of Ashqar and out to the sea and started swimming. Suddenly a great ship appeared in front of them and picked up Sayyid and Ashqar. Once on board they asked, "Who are you and how did you get involved in such an event?" Sayyid answered, "In Rûm and in the province of Syria there is an enemy of mine who has stirred up great sedition. We fought and I finally overpowered him. I chased him about and dropped him in the sea. While I was going after him my ship sank and this horse here is how I managed to save my life. This is it, then I came up to you." They asked, "What is your name?" and he said "My name is Habil and the captain of the ship said, "My name is Qintar, I am the son of the brother of Padishah Qonstantin. My father was the Padishah Araqil, and when Battal killed him I fled to Chîn. There was a beg there called Qaytur, I entered his service [P 176<sup>b</sup>] and it turned out he was my father's vizier. Now he came to find me and told me that Battal killed Takfur and the throne in Rûm is empty, they said, so that's where I am going." Sayyid said, "As long as Battal is there you couldn't go."

They sailed on until they reached a mountain, and then they tied the boat to a rock and got out. There was a beautiful green grass meadow so they lit a fire and cooked food to eat. After a while they saw a demon approaching, forty cubits tall, with an upright posture, a demon with an awful face, and spraying flames from his tail. They saw him and their powers left them. He gave a war-cry and said, "You cowards, I am Ra'd Jazu, so why did you come here to my hunting grounds, is that it?" he advanced and grabbed Nuqayta the vizier and broke him into two. He got hold of someone else saying, "Why on earth did you come to my hunting fields? Did you not know they were mine?" Sayyid said, "Come on, throw your arrows" and so they did, only the cursed wretch destroyed the one in his hand and read a magic talisman, and four out of five hundred people burned in the flames. Sayyid took out his bow and took aim at the wizard (*jazu*), found his mark, stretched and shot. The arrow hit him in the right eye and came out from behind his skull. There was a great bang and Ra'd Jazu disappeared.

When the wizard (*jazu*) left there were only one hundred people left, they all recognized Sayyid, and raising their finger in front of him they accepted the faith and became Muslim. Then they boarded the ship and sailed for a whole month. They reached the land of Sind and saw what a great city that was. Sayyid asked, "What's this city?" and they said, "This city belongs to Sindubar; he has his throne here."

They came straight into the port and the people of the city gathered around them in a crowd. [P 177<sup>a</sup>] Even Rustam would have lost his breath were he to behold Sayyid, so as soon as they saw what a handsome brave warrior Sayyid was, they rushed to give the news to their padishah. They had a sultan called Qamar Shah, who send his envoys instructing them, "Go and fetch them, lets see what sort of people they are." They came and asked, "Who are you?" and Sayyid said, "We are emissaries of the caliph." The envoys came back and reported, and Qamar Shah sent seventy illustrious persons who came and brought Sayyid to the king. He arrived, presented his greetings, and they showed him a place to sit. Qamar Shah said, "Come on tell us your news" and Sayyid said, "Ra'd Jazu has abducted the caliph's daughter, so if you know his place let me know because I am looking for him." They asked, "What's your name?" Sayyid introduced himself, and well, it turned out they had heard of Sayyid's skills and fame so the king rushed down from his throne and greeted Sayyid welcoming him. He burst into tears and great wailing and he said, "My lord, I also have a daughter called Ganj Banu who has disappeared. Our astrologers say that it was Ra'd Jazu who snatched her and that it is Battal who will kill him. Thank God that I am seeing your blessed face." They immediately brought food, but Sayyid did not eat. Qamar Shah asked, "Why are you not eating?" and said, "What school of faith do you follow?" and Qamar said, "I am an idolater." Sayyid retorted, "Become a Muslim and we'll eat together from this food." He said, "Let us agree that if I see my daughter, Ganj Banu, I will become a Muslim and abandon the ways of idolatry." They agreed on that condition and Sayyid ate his food.

After a few days, while out on the hunt, they came out to a beautiful meadow and Qamar said, "It's right here they snatched my daughter away, and I know nothing more about what happened to her." While they were standing there talking, a beautiful gazelle of a thousand colors appeared. They circled it and threw a lasso, but it whisked out of it and ran away. [P 177<sup>b</sup>] Sayyid chased her along a couple of stations and whenever Sayyid would stop it would stop as well. [A 438] Then Sayyid would chase it and it would run away so fast that not even a bird could reach it. Puffing and huffing Sayyid reached it and threw a lasso that circled its neck. He thought he had gotten it, only when he drew close it whisked the lasso away and ran away. He chased it for sixty leagues until it became dark. The gazelle disappeared. Sayyid, on his part, came to a beautiful spring where he performed his ablutions and then a prayer. He sat for a while and then performed the after-sunset prayer. When he was finished, he was an exhausted man and he said, "Why, let me go in for a swim." He dived into the spring, bathed and came out to put on his clothes but did not find them. He dozed off for a while but woke up soon and this time he did not his horse and armor. He was utterly exhausted, so he looked around, up and down but could

not see anyone. All of the prayers that he had were gone as well, except for the lock of the prophet's blessed hair that he kept strapped on his arm. He sat down and in tears, like an old, helpless man, rubbed his face on the earth and cried saying, "God help me, I've been stranded alone, separated from my companions. You've come to my rescue in lots of dire straits, do not forsake me here." He asked for the intercession of the light of the prophets and saints, and those who are close to the Lord. Right then the prophet Khidr appeared. Sayyid came up to him, greeted him and fell at his feet in tears. He accepted the greetings and said, "What are you doing, my dear boy, from all the troubles in the world what are you doing lying helpless like this here? [A 439] It was the daughter of Ra'd Jazu in the appearance of the gazelle that tricked you and found the opportunity to get your clothes and horse. But she did not harm you, she was afraid of the prophet's blessed lock of hair and did not dare come near you." Sayyid said, "Fine, but what should I do to get my horse and armor back?" He said, "I've got some errands in Sarandil and I'm on my way there. I will carry you along." Then he told Sayyid, "Close your eyes." Sayyid closed them and when he opened them again he found himself at the foot of the tomb of the prophet Adam -may peace be upon him. Khidr said, "Let me go and send Tamus the Pari over to join you" and vanished.

Sayyid visited the tomb of the prophet Adam and stayed there for three days and enjoyed himself when, suddenly, Tamus the Pari arrived and exchanged greetings with Sayyid. He said, "Brave warrior, how are, what's going on?" Sayyid told him his story in every detail and said, "You must help me this time around as well and be kind enough to ferry me over to Ra'd's place." The winged fairy Tamus said, "Good Lord, that cursed's place is in a difficult place, one must cross the seven seas, and there are plenty of dangers on the way." Sayyid said, "I will hear none of it, you must help out this time as well." Tamus realized that there was no escape, so he released his army and kept only one thousand capable winged fairies. They lifted Sayyid into the heavens and crossed the seven seas. [A 440] After seeing several marvelous wonders they landed on a field where they settled.

A beautiful meadow, decorated with hyacinth and saffron, with endless trees of aloe and sandal, with colorful birds circling over it, its earth emanating the scent of musk and amber, its stones made of rubies and agate and sapphire. The winged fairy Tamus spoke, "This is Aynu'l-Qitir, the Spring of Lies, the residence of Ra'd Jazu." Sayyid bathed in spring and they performed his prayer. Then he saw a city from white marble and Tamus said, "Be ready, here comes Ra'd Jazu." Sayyid said, "Bring me some arrows and a bow." He brought it and placed it right in front of Sayyid, who took them and inscribed seven names on them before he kept them.

Right then the fortress' gate flung open and Ra'd Jazu came out holding a diamond sword. He approached Sayyid and screamed, "Tamus, what is this now? You lead my enemies to me now? Let me deal with him first, and then I will come and punish you." Ra'd opened his mouth to start pronouncing his magic, Sayyid read aloud the name of the Highest, filled in an arrow, stretched and shot. Thanks to the wish of the eternal God the arrow came and hit Ra'd in the forehead, pierced it and stuck to the ground. Instantly the cursed fell off his horse, Sayyid rushed forth, and with the sword that had fallen off his hand he cut off his head. [A 441] Blood flowed as if they had sacrificed a hundred camels. Tamus the Pari saw that and fell down in prostration of thanks. Then he came and offered his thanks in front of Sayyid, kissing him in the eyes.

Then they marched and entered the city and made straight for the palace. Sayyid entered the palace, and saw a lovely maiden sobbing in tears seated on the throne. Sayyid presented his greetings and the maiden accepted them and bowed, saying, "My young man, what kind of person are you? No human has ever set foot here." Sayyid answered, "I am Battal" and the maiden said, "So you spoke the truth, Aysha Hatun. Last night I cried and wailed a lot and said 'God, please, either take my soul or else liberate me from this infidel.' Then sleep came to my eyes and I saw Aysha Hatun who told me 'Do not cry for tomorrow Battal Ghazi is coming and will kill Ra'd and liberate you.' I woke up and have been crying since the morning, until, thank God I saw your blessed face." While the two of them were talking like this, the other maidens appeared and thrust themselves at Sayyid's feet in tears. Sayyid spoke words of soothing to them and said, "From now on, do not worry. I've killed the wizard (*jazu*), and I am also going to take you to your provinces." They rejoiced and offered prayers of thanks to Sayyid.

The winged fairy Tamus sent a winged fairy to fetch the army. They came [A 442] and also offered prayers in front of Sayyid. Sayyid ordered and they collected all the goods lying around. He selected a small part of it for himself and distributed the rest to Tamus and the winged fairies. They all became rich. Then they demolished that fortress and leveled it to the ground. They loaded the goods on the winged fairies and off they went.

They came and settled in a place close to Sind. Sayyid found a man leading his oxen and sent him to Qamar Shah. He arrived bearing the good tidings, and reported that Sayyid had arrived at such and such a place. Qamar Shah gathered his begs, came out to meet Sayyid and saw that an enormous army had camped. They saw all these winged fairies and fear settled over them. Sayyid came forward with winged fairy Tamus by his side so that they wouldn't be scared, and they exchanged greetings. Then Sayyid ordered and they brought the maidens, and as soon as Qamar Shah saw his daughter he became Muslim along with his people and his province. Sayyid ordered and they destroyed the

monasteries building mosques in their places. Then he took his leave of Qamar Shah and they returned to Omman, where he presented Taghanos with his daughter and he also became Muslim with his people and province. Thereafter they came to Egypt and he offered his daughter to Sultan Qarun. *And as the story goes*, he sent everyone of these maidens to her own home.

Afterwards he came to Mecca on a pilgrimage and distributed five hundred loads of goods. From there he came to Medina and visited the tomb of the prophet and distributed another five hundred loads of goods there. [A 443] He held his face against the tomb of the prophet and offered many thanks and asked for forgiveness and cried with sobs. Right then sleep came to his eyes and he saw the prophet -may peace be upon Him. He came and kissed Sayyid in the eyes and said, "My dear, with all these deeds that you have done, your good name will be famous in the world until Judgment day. I am very pleased by you. But now stand up and rush to Baghdad- you'll see the heretics have assaulted the caliph." Sayyid woke up and told Tamus his dream's story. So they left and headed towards Baghdad.

## CHAPTER TWENTY

### The Story of Hakam

So the story that the story tellers say goes that at the time when Abu Muslim of Khurasan -may God have mercy upon him- destroyed the kharijites, a scoundrel from the family of Yazid survived. And there was one of his sons, the cursed was called Hakam, who had been devastating places here and there and everywhere for a long time. He wouldn't settle in one place and rebels from here and there joined him until thirty thousand men gathered. Then he set out and came to Khaybar where the cursed Antar welcomed him and honored him saying, "Hakam, come, let us join hands, you have thirty thousand man, I have twenty thousand. Why, we shall attack and kill the caliph and you'll be the caliph and I shall be the vizier by your side." These two accursed ones joined hands. [A 444]

An evening while the caliph was asleep in front of Baghdad they attacked. The caliph escaped and entered Baghdad but his army was annihilated. The following morning these two infidels besieged the city. That day the caliph wrote letters and sent them to all directions. For seven days Hakam was waging war, on the eighth he found the opportunity; they propped ladders and took the city. Caliph Mu'tasim climbed to the roof, uncovered his head and turned his face in the direction of Mecca. He rubbed his face on the dust and lamented and pleaded for the intercession of the light of Muhammad. Right

then Sayyid appeared along with Tamus the Pari and saw that the situation was adverse. He turned toward the city and gave a war-cry, "Infidels, so you found the battlefield empty, is this the kind of thing to do? Here I come." He spurred his horse, and with the army of the winged fairies behind him they attacked. There were swords clashing and heads rolling, but those hitting were invisible. They piled the corpses one on top of the other, blood was streaming down.

While fighting Sayyid came up to Hakam and someone said, "My lord, this is the cursed Hakam who brought the army." Sayyid said, "You kharijite scoundrel, are you the only one left to make a claim for the throne?" Hakam said, "Battal, if I have made a claim, it is because I am seeking my own property. The throne was ours and Abu Muslim seized it by trickery. If you are a Muslim grant the righteous their rights." Sayyid said [A 445] , "You dog son of a dog, your ancestors perpetrated so many crimes against Muhammad, they spilled the blood of his children. God did his best and there appeared a young man and all by himself spilled the blood of the tyrants and took their property and gave it to the sons." As he was saying that, Hakam hurled his lance and attempted to cross over. Sayyid repelled the lance and grabbed him tightly by the belt and tied his two hands on top of his head and he entrusted him to his adjutant. He moved on from there and he brought down Antar with one blow and tied him up. It went on like that; not one of the fifty thousand *kharijites* was spared, they were all killed. Sayyid came straight to the caliph who dismounted and came out to meet him. He drew Sayyid into his chest and greeted him. Then came winged fairy Tamus and they exchanged greetings with the caliph. Sayyid described the whole affair and the hundred thousand winged fairies appeared to the people, they pitched tents outside the city and settled in great magnificence, but still those watching were fearful. The caliph saw his daughter and was delighted. The winged fairy Tamus told them all the adventures of Sayyid and they all prayed for Sayyid. The caliph held celebrations for Sayyid and Tamus for three days.

Sayyid ordered and they brought the two accursed, Hakam and Antar and they flayed them alive. Then they sent off Tamus the Pari. Then tidings came from Malatya that Amir had passed away and that Huma Dil-Afruz had also passed away. Sayyid was greatly grieved [A 446] and mourned for seven days. Then they deemed right to give the caliph's daughter to Sayyid, and they did so. Sayyid's sons came and visited their father, and spent some time in his service. Then he in fact bestowed Malatya to them and sent them off. He appointed Abdu'l-Wahhab commander-in-chief and he said, "What else am I to do here- praise be to God there is no more enemies of Islam left."

Asatur had a son called Qanatos. He came and fell at Sayyid's feet and said, "Lord, grant me Rûm. It's been so long I've been waiting. Hold me responsible for tribute and I



shall come every year to see your blessed face and also bring the tribute of Rûm. There is nobody at Rûm now; I am your orphan, trust me, your servant, with Rûm." Sayyid said, "Become Muslim so that I may grant your wish." He answered, "I love my religion, have me just pay tribute." So he appointed Qanatos Caesar of Rûm and said, "Watch out and do not do any nonsense. You know what kind of person I am." He pronounced a prayer and exclaimed, "God forbid, no way shall I turn my face away from you." So he spoke and Sayyid sent him off.

After a few days the caliph's daughter passed away and Sayyid remained alone. When the time for the pilgrimage came Sayyid came to the Kaaba and circambulated it. Then he came to Medina and stayed there. At the time of the pilgrimage he would go to the Kaaba and circambulate it and then come to Medina and live there. Seven years [A 447] he lived there as a pilgrim and Medina became as prosperous as it had been in the time of the Apostle of God. From the four corners of the world, padishahs and gifts and presents would arrive and Sayyid would distribute them all. Himself, he was busy, night and day, with worship and prayer and contemplation.

## CHAPTER TWENTY-ONE

### The Story of the Death of Battal

One day Sayyid was sitting around when a young man named Osman arrived from Rûm. He read a prayer in front of Sayyid., presented his greetings and sat down. Sayyid asked, "Where are you coming from?" He said, "From Rûm." Sayyid asked for tidings and Osman started crying so Sayyid said, "What is the matter, why are you crying?" Osman said, "The Caesar Qanatos has become an enemy, he has sent message to Uj the Frank and letters in all four directions. He gathered all the infidel begs and raised an army of six hundred thousand men. Now Islam is in grave trouble, Qaysariya and Mamuriya are under siege, and he himself has reached Malatya. I know no further about the situation."

Sayyid was in great despair and that evening he saw the Apostle -may peace be upon Him- in his dream. He said, "Sayyid get up quickly and go to Rûm for the Muslims are in dire straits. Rush to help them without wasting time." Sayyid woke up, performed his ablutions and prayer, touched the ground with his face and said, "God, Munificent and Merciful, I was hoping to meet my fate here, but nevermind, whatever comes from you is always welcome." [A 448] Then there came a voice from the holy and sacred tomb of the prophet -the most meritorious of prayers and the most perfect of salutations upon Him- and it said, "Battal, wherever you are, you are never separated from us, we are with you, we are

pleased with you. You have made noble efforts and bountiful good deeds in the path of religion. Strive this time as well, and afterwards you may continue with your studies with us. We, all the purified souls, are all in line to assist you." As soon as he heard that he touched the ground with his face and performed a prostration of thanks. Then he swiftly saddled his horse, mounted and off he went. On the road Sayyid kept on saying, "My God I have become old and weak, but you are the protector of all those in trouble. I have entrusted myself in you, you are my refuge."

Meanwhile one day Sayyid's sons and Abdu'l-Wahhab were sitting around when they brought the tidings that, "The Caesar Qanatos himself and Uj the Frank with six hundred thousand infidels have come and settled at such and such a place." The Muslims in a scramble gathered forty thousand Sunni ghazis. Abdu'l-Wahhab said, "Write a letter to the caliph and announce the situation." They wrote a letter -by that time the caliph Mu'tasim had died and his son Bakhtyar the fortunate became caliph, so they wrote him a letter and dispatched an envoy. When the infidel army drew near, Ali and Nazir held counsel and divided the forty thousand men into four units. They charged in attack and killed a great multitude of infidels. Abdu'l-Wahhab [A 449] shouted, "I am Abdu'l-Wahhab, the one who has seen the face of the Apostle" and the infidels turned against each other. But suddenly he reached his heavenly fate: Uj the Frank the accursed managed to hit him on the head and made Abdu'l-Wahhab a martyr. Abdu'l-Wahhab fell on the neck of the horse but the horse went out of the battlefield and up a small hill. There he surrendered his soul reciting the words of faith.

In the morning the infidels broke the ranks of the army of Islam which dispersed into the mountain. They surrounded the mountain and camped. They found the corpse of Abdu'l-Wahhab and they buried it there. For seventeen days they were besieged in the mountain and there were only six thousand men left -the rest all became martyrs. The infidels demolished Malatya and did not leave one stone unturned.

<Meanwhile> that evening Sayyid arrived and saw that the believers had dispersed and those remaining had taken refuge in the mountain. They had light fires and were fighting by the skin of their teeth. They were in great distress. Sayyid found some water, performed his ablutions, performed two complete prayers, buckled his leather bag and put on his armor, mounted Ashqar and raised his face towards the heavens. He said, "Lord, it's the end of my life and you are the padishah who killed an infidel such as Namrud with a weak fly. What if you were to show your kind generosity to this helpless servant and let me have my chance against this people created out of your spite?" [A 450] Three times, one after the other, he shouted, "Uj the Frank, here I am, be prepared" and he pulled out the sword of Zahhak and entered into the midst of the enemy army. Woe to him who would

get into Sayyid's way, he'd cut him in two. Later on he took the lance of Janduwal Jazu; every time he would hold it against the infidels flames would come out of it and would burn thirty to forty people. Ali and Nazir heard Sayyid's war cry and were delighted. They too charged forth. Around noon time dust was raised and Bakhtyar appeared with three hundred Sunni Muslims. Sayyid saw him and hurled himself towards the foot of the banner. He broke through enemy ranks and tore through their wings and came in front of the caesar. Qanatos saw Sayyid, sighed and looked at Uj the Frank. Uj threw himself onto Sayyid and hurled his sword, but Sayyid repelled it. Uj tried to cross over, but Sayyid dealt him such a blow with his sword that even though Uj held his shield against it, it was cut into two pieces. The sword pierced the armor and cut him into two pieces from head to saddlebow. The caesar saw that and turned his horse's head the other way and went off at once. Sayyid seized the banner. Right then, Tamus arrived from the heavens with one hundred thousand winged fairies. They slaughtered the infidels so that not even a thousand men were spared from the six hundred thousand.

As soon as the infidels were annihilated Sayyid came over to the caliph and they both dismounted and [A 451] greeted each other. The winged fairy Tamus came along and greeted both Sayyid and the caliph. Thereafter Sayyid ordered and they gathered the goods of the caesar and Uj the Frank. With that wealth they built Malatya again. Sayyid mourned deeply for Abdu'l-Wahhab. They constructed a new congregation mosque, and when Friday came, Sayyid read the sermon himself and they all prayed. Afterwards he climbed onto the pulpit again and preached and gave them advice. There was great enthusiasm from the crowd and Sayyid said, "I have served five caliphs, I have tried to do whatever I could on the path of God, I lowered the heads of the enemies of religion and here I am now, I've become old and my life is coming to an end. Now I must go back, but even if my body goes away, my soul stays. All what I have done I have done it for the sake of God and from now on one must make provisions for life's end and move on to the other side. Now you have all had bread and salt to eat, old and young, so do not begrudge me as I have not grudged you." They all, young and old, cried together and were very compassionate. Then he entrusted his sons to the caliph and said, "I wish that my dear children will not be spared any good fortune." [A 452] Then he pleaded for the compassion of Tamus the Pari, "You've fetched me around a lot on your neck, you ferried me over the seven seas, you have shown me great friendship on such desert places, I wish that you do not grudge me my final right" he said and Tamus also cried a good deal.

Then he turned to his sons and said, "Light of my eyes, learn a lesson from me, your father, and hold my advice: as much as my powers allowed me I struggled in the path of religion, at times on land, at times at sea, whatever I did, I did in the path of truth, I

did not do for the sake of my carnal soul. You too, seek to please God, and whatever you do, do not do it for your carnal soul. Do not consider ghaza an easy task, do not be tricked when gold looks like silver." Then he made a prayer and came down, and for seven days they conversed and chatted. Then he kissed Tamus good bye and sent him off. The caliph also left for Baghdad, and he stayed at Malatya. He asked, "Where is the caesar now?" They said, "Someone just came and reported he is at the fortress of Masiha." Sayyid said, "Let me go and get him on our side, and then may I come and, for as long as I live, wait for the end of my days at Medina." He mounted his horse and left.

Three days later he reached Masiha. The caesar, defeated, had come with one thousand five hundred men. He was inside the fortress, and these thousand five hundred men were camped in front of it. [A 453] Sayyid came close and gave three war cries, one after the other, "Caesar, what happened to your word and decision never again to plan anything evil against the army of Islam? You've broken your pact, so I will do such things to you so that everything I did to your father and your grandfather will seem like sweet kindness." So he said and attacked that army. The caesar sighed and lamented, "How helpless I have become in the hands of this Battal." Sayyid routed those men, some of them he killed, some took refuge in the fortress, and some fled away. The caesar ordered and they barred the gate and rolled stones from above. The fortress was a very steep one, and one of the caesar's daughters was there.

Sayyid besieged the fortress for three days. One day he found a big stone full of holes. He untied the chain of the Prophet Ishaq from around his waist and passed it through that stone. He carried the stone and brought it close to the castle. Then he lifted it like an apple and hurled it into the castle. Whenever it hit a house it destroyed it, and when it hit a man it killed him. Then he pulled it back and threw it again, and this time it hit the tower and destroyed it. That day he made great use of it, he destroyed many houses and killed many people and ruined many towers. The caesar was in great despair. Around noon he turned back and performed his ablutions and his prayer. He had much exerted himself and not rested even a little so he said, "Let me sleep and rest a while. Then [A 454] I will get up and until the evening I will level the tower to the ground with this chain." He placed a stone under his head and fell asleep.

Now it so chanced that while the maiden was touring around the tower her eye fell upon Sayyid as he was lying asleep opposite the castle. She sighed and exclaimed, "Dear, my sultan, my beloved, has fallen asleep and Sarjayil with seven thousand men is on his way right now. They will find him sleeping on the road and kill him. What shall I do? If I scream they'll all hear me and I will be ashamed." She took a stone in her hand and wrote, "Brave warrior, you've slept enough, wake up for there is an army marching against you

-heaven forbid that they should harm you. First finish the castle business, then come and ask for my hand. I am the caesar's daughter and I am in love with you, I'm in love both with you and your religion." She hurled the stone but the power of fate had it so decreed that this stone would be the cause of Sayyid's death. The wind blew that stone straight onto Sayyid's breast. They had tied an anchor around Sayyid's throat and drowned him in the sea and he came out unscathed, the caesar had thrown him in the Cave of Hell and, in the midst of snakes and dragons he did not for a moment worry and rescued himself, Uqba the Judge had poisoned him and he did not die, and now his lot was fulfilled with a piece of rock: it came and landed on his breast and he moved just once -may God have mercy upon him;, "*they said 'We are with God and we return to Him.'*" [A 455] The maiden saw that Sayyid moved once and no more and said, "Goodness, he is sound asleep." She rushed to her father at once and said, "Daddy give me permission to go outside, Battal is asleep, let me cut his head and bring it to you." The caesar said, "My darling, Battal is a great trickster. Beware lest he afflict you with some evil." She said, "Watch what I will do to him under the protection of the Fire of Light." They opened the gate and out she went, straight to Sayyid. She saw that he had surrendered his soul, sighed and said, "If in this world I was deprived of him, let me not be without him in the other world. Without him I have no need for this world." With these words she drew the sword and placed its hilt on Sayyid's breast and fixed the cutting edge against her own breast, pronounced the confession of faith and fell on the sword. She lay there on top of Sayyid and offered her soul to God. Then there was a black cloud and a strong wind, it rained and thundered and the two corpses were covered. No one knew anything more about what happened to them.

Meanwhile, the caesar saved his life and escaped to Istanbul. The army that the maiden had seen were in fact the sons of Sayyid who were coming along with six thousand people looking for Sayyid. Ali and Nazir reached that place and saw that a wind was blowing and there were thunders -a darkness covered everything. They waited a little until the rain and thunderbolts calmed down and came up to the fortress and saw that it was defenseless [A 456] without a soul to be seen. They looked for Sayyid but found no trace of him. They spent the evening there and in their dreams that evening Ali and Nazir saw Sayyid having mounted Buraq. He approached with a crown on his head and a celestial garment on his shoulders and with martyrs following him. Sayyid came forward and said, "My sweet boys do not look for me in this world anymore as I have moved into the presence of God. My grace is with you however, and you should strive now in the path of religion in a steadfast way. Always set forward in ghaza and always seek to please God. Never obey your evil soul nor become conceited by your heroic achievements. Whatever you achieve, do it in the honor of God. Do not make this world your friend and do not

look upon any creature with disdain. Send presents and donations to Mecca and Medina every year. Help the weak, protect the orphans and respect the elderly. Do not do anything ill-advised so that you will not have to regret it later on. For every deed ask for God's assistance; do not engage the company of evil people for their company darkens the heart. Do not ever be bereft of goodness and beauty. Never stand by and watch when someone is in prison. This world is an illusion, do not be charmed by it. If you keep these last wishes of mine [A 457] tomorrow you will pass through Judgment Day with a white face." This he said and disappeared like a lightning.

The following morning Ali came in tears to Nazir and saw that he also was crying. He told him his story at once, and Nazir said, "I also saw exactly what you saw." They cried together for a while and afterwards they crossed over to Malatya where they mourned Sayyid. Then they sent a messenger to the caliph informing him of Sayyid's death. The caliph was in great disarray and in the whole of Islam they lamented Sayyid, in every clime they recited the whole of the Koran and prayed for his soul.

So this is the completion of the story of Sayyid Battal Ghazi -may God have mercy upon him. God knows best in all truth and it is to his place that it returns.

The recording of this noble, blessed and authentic tale was completed on the Wednesday of the first ten days of the month of Rabi' al-akhir of the year eight hundred and forty by the poor and destitute wretch, <ashamed> in front of his Grace the Lord, Hajji Sayyid b. Amir al-Gülshehri. May the bountiful God forgive the sins of all the Muslims and believers.

Amen